



Canadian General Standards  
Board Approved:  
ISO 9001:2015  
Quality Management System

## **POWERBOAT SKIPPER COURSE NOTES**

*(IYT PASSPORT TRAINING PROGRAMME MODULES 1-25)*

- *INTERNATIONAL CREW*
- *VHF-SHORT RANGE CERTIFICATE*
- *INTERNATIONAL FLOTILLA/BAREBOAT SKIPPER*

*THIS COURSE IS A COMBINATION OF THE COURSES LISTED ABOVE, THEREFORE, THE FINAL CERTIFICATION IS EQUIVALENT TO THE IYT FLOTILLA-BAREBOAT SKIPPER POWER CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCY.*

*HOLDERS OF THIS CERTIFICATE AUTOMATICALLY QUALIFY FOR THE ICC <24M POWER COASTAL.*





## LIST OF IYT COURSES

### Recreational Courses

Dinghy Sailing - Bronze Level – Start Sailing  
Dinghy Sailing – Silver Level – Safe Sailing  
Dinghy Sailing – Gold Level - Independent Sailing  
Dinghy Sailing – Platinum Level – Perfected Sailing  
International Yacht Racing  
IYT Day Skipper / Crew  
Introductory Sailing Skills  
Try Sailing  
Introduction to Yachting  
International Crew Power or Sail  
International Flotilla Skipper Power or Sail  
International Bareboat Skipper Power or Sail  
International Bareboat Skipper Sail Catamaran  
VHF Radio Operator  
Personal Watercraft Operator (PWC)  
Small Powerboat & RIB Master (MCA Approved)  
Powerboat Skipper  
Navigation Master  
Weather Master  
International Certificate of Competency <10m Power Coastal  
International Certificate of Competency <10m Power Coastal & Inland  
International Certificate of Competency <24m Power Coastal  
International Certificate of Competency <24m Power Coastal & Inland  
International Certificate of Competency <24m Sail & <10m Power Coastal  
International Certificate of Competency <24m Sail & <10m Power Coastal & Inland  
International Certificate of Competency PWC Coastal  
International Certificate of Competency PWC Coastal & Inland  
Yachtmaster Coastal Power or Sail  
Yachtmaster Coastal Sail Catamaran  
Yachtmaster Offshore Power or Sail  
Yachtmaster Offshore Sail Catamaran  
Yachtmaster Ocean  
IYT Commercial Tender License

### Professional Courses

VHF Radio Operator  
Small Powerboat & RIB Master (MCA Approved)  
Superyacht Crew  
Professional Superyacht Hospitality  
Superyacht Chef

STCW Elementary First Aid  
STCW Basic Fire Prevention & Fire Fighting  
STCW Proficiency in Maritime Security Awareness  
STCW Personal Survival Techniques  
STCW Personal Safety & Social Responsibilities  
Master of Yachts Coastal/Mate 200 Tons  
Master of Yachts Limited  
Master of Yachts Unlimited  
Master of Yachts Inshore < 80gt.  
IYT Boat Engineer Grade 1

We also offer instructor courses for all levels of training.

# PREFACE

## What is an ICC (and CEVNI) & where is it required?

This is a certificate of competency for those candidates who wish to train to skipper a power vessel up to 24 metres in length, in daylight hours, in fair weather and in sight of land.

**The “depth of knowledge” required for the theory portion of the Powerboat Skipper Certificate is the same as required for the International Bareboat Skipper Certificate. Candidates must have logged over 200 miles and 10 days at sea by the end of the course in order to obtain the Powerboat Skipper Certificate of Competency.**

PLEASE NOTE THAT CANDIDATES MUST HOLD A VHF CERTIFICATE OR COMPLETE THE IYT VHF/SRC COURSE AND GAIN THE CERTIFICATE BEFORE PROCEEDING TO THIS LEVEL.

## Certificate Limitations

- Command of a power vessel up to a maximum length of 78 ft /24 metres
- in coastal waters up to 20 miles offshore
- in daylight hours and in fair conditions with moderate wind and sea conditions

It is the level of competence required when chartering a boat in the Mediterranean or West Indies where there are restrictions in terms of cruising area and distance from the base and the vessel has to be safely moored in a marina or anchored before dark.

## Scope

The scope of this 5 to 6 day course is for the student to obtain the theory and practical knowledge required to safely and competently operate as skipper/captain with full understanding and application of:

### **Introductory Modules:**

- nautical terminology
- safety
- vessel checkout
- basic rope work
- refueling
- man-overboard procedures
- capsizing
- swamping
- sinking

- anchors & anchoring
- running aground
- responsibilities of the crew

#### Command Modules:

- small powerboats and rigid inflatable boats,
- boat handling under power
- basic meteorology
- short passages including heavy weather
- restricted visibility & negotiating harbour entrances
- compasses and magnetism
- charts, chartwork & basic navigation
- tides & currents
- buoyage
- collision regulations
- navigation lights
- basic first aid
- responsibilities of the skipper/captain

***Please remember that modules 1 – 10 are introductory modules and information in modules 12 – 23 are for command or skipper. Therefore modules 12 – 23 will contain some repetitive information with a higher depth of knowledge.***

### International Certificate of Competency

**The International Certificate of Competency (ICC)** may also be awarded to candidates who hold the Powerboat Skipper provided the course has been taken at an IYT school authorised to complete this level of training. The ICC is mandatory for chartering in some areas of the European Union. The ICC is a qualification stating that an individual is competent to meet the standards required by the United Nations Economic Commission for Europe, Inland Water Committee (UN ECE IWC) Resolution 40. The ICC is required in most European Countries in order to operate a pleasure craft up to 24 meters in both inland and coastal waters.

**An Inland Waters Endorsement (CEVNI)** is required to operate vessels in inland waterways and canals throughout Europe. To receive this endorsement, the candidate may take the E learning CEVNI Course and examination at [www.IYTworld.com](http://www.IYTworld.com) which is a theory examination on Inland waterways, navigation and safety.

Please see the IYT website at [www.IYTworld.com](http://www.IYTworld.com) for more information about the ICC.

## Important Notice

This book is generic in content. The contents of these notes are designed to be general in nature and when chartering in different locations, should be accompanied by local charts, local cruising guide, tidal information, local navigation rules and local sources of weather information.

Any comments or suggestions for this document should be directed to International Yacht Training. Please e-mail: [support@IYTworld.com](mailto:support@IYTworld.com) or telephone Canada 778-477-5668.

## Amendments

Amendments and updates to the Publication will be published as and when necessary. Edition number and date will be noted on the footer of each stage.

## Record of Changes

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

## Publication information

Conditions of Release - All Rights Reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronically, mechanically, photocopied, recorded or otherwise, without the consent of International Yacht Training Worldwide.

At the end of each Module, there are a series of questions that are designed to prepare you for the final written examination. It is important that you memorise the answers to these questions to the best of your ability.

If any copyright images or content have been posted in these notes in error, please inform us via e mail [support@iytworld.com](mailto:support@iytworld.com) and they will be removed immediately with our apologies.

## Publication Authority

International Yacht Training Worldwide  
Suite 482, 9-3151 Lakeshore Road  
Kelowna, British Columbia, V1W3S9  
CANADA



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>List of IYT Courses</b> .....   | <b>iii</b> |
| What is an ICC (and CEVNI) & where is it required? .....                           | v          |
| Certificate Limitations .....  | v          |
| Scope .....  | v          |
| International Certificate of Competency .....                                      | vi         |
| Important Notice .....   | vii        |
| Amendments .....   | vii        |
| Publication information .....  | viii       |
| Publication Authority .....  | viii       |
| <b>Module 1 Module 1 INTRODUCTION TO YACHTING &amp; NAUTICAL TERMINOLOGY</b> ..... | <b>27</b>  |
| 1.1 Key Objectives .....   | 27         |
| 1.2 Introduction to Yachting .....   | 27         |
| 1.3 Safety Briefing .....  | 27         |
| 1.4 Passage Planning .....   | 32         |
| Practical Subjects .....   | 33         |
| 1.5 Types of Vessels .....   | 34         |
| 1.6 Sailing Vessels .....  | 38         |
| 1.7 Hull Types .....   | 42         |
| 1.8 Power Vessel Hull Shapes .....   | 43         |
| 1.9 Parts of a Vessel and Nautical Terminology .....                               | 44         |
| .....  | 45         |
| General terms to define a vessel .....   | 46         |
| 1.10 Deck Equipment and Fittings .....   | 47         |
| 1.11 Accommodation .....   | 55         |
| 1.12 Engine & Drivetrains .....  | 57         |
| 1.13 Inflatables and RIBS .....  | 61         |
| 1.14 Instruments and Electronics .....   | 62         |
| The Magnetic Compass .....   | 62         |
| How does a Compass work? .....   | 62         |
| Compass Direction .....  | 63         |
| Depth Sounder .....  | 63         |
| Barometer .....  | 63         |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Log .....   | 63        |
| GPS (Global Positioning System).....                          | 63        |
| Radar.....  | 64        |
| Relative Direction .....                                      | 65        |
| 1.15 Windward/Leeward .....                                   | 66        |
| 1.16 Introduction to Collision Regulations.....               | 66        |
| Basic collision regulations (rules of the road).....          | 66        |
| 1.17 Introduction to Weather .....                            | 69        |
| Sources of Weather Information .....                          | 70        |
| To Go or not to go / sail or not to sail .....                | 70        |
| 1.18 Introduction to Ropework.....                            | 70        |
| Coiling a Line .....  | 71        |
| Securing to a Cleat.....                                      | 72        |
| How to tie most common knots or secure to a post .....        | 72        |
| Round Turn and Two Half Hitches .....                         | 72        |
| Bowline .....   | 72        |
| Figure of Eight .....   | 72        |
| 1.19 Knowledge Review .....                                   | 73        |
| <b>Module 2 Personal Safety Equipment.....</b>                | <b>74</b> |
| 2.1 Key Objectives.....                                       | 74        |
| 2.2 Life Jackets.....   | 74        |
| 2.3 Buoyancy Aids / Personal Flotation Device (PFD).....      | 76        |
| 2.4 Children’s Lifejackets and PFDs .....                     | 76        |
| 2.5 Maintaining Lifejackets and PFDs .....                    | 77        |
| Care of Lifejackets and PFDs.....                             | 77        |
| How to Clean Lifejackets and PFDs .....                       | 77        |
| 2.6 Safety Harnesses .....                                    | 78        |
| 2.7 Horseshoe Buoy / Ring Buoy or Lifebuoy.....               | 78        |
| 2.8 Lifesling & A Heaving Line .....                          | 78        |
| 2.9 Man Overboard Pole .....                                  | 79        |
| 2.10 EPIRB (Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon) ..... | 79        |
| 2.11 SART (Search and Rescue Transponder) .....               | 79        |
| 2.12 Immersion Suit.....                                      | 80        |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 2.13 Buoyant Heaving Line.....                          | 80        |
| 2.14 Safety Brief / Suitable Clothing.....              | 81        |
| In colder climates .....                                | 81        |
| Waterproof clothing.....                                | 81        |
| Warmer or tropical climates.....                        | 81        |
| Suitable footwear .....                                 | 81        |
| 2.15 Knowledge Review – Personal Safety Equipment ..... | 82        |
| <b>Module 3 Boat Safety Equipment.....</b>              | <b>83</b> |
| 3.1 Key Objectives.....                                 | 83        |
| 3.2 Life Rafts .....                                    | 83        |
| 3.3 Pyrotechnic Distress Signals (Flares).....          | 84        |
| Types of Approved Flares .....                          | 84        |
| Using Flares.....                                       | 85        |
| 3.4 Fire Extinguishers .....                            | 86        |
| Fire Extinguisher Rating System.....                    | 87        |
| 3.5 Fighting a Fire.....                                | 88        |
| How to use a fire extinguisher .....                    | 88        |
| Important Tips Regarding Fire Extinguishers.....        | 88        |
| Maintenance of Fire Extinguishers.....                  | 89        |
| Fuel Burning Appliances .....                           | 89        |
| 3.6 Basic First Aid Kit.....                            | 90        |
| 3.7 Watertight Flashlight.....                          | 90        |
| 3.8 Sound Signalling Devices / Air Horns/whistles ..... | 90        |
| 3.9 Radar Reflector .....                               | 91        |
| 3.10 Axe.....   | 91        |
| 3.11 VHF Marine Radio .....                             | 91        |
| 3.12 Bailer or Bucket.....                              | 92        |
| 3.13 Oars or Manual Propelling Device .....             | 92        |
| 3.14 Swim Ladder or Re-boarding Device.....             | 92        |
| 3.15 Binoculars & Night Vision Binoculars .....         | 92        |
| 3.16 Bilge Pumps, Electric and Manual.....              | 93        |
| 3.17 Wooden Plugs for Thru-hull Fittings .....          | 93        |
| 3.18 Battery Selector Switch .....                      | 93        |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 3.19 Sea Anchors and Drogues.....  | 94        |
| 3.20 Ditch Bag.....  | 95        |
| 3.21 Anchors and Anchoring .....   | 96        |
| 3.22 Knowledge Review – Boat Safety Equipment.....   | 98        |
| <b>Module 4 Vessel Checkout – Documentation, charts, Nautical Publications, Flags, Equipment &amp; General .....</b> | <b>99</b> |
| 4.1 Key Objectives.....  | 99        |
| 4.2 Registration / Ships Papers.....   | 99        |
| 4.3 Passports / Visas .....  | 99        |
| 4.4 Insurance Papers.....  | 100       |
| 4.5 Nautical Qualifications or Certificates of Competency (COC).....   | 100       |
| 4.6 VHF Radio Operators License & Radio Equipment License.....   | 101       |
| 4.7 Crew List / Logbook.....   | 101       |
| 4.8 Equipment Manuals .....  | 101       |
| 4.9 Nautical Charts.....   | 102       |
| 4.10 Nautical Publications.....  | 102       |
| Cruising Guide or Sailing Directions .....   | 102       |
| Tide Tables .....  | 103       |
| Symbols and Abbreviations for Nautical Charts .....  | 103       |
| List of Lights .....   | 103       |
| Colregs .....  | 104       |
| Flags and Flag Etiquette.....  | 104       |
| 4.11 Equipment & General Checks .....  | 106       |
| 4.12 Hull & Rig Checks .....   | 106       |
| Tool Kit:.....   | 106       |
| Hull Checks:.....  | 106       |
| Engine Checks .....  | 107       |
| Engine Spares.....   | 108       |
| Rigging Checks – Sail boats (discuss with skipper).....  | 108       |
| 4.13 Navigation Lights & Electronic Equipment.....   | 109       |
| 4.14 Safety Equipment.....   | 109       |
| 4.15 Housekeeping Items.....   | 110       |
| 4.16 Dinghy (if applicable).....   | 111       |

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 4.17 Float Plan .....  | 111                                 |
| 4.18 Departing the Marina or Dock .....                      | 111                                 |
| 4.19 Knowledge Review .....                                  | 112                                 |
| <b>Module 5 Basic Handling Skills.....</b>                   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 5.1 Key Objectives.....                                      | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 5.2 Sails and Sail Handling.....                             | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| How Sails Work .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Parts of the rigging, standing and running .....             | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Points of sail and sailing terms .....                       | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Shackles .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Blocks.....  | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Cam cleats, Rope Clutches and Jam Cleats.....                | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Mainsheet traveller .....                                    | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Boom topping lift .....                                      | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Mainsheet .....  | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Use of Winches .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Self Tailing Winch and sequence of how to operate .....      | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Types of Sails.....  | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Sails and Sail Handling .....                                | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Sail Materials and Construction .....                        | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 5.3 Handling Skills – Sail or Power – Practical Module ..... | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Sailing vessel handling skills.....                          | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Power vessel handling skills.....                            | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 5.4 Knowledge Review .....                                   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| <b>Module 6 Basic Ropework .....</b>                         | <b>113</b>                          |
| 6.1 Key Objectives.....                                      | 113                                 |
| 6.2 Types of ropes, care & maintenance of ropes.....         | 113                                 |
| 6.3 How to tie knots.....                                    | 114                                 |
| Round Turn and Two Half Hitches .....                        | 114                                 |
| Bowline .....  | 114                                 |
| Figure of Eight .....  | 114                                 |
| Rolling Hitch.....   | 115                                 |
| Sheet Bend.....  | 115                                 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Double Sheet Bend.....  | 115        |
| Reef Knot .....   | 115        |
| Clove Hitch.....  | 115        |
| Whipping and splicing .....                                   | 116        |
| Securing to a Cleat.....                                      | 116        |
| .....   | 116        |
| 6.4 Coiling Line.....   | 117        |
| 6.5 Knowledge Review .....                                    | 118        |
| <b>Module 7 Refueling.....</b>                                | <b>119</b> |
| 7.1 Key Objectives.....                                       | 119        |
| 7.2 Refueling Procedures .....                                | 119        |
| 7.3 Refueling a Personal Watercraft (PWC) .....               | 120        |
| 7.4 Planning .....  | 120        |
| 7.5 Knowledge Review .....                                    | 120        |
| <b>Module 8 Man-Overboard Procedures .....</b>                | <b>121</b> |
| 8.1 Key Objectives.....                                       | 121        |
| 8.2 Man overboard (person overboard) emergency.....           | 121        |
| 8.3 Rescuing a Person Overboard - General .....               | 121        |
| 8.4 Man Overboard - Sailboats.....                            | 123        |
| 8.5 Man Overboard – Powerboats .....                          | 128        |
| 8.6 Cold Water/Weather Survival Gear .....                    | 129        |
| 8.7 Knowledge Review .....                                    | 130        |
| <b>Module 9 Capsizing, Swamping and Sinking .....</b>         | <b>131</b> |
| 9.1 Key Objectives.....                                       | 131        |
| 9.2 Definitions.....  | 131        |
| Capsizing .....   | 131        |
| Swamping.....   | 131        |
| Sinking.....  | 131        |
| 9.3 Knowledge Review .....                                    | 133        |
| <b>Module 10 Anchors, Anchoring and Running Aground .....</b> | <b>134</b> |
| 10.1 Key Objectives.....                                      | 134        |
| 10.2 Anchors and Your Boat.....                               | 135        |
| Anchors uses .....  | 135        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Anchoring.....  | 135        |
| Scope .....   | 136        |
| Setting the Anchor.....   | 136        |
| Beach Anchoring .....   | 137        |
| 10.3 Laying a Second Anchor.....  | 138        |
| 10.4 Kedging .....  | 139        |
| 10.5 Fouled Anchor.....   | 139        |
| 10.6 Running Aground (groundings).....  | 139        |
| Problems .....  | 139        |
| If you run aground:.....  | 140        |
| Solutions:.....   | 140        |
| 10.7 Knowledge Review .....   | 141        |
| <b>Module 11 Responsibilities of the Crew, Care of the Environment, Provisioning &amp; Housekeeping .....</b> | <b>142</b> |
| 11.1 Key Objectives.....  | 142        |
| 11.2 Rested and Alert Crew.....   | 142        |
| The effects of fatigue, alcohol and drugs are: .....  | 142        |
| 11.3 Navigational Duties / Responsibilities of Crew.....  | 143        |
| 11.4 When to Call the Skipper.....  | 143        |
| 11.5 Protecting the Marine Environment .....  | 144        |
| 11.6 Provisioning and Housekeeping Considerations .....   | 144        |
| 11.7 Cooking While Underway .....   | 145        |
| 11.8 A Balanced Diet.....   | 146        |
| 11.9 Knowledge Review .....   | 146        |
| <b>Module 12 VHF-SRC Marine Communications.....</b>   | <b>148</b> |
| 12.1 Key Objectives.....  | 148        |
| 12.2 Introduction .....   | 148        |
| Accuracy of Information .....   | 148        |
| 12.3 Licensing .....  | 149        |
| Licensing Requirements.....   | 149        |
| 12.4 Maritime Mobile Band .....   | 151        |
| Maritime Mobile Band .....  | 151        |
| Simplex and Duplex.....   | 151        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| International channels.....                                    | 151 |
| 12.5 GMDSS Equipment .....                                     | 152 |
| GMDSS Requirements .....                                       | 152 |
| GMDSS Components .....   | 152 |
| GMDSS Sea Areas .....  | 153 |
| Maritime Safety Information (MSI) Broadcasts.....              | 153 |
| Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon (EPIRB) .....       | 154 |
| EPIRB Systems /Organisations / Regulations.....                | 154 |
| NAVTEX .....   | 154 |
| INMARSAT .....   | 155 |
| Search and Rescue Transponders (SART) .....                    | 155 |
| Power Supply .....   | 156 |
| 12.6 VHF DSC Radio Equipment .....                             | 157 |
| Transmitter, Receiver, Transceiver, Antenna .....              | 157 |
| Antenna types .....  | 157 |
| Range .....  | 158 |
| Frequency .....  | 158 |
| 12.7 Makes of VHF Equipment .....                              | 158 |
| Controls.....  | 159 |
| Digital Selective Calling.....                                 | 161 |
| Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) Number .....           | 162 |
| Handheld VHF Radios .....                                      | 162 |
| Radio Regulations.....   | 163 |
| Language (Pro Words) .....                                     | 164 |
| Phonetic Alphabet.....   | 166 |
| Phonetic Numerals .....  | 167 |
| Correct Radio Operation Procedure.....                         | 168 |
| Radio Checks .....   | 169 |
| DSC Routine Calling Procedure / Specific Station Calling.....  | 170 |
| Repeating a Routine call .....                                 | 170 |
| Group Calling.....   | 170 |
| 12.8 Distress Messaging.....                                   | 171 |
| Emergency Radio Communications – Distress Calls (MAYDAY) ..... | 171 |

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| DSC Distress Messages .....   | 174                                 |
| Making a DSC Distress Call.....   | 175                                 |
| Receiving The Distress Call .....   | 176                                 |
| MAYDAY Relay.....   | 177                                 |
| Radio Silence (See-Lonce MAYDAY) .....                                      | 177                                 |
| Restricted Working (Pru-Donce) .....  | 178                                 |
| End Of Radio Silence (See-Lonce Fee-Nee).....                               | 179                                 |
| Cancelling A Distress Call .....  | 179                                 |
| 12.9 Urgency and Safety Messaging.....                                      | 180                                 |
| Urgency Message Protocol .....  | 180                                 |
| Transmitting a DSC Urgency Alert:.....                                      | 181                                 |
| Safety Messages.....  | 181                                 |
| Transmitting a DSC Safety Alert .....                                       | 182                                 |
| 12.10 International Distress Signals.....                                   | 184                                 |
| 12.11 Knowledge Review .....  | 185                                 |
| .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| <b>Module 13 Small Powerboats &amp; Rigid Inflatable Boats (RIBs) .....</b> | <b>186</b>                          |
| 13.1 Key Objectives.....  | 186                                 |
| 13.2 Types – Advantages and Disadvantages .....                             | 186                                 |
| 13.3 Inboard Motors .....   | 187                                 |
| 13.4 Jet Drives.....  | 187                                 |
| 13.5 Outboard Motors .....  | 187                                 |
| 13.6 Steering / Propellers.....   | 188                                 |
| 13.7 Ventilation & Cavitation .....   | 188                                 |
| 13.8 Pre-Launch Procedures .....  | 188                                 |
| Fueling (see Module 7 – Refueling).....                                     | 189                                 |
| 13.9 Engine Starting & Stopping.....  | 189                                 |
| Pre-Start Checks: .....   | 189                                 |
| Starting the Motor.....   | 190                                 |
| 13.10 Fault Finding.....  | 190                                 |
| 13.11 Dinghy Stability and Handling.....                                    | 191                                 |
| 13.12 Beaching .....  | 192                                 |

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 13.13 Dinghy Equipment .....                     | 194                                 |
| 13.14 Trailer Launch.....                        | 195                                 |
| Safety/Preparation .....                         | 195                                 |
| 13.15 Trailer Recovery .....                     | 196                                 |
| 13.16 Launching Procedures .....                 | 197                                 |
| 13.17 Emergency / Crash Stops.....               | 198                                 |
| 13.18 Towing .....                               | 198                                 |
| Towing Procedure .....                           | 199                                 |
| Towing Alongside .....                           | 199                                 |
| Bridle Towing .....                              | 199                                 |
| 13.19 Knowledge Review .....                     | 200                                 |
| <b>Module 14 Boat Handling Under Power .....</b> | <b>201</b>                          |
| 14.1 Key Objectives.....                         | 201                                 |
| 14.2 The Effects of Wind, Tide and Current ..... | 201                                 |
| 14.3 Alongside .....                             | 202                                 |
| Deck Equipment & Fittings .....                  | 202                                 |
| 14.4 Coming Alongside (wharf or dock).....       | 203                                 |
| Arrival at a Dock .....                          | 204                                 |
| 14.5 Handling Skills .....                       | 204                                 |
| Departure from Dock.....                         | 204                                 |
| 14.6 Clearing (wharf or dock) .....              | 205                                 |
| 14.7 Multiple Engines .....                      | 206                                 |
| 14.8 Vessel Handling Skills .....                | 207                                 |
| Traveling at Speed (Planing) .....               | 207                                 |
| High Speed Turns .....                           | 207                                 |
| Heavy Weather Operations .....                   | 208                                 |
| 14.9 Engine failure .....                        | 209                                 |
| 14.10 Single engine handling.....                | 209                                 |
| 14.11 Picking up mooring buoy .....              | 209                                 |
| 14.12 Knowledge Review .....                     | 210                                 |
| <b>Module 15 Basic Sails and Sailing .....</b>   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.1 Key Objectives.....                         | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.2 How Sails Work .....                        | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 15.3 Parts of the Rigging, Standing and Running .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Standing rigging.....                                   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Running rigging .....                                   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.4 Points of Sail and Sailing Terms .....             | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.5 Use of Winches .....                               | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Self-Tailing Winch and sequence of how to operate ..... | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.6 Types of Sails.....                                | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Headsails.....  | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Spinnaker .....   | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.7 Sail Handling .....                                | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Roller Reefing.....                                     | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Slab Reefing (Jiffy Reefing) .....                      | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| Basic Slab Reefing Steps .....                          | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.8 Sail Materials and Construction.....               | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| 15.9 Knowledge Review .....                             | <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b> |
| <b>Module 16 Basic Meteorology .....</b>                | <b>211</b>                          |
| 16.1 Key Objectives.....                                | 211                                 |
| 16.2 Sources of Weather Information .....               | 212                                 |
| 16.3 Weather Patterns.....                              | 212                                 |
| Air Masses.....   | 212                                 |
| 16.4 Meteorology Information Sources.....               | 213                                 |
| 16.5 Monitoring the Forecast.....                       | 213                                 |
| 16.6 Fronts.....  | 214                                 |
| Warm Front.....   | 215                                 |
| Cold Front .....  | 215                                 |
| 16.7 Sea Breeze .....                                   | 216                                 |
| 16.8 Land Breeze .....                                  | 216                                 |
| 16.9 Katabatic Winds .....                              | 217                                 |
| 16.10 Anabatic Winds .....                              | 217                                 |
| 16.11 The Beaufort Wind Scale .....                     | 218                                 |
| 16.12 Clouds .....                                      | 223                                 |
| Basic Cloud Types .....                                 | 223                                 |
| Other Common Cloud Types.....                           | 224                                 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 16.13 Hurricanes, Typhoons & Cyclones.....   | 225        |
| 16.14 Precipitation.....   | 227        |
| 16.15 Fog.....   | 227        |
| Types of fog.....  | 227        |
| How fog is dissipated.....   | 228        |
| 16.16 Thunderstorms.....   | 228        |
| 16.17 Lightening .....   | 228        |
| Lightning at Sea.....  | 229        |
| 16.18 After A Storm .....  | 229        |
| 16.19 Knowledge Review .....   | 230        |
| <b>Module 17 Short Passages – Heavy Weather, Restricted Visibility &amp; Negotiating Harbour Entrances .....</b> | <b>231</b> |
| 17.1 Key Objectives.....   | 231        |
| 17.2 Heavy weather preparations, line squalls.....   | 231        |
| Preparations for Heavy Weather .....   | 231        |
| Leeshore .....   | 232        |
| Line Squalls .....   | 232        |
| Heavy Weather Tactics.....   | 232        |
| Sea Anchors.....   | 233        |
| Drogues.....   | 233        |
| Ice and Ice Accretion .....  | 234        |
| 17.3 Action in Restricted Visibility.....  | 234        |
| Fog .....  | 234        |
| 17.4 Negotiating a Harbour Entrance .....  | 235        |
| 17.5 Collision Regulations on Passage .....  | 236        |
| 17.6 Preparing a Short Passage Plan .....  | 236        |
| Reference Materials/Information for Planning .....   | 236        |
| Passage Plan Headings for Consideration: .....   | 236        |
| Decide What Tactics to Use.....  | 237        |
| Selecting an Anchorage .....   | 238        |
| Navigation on Short Passages.....  | 238        |
| Delegation of Responsibilities to Crew .....   | 239        |
| 17.7 Knowledge Review .....  | 240        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Module 18 Compasses and Magnetism .....</b>                     | <b>241</b> |
| 18.1 Key Objectives.....   | 241        |
| 18.2 Compass Types and Their Uses.....                             | 241        |
| The Magnetic Compass .....   | 241        |
| Lubber Line .....  | 241        |
| Compass Error.....   | 241        |
| 18.3 Variation, Deviation and Applying Error .....                 | 242        |
| Variation .....  | 242        |
| Deviation.....   | 243        |
| Navigation Has Three Compass Bearings: .....                       | 245        |
| Courses, True, Magnetic.....                                       | 245        |
| Magnetic North .....   | 246        |
| Applying Variation.....  | 246        |
| Magnetic Anomalies.....  | 247        |
| Hand Bearing Compass.....  | 247        |
| 18.4 Knowledge Review .....  | 248        |
| <b>Module 19 Charts, Chartwork &amp; Basic Navigation .....</b>    | <b>249</b> |
| 19.1 Key Objectives.....   | 249        |
| 19.2 Charts .....  | 249        |
| 19.3 Chart Publications .....                                      | 250        |
| British Admiralty Charts (BA).....                                 | 250        |
| Canadian Hydrographic Service Charts .....                         | 250        |
| National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Charts..... | 251        |
| Small Craft Charts.....  | 251        |
| Suppliers .....  | 251        |
| 19.4 Chartwork Instruments and Information .....                   | 252        |
| Chart Work Symbols.....  | 253        |
| Scale.....   | 253        |
| Heights and Depths .....   | 254        |
| “Special Notes, Cautions and Warnings” .....                       | 254        |
| North/Compass Rose.....  | 254        |
| Tidal Diamonds.....  | 255        |
| Chart Symbols and Abbreviations .....                              | 255        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Chart Information.....   | 255 |
| Soundings.....   | 256 |
| Cautions.....  | 256 |
| Colors and Levels.....   | 257 |
| Latitude.....  | 257 |
| Longitude.....   | 257 |
| Course Distance.....   | 258 |
| 19.5 Terminology / Definitions.....  | 259 |
| Course to Steer (CTS).....   | 259 |
| Leeway.....  | 259 |
| Leeway is the amount by which the boat is pushed off her intended track by the wind and may be significant, particularly in a sailboat going to windward. .... | 259 |
| Heading.....   | 259 |
| Speed (S).....   | 260 |
| Set (SET).....   | 260 |
| Drift (DFT).....   | 260 |
| Course Over Ground (COG).....  | 260 |
| Speed Over Ground (SOG).....   | 260 |
| Tides.....   | 260 |
| Currents.....  | 261 |
| Effects of Wind, Tide & Current.....   | 261 |
| 19.6 Navigational Techniques.....  | 261 |
| Dead Reckoning Position (DR).....  | 261 |
| Compass Bearings.....  | 262 |
| Line of Position (LOP).....  | 262 |
| Fixes.....   | 262 |
| Planning a Fix.....  | 265 |
| Running Fix.....   | 265 |
| Procedure for a Running Fix.....   | 266 |
| Other Sources of Position Lines.....   | 267 |
| 19.7 Estimated Position.....   | 269 |
| Estimated Position (EP).....   | 269 |
| 19.8 Knowledge Review.....   | 271 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Module 20 Tides &amp; Currents .....</b>                        | <b>272</b> |
| 20.1 Key Objectives.....   | 272        |
| 20.2 Tides .....   | 272        |
| Cause of tides and currents .....                                  | 273        |
| 20.3 Tidal Definitions and Tidal Heights .....                     | 274        |
| Height for a time, time for a height .....                         | 276        |
| .....  | 277        |
| 20.4 CURRENTS.....   | 277        |
| Definition of Terms - Currents .....                               | 278        |
| Tidal Atlas and Tidal Diamonds.....                                | 281        |
| 20.5 Knowledge Review .....  | 283        |
| <b>Module 21 Buoyage .....</b>                                     | <b>284</b> |
| 21.1 Key Objectives.....   | 284        |
| 21.2 Lateral System (IALA regions A & B).....                      | 285        |
| Region A (IALA A).....   | 285        |
| Under IALA A,.....   | 285        |
| Under IALA B .....   | 285        |
| 21.3 Marks Common to both IALA Regions A and B .....               | 289        |
| Isolated Danger Mark .....   | 289        |
| Safe Water Mark .....  | 289        |
| Special Mark.....  | 289        |
| Wreck Buoy .....   | 290        |
| 21.4 Cardinal Buoyage System .....                                 | 290        |
| 21.5 Knowledge Review .....  | 293        |
| <b>Module 22 Collision Regulations.....</b>                        | <b>294</b> |
| 22.1 Key Objectives.....   | 294        |
| 22.2 Definitions.....  | 294        |
| 22.3 COLREGS & What You Need to Know .....                         | 296        |
| 22.4 Part A, General .....   | 296        |
| 22.5 Part B, Steering and Sailing Rules .....                      | 297        |
| Section I – Conduct of Vessels in any condition of visibility..... | 297        |
| Section II – Conduct of vessels in sight of one another .....      | 299        |
| 22.6 Part C, Lights & Shapes.....                                  | 304        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Side lights and stern light .....                                  | 305        |
| Vessels at Anchor .....  | 306        |
| Safe Operation in Restricted Visibility.....                       | 307        |
| Navigating at Night.....   | 307        |
| Day Shapes.....  | 309        |
| 22.7 Part D, Sounds.....   | 312        |
| 22.8 Rule 33 (Equipment for Sound Signals).....                    | 313        |
| 22.9 Knowledge Review .....  | 314        |
| <b>Module 23 Navigation Lights .....</b>                           | <b>315</b> |
| 23.1 Key Objectives.....   | 315        |
| Safe Operation in Restricted Visibility.....                       | 315        |
| Navigating at Night.....   | 315        |
| Powerboats under 12M (39' 4") Rule 23 (Collision regulations)..... | 318        |
| Sailboats under 7M (23') Rule 25.....                              | 319        |
| Sailboats from 7M (23') to under 20M (65' 7") Rule 25.....         | 320        |
| Sailboats 20M (65' 7") and over Rule 25.....                       | 320        |
| Human-Powered Boats Rule 25 .....                                  | 321        |
| Boats at Anchor Rule 30 .....                                      | 321        |
| 23.2 Knowledge Review .....  | 322        |
| <b>Module 24 Basic First Aid.....</b>                              | <b>323</b> |
| 24.1 Key Objectives.....   | 323        |
| 24.2 Hypothermia and Cold Water Immersion .....                    | 323        |
| Causes of hypothermia:.....  | 323        |
| 24.3 Cold Water Shock.....   | 323        |
| 24.4 Rescuing a Person with Hypothermia .....                      | 324        |
| Immediate Action Prior to Rescue Procedure .....                   | 324        |
| Rescue Procedure.....  | 324        |
| Surviving Cold Water .....   | 324        |
| The "Huddle" Position .....  | 325        |
| Heat Escape Lessening Position (H.E.L.P.).....                     | 325        |
| 24.5 Contents of Basic 1st Aid Kit.....                            | 326        |
| 24.6 Cuts, Stings and Burns .....                                  | 326        |
| Cuts.....  | 326        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Bites and Stings .....   | 326        |
| Burns.....   | 327        |
| 24.7 Control of Bleeding .....   | 327        |
| 24.8 Shock .....   | 328        |
| Treatment for shock: .....   | 328        |
| 24.9 Dangers of Heat and Cold.....                                       | 328        |
| Heat Stroke .....  | 328        |
| 24.10 Heart Attacks & Strokes .....                                      | 329        |
| Heart Attack.....  | 329        |
| Stroke.....  | 329        |
| 24.11 ABCs of First Aid Response (Airway – Breathing – Circulation)..... | 330        |
| 24.12 Unconscious Victim / Not Breathing.....                            | 331        |
| Adult CPR – Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation.....                           | 332        |
| 24.13 Radio for Help .....   | 333        |
| URGENCY (PAN PAN) .....  | 334        |
| Urgency Call Example: .....  | 334        |
| 24.14 Drowning .....   | 335        |
| 24.15 Choking .....  | 335        |
| 24.16 Seasickness, Heat Stroke, Exhaustion .....                         | 336        |
| Recognising Symptoms.....  | 336        |
| Treatment .....  | 337        |
| 24.17 Carbon Monoxide Poisoning.....                                     | 337        |
| Recognising Symptoms of Carbon Monoxide Poisoning.....                   | 337        |
| Treatment of Carbon Monoxide Poisoning .....                             | 337        |
| CO2 detector .....   | 338        |
| 24.18 Knowledge Review .....   | 339        |
| <b>Module 25 Responsibilities of the Skipper/Captain.....</b>            | <b>340</b> |
| 25.1 Key Objectives.....   | 340        |
| 25.2 Skipper or Captain? .....   | 340        |
| Skipper or Captain, what’s the difference? .....                         | 340        |
| Responsibilities .....   | 340        |
| Prior to departure: .....  | 341        |
| Common Courtesy.....   | 342        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 25.3 Delegation to Crew .....                               | 342        |
| 25.4 Duty of Care .....                                     | 342        |
| Duty of care relevant to both visitors and passengers ..... | 343        |
| Actions to be taken after collisions .....                  | 343        |
| 25.5 Knowledge Review .....                                 | 343        |
| <b>Table of Figures.....</b>                                | <b>344</b> |
| <b>Glossary of Terms .....</b>                              | <b>352</b> |

## Module 1 Introduction to Yachting & Nautical Terminology

### 1.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO INTRODUCE THE STUDENT TO YACHTING AND NAUTICAL TERMINOLOGY THAT IS USED ON A DAY-TO-DAY BASIS. IT IS A VAST SUBJECT AS THERE IS ENOUGH NAUTICAL TERMINOLOGY TO FILL AN ENTIRE BOOK. IT IS IMPORTANT FOR THE STUDENT TO MEMORIZE THE TERMINOLOGY SO IT WILL BECOME SECOND NATURE WHEN CREWING OR SKIPPING A BOAT.

### 1.2 Introduction to Yachting

Welcome to the wonderful world of boating and sailing. Now that you have taken the first step towards learning a new pastime and skill, we hope that it will lead to rewarding, safe and fulfilling adventures on the water.

Every human activity has its own unique language, and this is true of boating and sailing. A number of nautical terms may already be familiar to you as there are a large number of nautical terms used in everyday language, for example, "anchored to the spot" or "taken aback".

As you progress through the IYT Training Program, the volume of the terminology will expand with the knowledge gained. As an aid to understanding the terminology, a comprehensive "Glossary of Terms" has been included as an Appendix at the rear of these notes.

With boating and sailing being an international pastime, and English being the language of the sea, it is essential to use the correct terminology to communicate quickly and effectively with other seafarers. This avoids misunderstandings in the execution of a maneuver or, more critically, in the event of an emergency. As the course progresses, you will be introduced to additional nautical terminology.

### 1.3 Safety Briefing

It is important to know where all safety items are stored on any vessel you are on and also how to use them.

### Lifejackets

- There should be at least one lifejacket per person on board every boat, including small sizes for any children.
- A life jacket is designed to keep an unconscious person afloat by turning them on to their back and keeping their head above the water.
- There are many other forms of buoyancy aids but these are mainly used for water skiers, dinghy sailors etc. to give additional buoyancy should you end up in the water.
- Buoyancy aids are NOT lifejackets and will not keep your head above water if unconscious.



### Flares (Distress Signals)

Four basic types:

- Red parachute - used to attract the attention of distant vessels.
- Red hand-held - used at night and produce a bright red light for around 40 seconds.
- White hand-held - used to alert other vessels to the risk of collision.
- Orange smoke - used during the day and produce a plume of orange smoke for around 40 seconds.



### Life Raft

A life raft is a small inflatable survival craft kept in either a hard plastic canister or a soft valise which should be accessible in the event that the crew need to evacuate the boat in an emergency.



### First Aid Kit

Every vessel however small should carry a basic first aid kit. There should also be a First Aid Manual for reference. At least one member of the crew should have some form of training in first aid from a recognized training authority. First aid kits should be in a waterproof container and have the ability to float.



## Fire Extinguishers

There are 4 main types:

- Dry powder for extinguishing fires involving gases.
- Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) for electrical fires.
- Water for cooling or combustion fires.
- Foam for extinguishing burning liquids such as paint, oil, gasoline, fats, thinners etc.

## Safety Harnesses

- Mainly used on sailing vessels,
- safety harnesses are worn by crew members when on deck in bad weather, at night or if the crew member feels safer with one on.
- The harness comprises webbing shoulder straps and a waist band which are adjustable, with a tether of rope or webbing which has a karabiner clip on both ends.



## Location and Use of "Heads"

"head" is the marine terminology for toilet.

There essentially are two types of heads.

- A manual head where the operator uses a pump to flush seawater in through the head and to pump out the contents either into a "holding tank" (a tank where the contents are stored until emptied) or overboard.
- An electric head does the same job by using an electrically operated pump instead of a manual pump

## Bilge Pumps

Even in the most sophisticated yacht there is always an accumulation of water, and sometimes oil and other liquids accumulate in the lowest part of the vessel known as the bilge. There are two types of bilge pumps, manual and electric.

- Manual pump – crew can manually pump water overboard
- Electric pump – press a switch to pump water overboard
- 

## Cooker (Range Top and Oven)

Cooking on most vessels is by means of gas, usually propane. Of prime importance when using a gas cooker is safety. Gas is heavier than air and if left switched on, the gas will accumulate in the bilges and be a potent explosive if triggered by an electrical short or other igniter. These are the basic rules for using a gas stove on a yacht which will be covered in greater depth in further modules.



### Battery selector switch

Most yachts will have two sets of batteries, one set will be for engine starting and the other for all other electric systems. There will be a main battery switch, which should at a minimum, allow the 2 banks to be switched off to preserve battery power when the vessel is unoccupied.



### Cabin Lights

Electricity is a sparse commodity on most small boats which use battery power. On larger boats power is often derived from a generator. It is important to remember that lights and other electrical systems should only be used when necessary and should always be turned off when not in use to conserve battery power.

### General Housekeeping Rules

One of the most important aspects of living on board a vessel is the need to be extremely tidy.

There is restricted storage space available for the multitude of items that are required to be carried, and that may need to be found easily and quickly.

Personal items should be packed in a soft sports type bag (not a hard suitcase which cannot be rolled up and stored easily) and then should be "stowed" in "lockers" upon arrival on board.

The size of storage on a vessel will depend on the hull type and size, but even on all but the largest boats it is important to be selective about what personal gear is brought on board.



### Suitable Clothing

Weather conditions can vary from extremely hot to very cold and wet. It is important to dress correctly and thus minimize the effects of heat and cold. In a warm climate the sun is very powerful and when combined with the glare from the water can debilitate a person very quickly. Protection should include a hat, sunglasses, cotton shirt with collar (and possibly long sleeves), cotton shorts or long pants, and plenty of sunscreen. It is easy to get sunburned, and may be more than just uncomfortable, and in extreme circumstances can require medical attention. Dehydration happens easily on the water so do not forget to drink lots of water and try to stay in the shade wherever possible.

In a cold climate the "layer" principal can be used to great effect, and even in warmer climates it can get cold at night on the water. Multiple layers of suitable clothing is more beneficial

than single heavy items of clothing, because each layer traps heat so the flow of heat out from the body is kept to a minimum. With the addition of wet or foul weather waterproof clothing good protection can be made against the effects of both the cold and wet. A good hat and waterproof footwear will round off the attire.

### Suitable Footwear

It is recommended that good nonslip deck shoes are worn to protect feet against the presence of multiple objects on deck such as cleats. For cold and wet conditions, waterproof seaboots are highly recommended.

### Effects of Heat and Cold

High humidity and heat can lead to heat exhaustion, it is advisable to drink plenty of water, wear appropriate clothing offering protection to both head and body, use sunglasses and use a sun block or sunscreen to protect parts of the body exposed to sun or drying winds.

### Seasickness

It may take a little while for a person to get their "sealegs" that is, acclimated to the motion of a boat. There are a number of travel sickness products on the market including sea sickness pills, wrist bands and chemical patches. The best prevention is to watch the horizon and remain as active as possible such as steering the boat.



### Do's and don'ts aboard a boat

#### Do:

- Tell the captain if you are taking any medication, also if you react to any common medications as he will need to know in the event of an emergency.
- Keep all your personal gear tidy and stowed.
- Make sure you put every item away after use in the same place you found it, this is essential so that everyone else can find it if needed. On many boats there will be a diagram in a prominent place showing the location of all the different pieces of safety and survival equipment.
- Be tolerant as a vessel is small and it is easy to become annoyed over small things.

#### Never:

- Leave lights on, it drains the batteries.
- Waste water, it is limited in supply.
- Throw anything overboard when alongside, in a marina or anchorage and refer to the disposal of garbage placard posted onboard.

## 1.4 Passage Planning

A Passage Plan is an outline of the trip that you intend to make, together with all the relevant information that you will require during the passage, such as weather conditions, tides, hazards to navigation, lights, experience of the crew etc. Information for a passage may be obtained from a number of different sources which will be outlined further as the training program progresses.

### Charts

A nautical chart gives detailed information to enable safe navigation at sea from departure point to arrival point.

It is an outline of the land area and includes harbors, bays, reefs, underwater hazards and other navigation information.

A position on a chart is measured in terms of latitude and longitude, and distance is measured in nautical miles.

Charts can either be in a paper or electronic format.



### Effects of Tides and Currents

Tides and currents are movements of water which will carry the boat in the direction of their flow, this may either help or hinder the speed of your passage. It is important to obtain as much information as possible about tidal conditions when undertaking a coastal passage.

### Weather Forecasts

Weather forecasts give an indication about approaching weather conditions and may be obtained from a variety of different sources. It is very important to understand future weather because decisions about whether to leave on a passage or to alter the destination will be made based on the weather forecast.

### Courses

A course is the direction that a boat is steered and is indicated by compass degrees. There are 360°. For example a boat traveling East will be on a heading of 90 degrees, or South on a heading of 180 degrees.

### Safe Passage

It is imperative that all precautions are taken to ensure a safe passage. This includes everything that we have discussed to this point.

### Lookout and things to Watch for

While making way at sea, it is required by law that someone must keep at watch at all times. Other vessels, boats and ships, floating debris, whales and containers.

### Keeping Track of Progress

Unlike being on land, there are no landmarks while out of sight of land. A boat is required to keep a record of progress during a voyage. This is usually in the form of a ship's logbook and includes such information as time, distance travelled, speed, compass course, tides, currents and any other relevant information that pertains to safe navigation. It is easier to navigate while in sight of land as known landmarks can be used for cross bearings. However, one must take into account areas that are susceptible to fog.

When, after all this careful preparation you get to execute the passage, make sure that you keep track of your progress and monitor all the important factors.

- Time: Are you making the speed that you planned for? Going too fast could be as bad as going too slow. You don't want to arrive before the tide has risen sufficiently for you to get into the harbour.
- Fuel: Monitor consumption if it is higher than expected do you still have sufficient reserve or will you have to start planning a refueling stop? Don't hesitate to refuel if you have any doubts about your range.
- Crew: How are they coping with the conditions, is the watch system working? Are people eating well, sleeping, being affected by seasickness?
- Position: Are you where you should be? Don't just steer the course; plot your position on a regular basis.
- Systems: Oil, fluid and water levels need to be checked as well as bilge's inspected on a regular basis.
- Weather: One of the things that can creep up on you if you ignore it is the weather. Keep monitoring every forecast as the weather can change suddenly sometimes with disastrous consequences but, with a few hours warning of the impending change, precautions can be taken.

### Practical Subjects

Your instructor will discuss and practically demonstrate the following:

Rope work

Short Passage- for power

Short passage -for sail

## 1.5 Types of Vessels



**FIGURE 1-2 CABIN CRUISER**

A cabin cruiser is a motor yacht designed for living aboard and can have single or multiple engines.



**FIGURE 1-1 SAILBOAT**

A sailing vessel is a boat that is driven by the power of the wind and may be fitted with an auxiliary engine.



**FIGURE 1-3 ROWBOAT WITH OARS**



**FIGURE 1-4 FISHING TRAWLER**

A fishing trawler is used for fishing in coastal waters and can come in various sizes.



**FIGURE 1-5 SPEEDBOAT / DAY FISHING BOAT**

Recreational day fishing boat or speedboat. Sometimes referred to as a bass boat.



**FIGURE 1-7 SPORTFISH BOAT**

A sportfish boat is a power vessel rigged for sport game fishing with long poles reaching upwards known as outriggers which are used for passing fishing lines through when trawling.



**FIGURE 1-6 SUPERYACHT**

A superyacht is a yacht which is owned by a private individual or a corporation and is crewed by professional crew, who live onboard full time and are paid a salary.

**FIGURE 1-10 CRUISESHIP**

A cruise ship is a passenger ship used for pleasure voyages and can carry thousands of passengers. They travel the globe and offer passengers a wonderful opportunity to visit places that one would not normally visit.

**FIGURE 1-8 OIL TANKER**

An oil tanker (petroleum tanker) is a merchant ship designed solely for the transportation of oil. Many oil tankers have double hulls to prevent an oil spill in the event of a collision.

**FIGURE 1-11 CONTAINER SHIP**

Container ships are cargo ships that carry all of their load in truck-size containers. In bad weather, containers sometimes fall off these ships and are a hazard to navigation and small boats and yachts.

**FIGURE 1-9 RIB (RIGID INFLATABLE BOAT)**

A rigid inflatable boat is a lightweight high-performance boat often used for rescue and/or transporting guests ashore from cabin cruisers and superyachts.

**FIGURE 1-13 DHOW**

A dhow is a type of sailing vessel used by Arabs on the east African, Arabian and Indian coasts. They have been in use for thousands of years.

**FIGURE 1-12 CANOE**

A canoe is a slender open boat tapering to a point at both ends propelled by paddles.

**FIGURE 1-15 KAYAK**

A kayak has a light framework, pointed ends and is made watertight by having a flexible closure around the waist of the occupant. It is propelled with a double-bladed paddle.

**FIGURE 1-14 JET SKI  
(PERSONAL WATERCRAFT / PWC)**

A water- jet propelled boat or craft, ridden like a motorcycle which has a safety lanyard so that the engine will shut down if the operator falls off.

## 1.6 Sailing Vessels



**FIGURE 1-16 SAILING DINGHY**

A sailing dinghy is a small boat with a center keel, mainsail (sometimes a jib sail) and is steered using a tiller/rudder. The wind is the only means of propulsion.



**FIGURE 1-17 SLOOP**

A sail boat with a single mast and a fore-and-aft rig (sails).



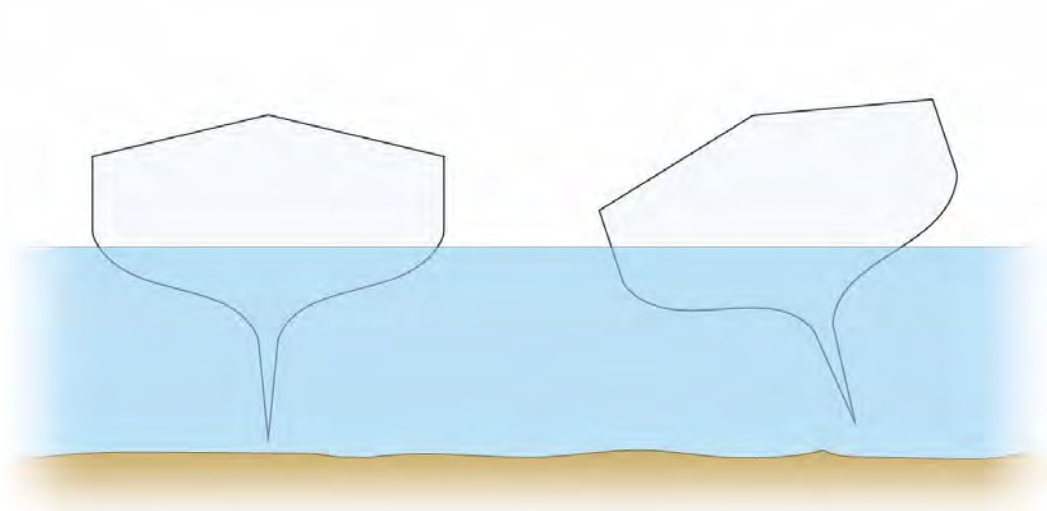
**FIGURE 1-18 BERMUDA-RIGGED KETCH**

A sailing craft with two masts.



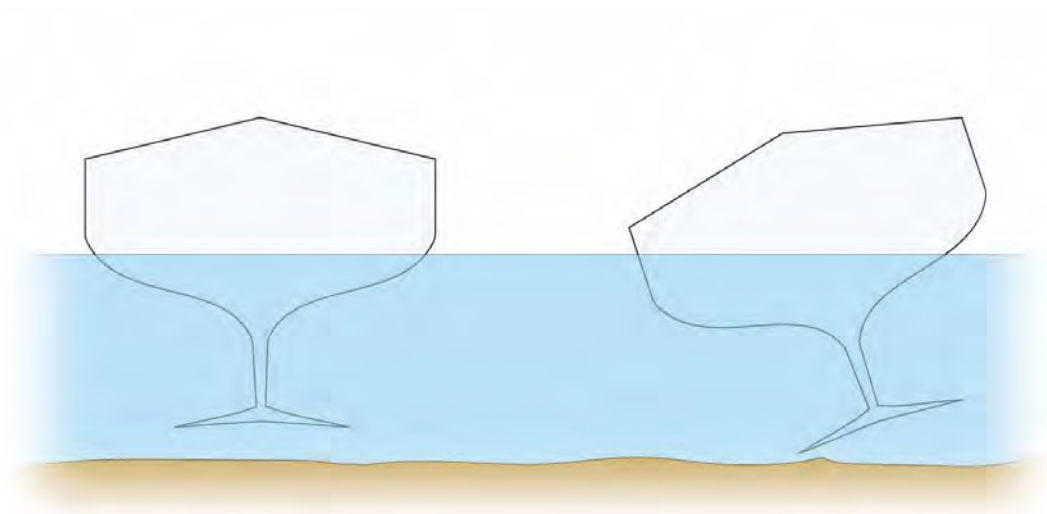
**FIGURE 1-19 SCHOONER**

A schooner is a type of sailing vessel with fore-and-aft sails on two or more masts, the foremast being no taller than the rear mast(s).



**FIGURE 1-19 FIN KEEL (SAILBOAT)**

A fin keel is a projection from the bottom (hull) of a vessel to give it additional stability and is generally made of lead.



**FIGURE 1-21 WING KEEL (SAILBOAT)**

Winged keels are generally found on sailboats that sail in shallow waters. They are only of benefit for yachts sailing upwind where stability and the ability to produce side force are important and where the depth of the water is limited.

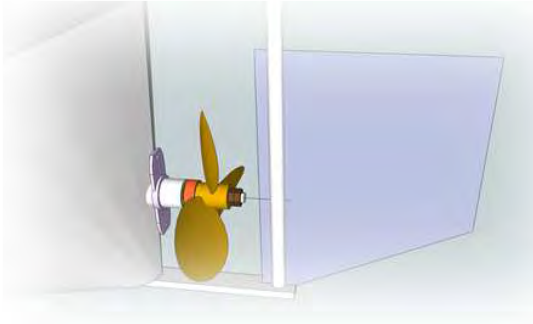


FIGURE 1-21 RUDDER



A rudder is a primary control surface used to steer a ship, boat, submarine or hovercraft.

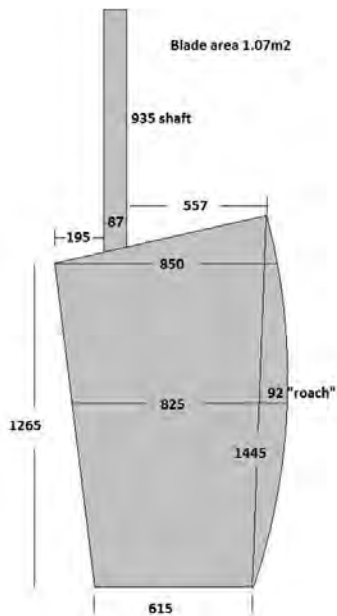


FIGURE 1-20 SPADE RUDDER



FIGURE 1-22 TRANSOM HUNG RUDDER

A spade rudder has an elongated shape. Most often found on sailboats



**FIGURE 1-24 FRACTIONAL RIG**

A fractional rig on a sailing vessel consists of a foresail, such as a jib or genoa sail where the forestay does not reach all the way to the top of the mast.



**FIGURE 1-23 MASTHEAD RIG**

A masthead rig on a sailing vessel consists of a forestay and backstay both attached at the top of the mast.



**FIGURE 1-25 BACKSTAY**

Backstays support the mast on cruising yachts. A backstay runs from each lateral corner of the stern to the top of the mast.



**FIGURE 1-26 FORESTAY (HEADSTAY)**

On a sailing vessel, a forestay, sometimes just called a stay, is a piece of standing rigging which keeps a mast from falling backwards. It is attached either at the very top of the mast, or in fractional rigs between about  $1/8$  and  $1/4$  from the top of the mast. The other end of the forestay is attached to the bow.

## 1.7 Hull Types

The “hull” is the bottom of the boat. There are many types of vessel with an assorted combination of hull and engine configurations.

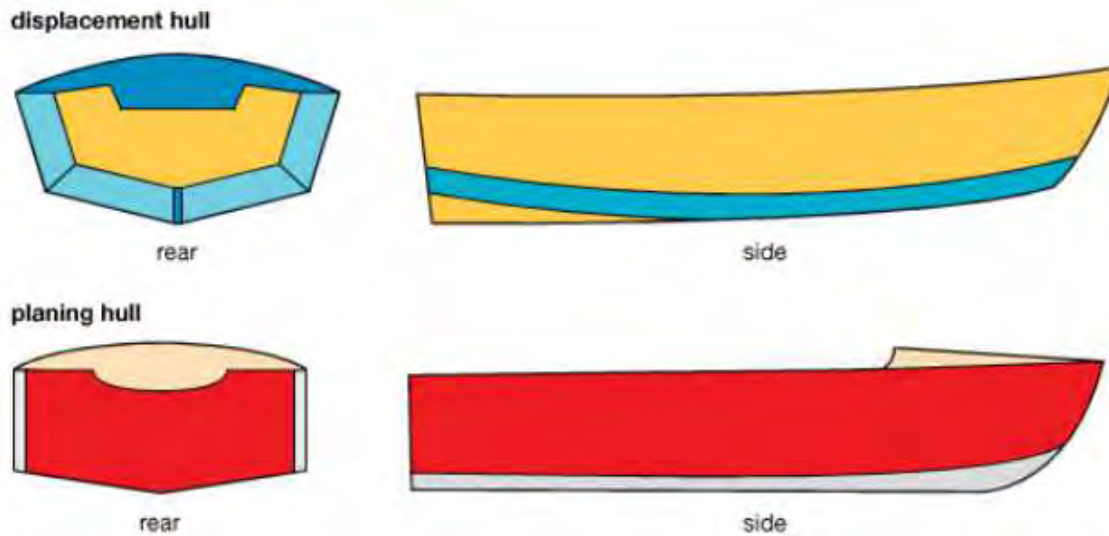


FIGURE 1-27 HULL TYPES

**Displacement hulls** are designed to power through the water. They are mostly found on sailing boats and trawler type boats. The advantages of a displacement hull are lower power requirements than a planing hull, allowing a longer cruising range and increased load carrying ability.

**Planing hulls** are designed to glide on the water’s surface as the boat’s speed increases. The advantages of a planing hull are shorter journey times but the disadvantage is the power needed to get a boat onto the “plane” and the amount of fuel required to do so.

## 1.8 Power Vessel Hull Shapes

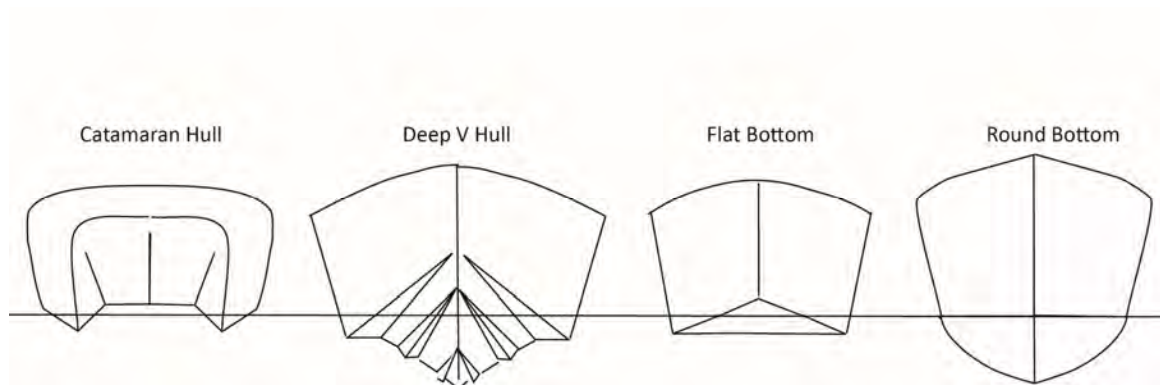


FIGURE 1-28 POWER VESSEL HULL SHAPES

### Catamaran (Multihull)

Catamarans, trimarans, pontoon boats and some house boats use a multi-hull design. The wide stance provides greater stability. A catamaran needs a wide turning circle due to its wide beam. They can be power or sail boats.

### Deep V Hull

The V bottom tends to have a sharper entry into the water which provides for a smoother ride in rough water. They are slower than planning hulls as they travel through the water rather than above it. Many runabouts use the V-bottom design, they do however roll and bank in sharp turns and beam seas.

### Flat Bottom Hull

These boats are generally less expensive to build and have a shallow draft (the part of the boat that's under the water). They can get up on plane easily but unless the water is very calm they tend to give a rough ride because of the flat bottom pounding on each wave. They also tend to be less stable and require careful balancing of cargo and crew. They are good for fishing in lakes and rivers but not recommended in heavy weather or high seas.

### Round Bottom

These move easily through the water, especially at slow speeds. They do, however, tend to roll unless they are outfitted with a deep keel or “stabilizers”.

### 1.9 Parts of a Vessel and Nautical Terminology

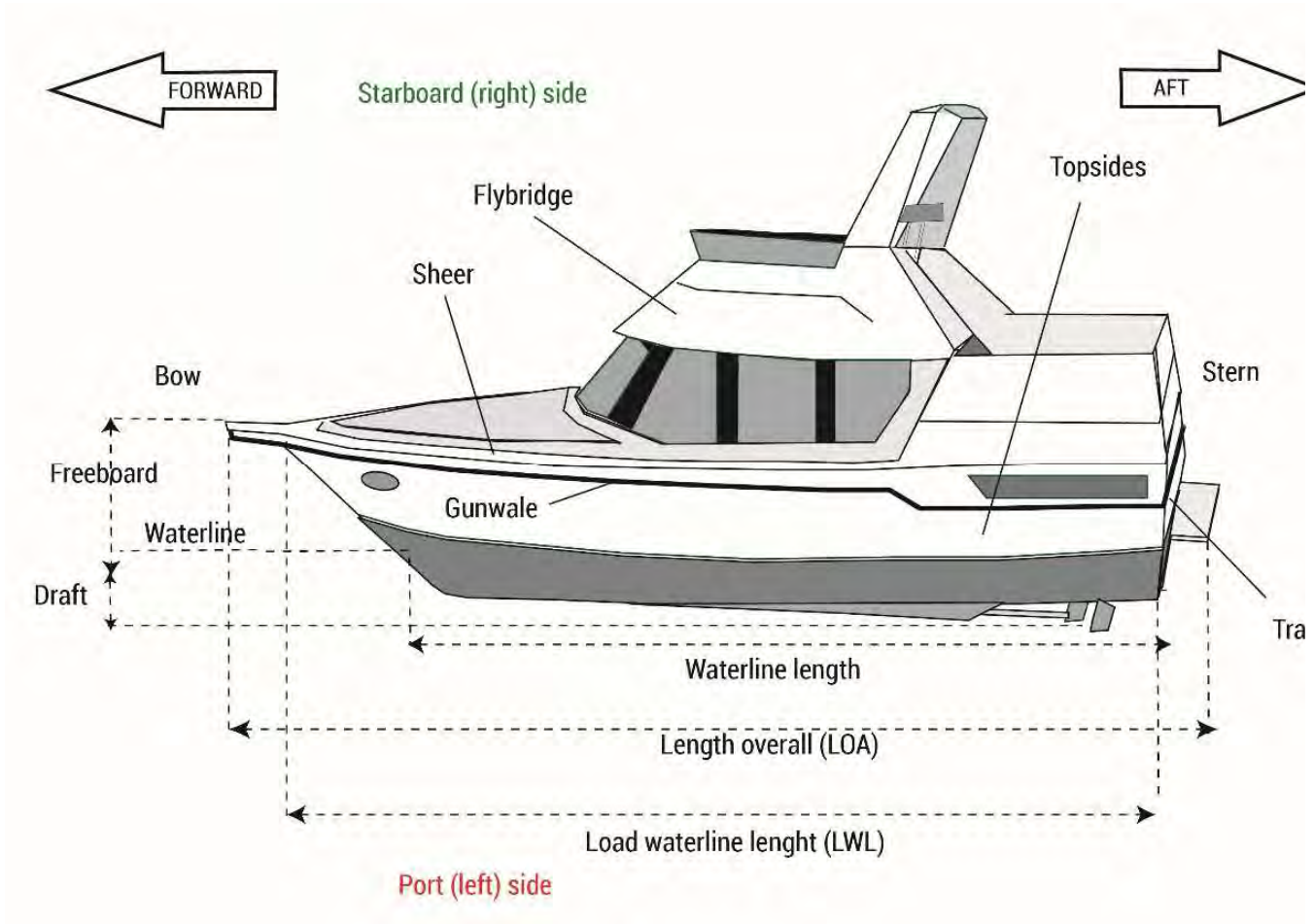


FIGURE 1-29 PARTS OF A VESSEL AND TERMS

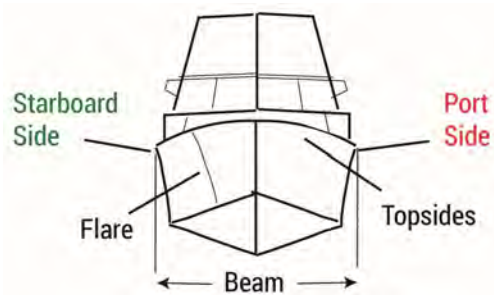


FIGURE 1-30 POWERBOAT FROM BOW

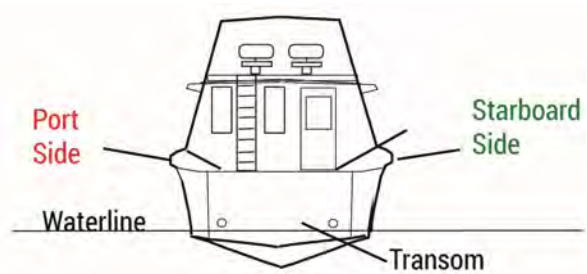


FIGURE 1-31 POWERBOAT FROM STERN

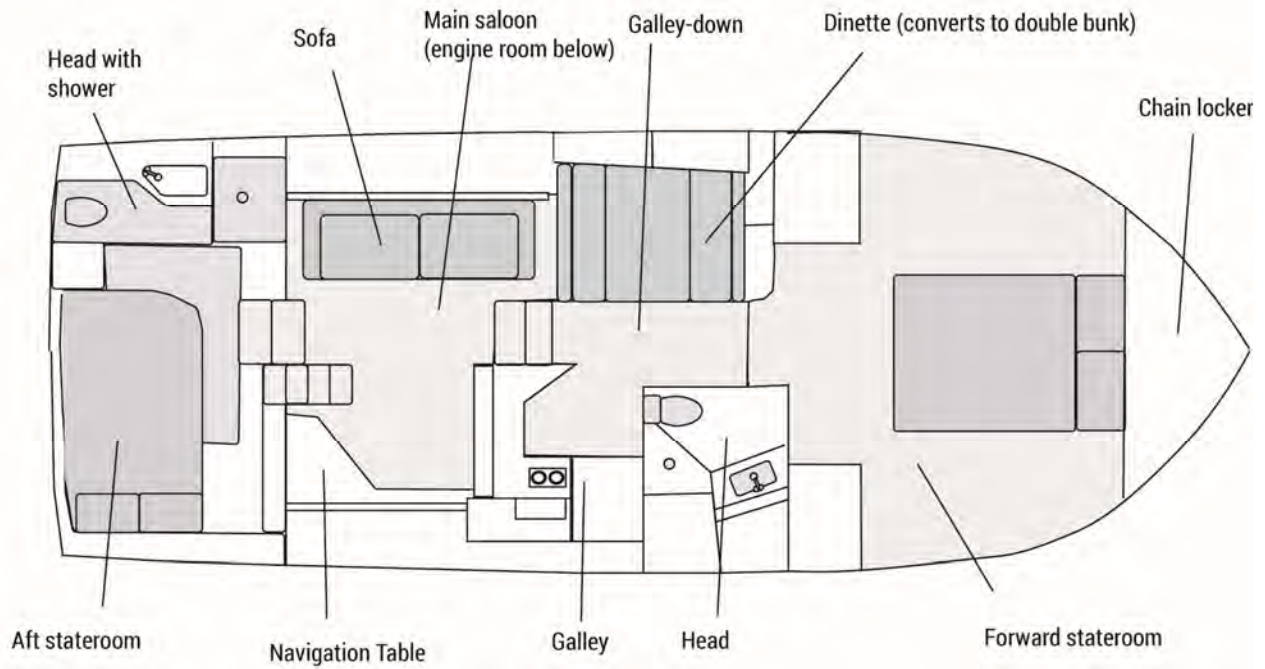


FIGURE 1-33 POWERBOAT DIAGRAM

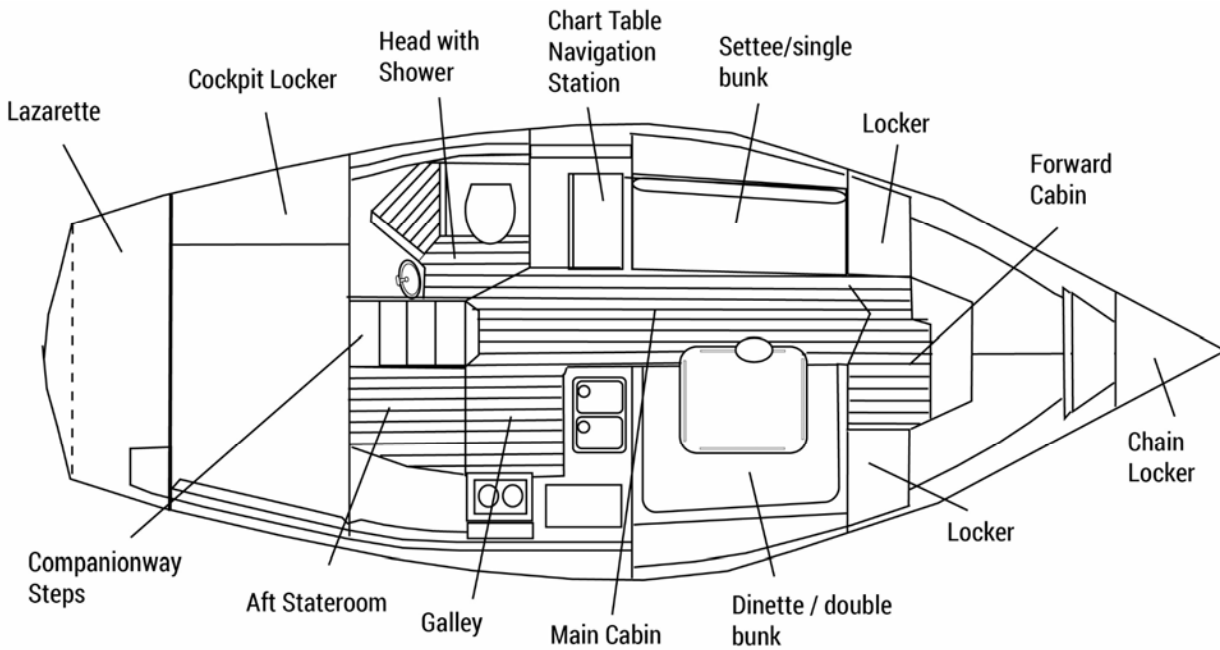


FIGURE 1-32 SAILBOAT DIAGRAM

## General terms to define a vessel

**Length overall (LOA)** - The overall fore and aft length of the hull.

**Waterline** - The line where the surface of the water reaches on the hull.

**Load waterline length (LWL)** - The fore and aft length of the hull measured at the waterline.

**Beam** - The width of a vessel at its widest point.

**Freeboard** - The height of the side of a vessel above the water.

**Draught** - The depth of the lowest part of the vessel in the water.

**Design waterline** – The waterline when a boat is at its recommended gross load capacity

**Keel** - A weighted projecting fin fixed on the centerline of a vessel which provides stability and reduces sideways drift.

**Gross Tonnage (GT)** - is a measurement of a ship's overall internal volume. Gross tonnage is calculated by measuring a ship's volume and applying a mathematical formula. 100 cubic feet is 1 gross ton.

**Operate** – to control the speed and course of the boat.

The area of the vessel that is below the waterline is painted with a special paint which inhibits growth of weed and shell fish and is called "antifouling paint".

## 1.10 Deck Equipment and Fittings



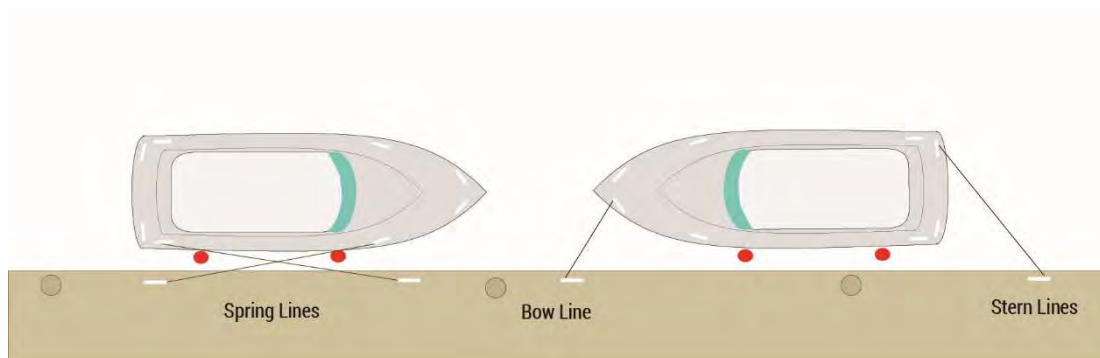
**FIGURE 1-35 CLEAT**

A cleat is a device for securing a line to a deck or dock. The line secures the boat against a dock.



**FIGURE 1-34 FAIRLEADS**

A fairlead is a device to guide a line, rope or cable around an object, out of the way or to stop it from moving laterally. Typically, a fairlead will be a ring or hook.



**FIGURE 1-36 DOCKING DIAGRAM / CLEATS ON DOCK AND BOAT**

**Docking Lines** - required to secure a vessel properly are:

- **Bow line.** A line that is lead forward from the bow of the boat.
- **Stern line.** A line that is lead aft from the stern of the boat.
- **Spring lines.** One line leads from the bow of the vessel aft of midships to the dock and one from the stern of the vessel lead forward of midships to the dock. These stop the boat moving fore and aft and should be taut.

**FIGURE 1-37 FENDERS**

In boating, a fender is a bumper used to absorb the kinetic energy of a boat or vessel berthing against a jetty, quay wall or other vessel. Fenders are used to prevent damage to boats, vessels and berthing structures.

**FIGURE 1-38 MOORING BUOY**

A mooring buoy is anchored to the lake or sea floor and is used to secure a vessel for short stays.

**FIGURE 1-39 STANCHION**

On deck there will generally be a protective rail to prevent a person falling overboard. These are generally wire ropes attached at the bow and stern and supported at intervals by upright metal poles called "stanchions".

**FIGURE 1-40 POWERBOAT PULPIT**

On most boats there is usually a metal frame around the bows called the "pulpit".



**FIGURE 1-41 SAILBOAT STERNRAIL**

On most boats there is usually a metal frame around the stern called the “sternrail”.



**FIGURE 1-42 POWERBOAT FOREDECK**

The foredeck is the deck area in front of a mast on a sailboat or in front of the cockpit on a motorboat



**FIGURE 1-43 COACH ROOF**

The raised part of the deck to create headroom below decks.



**FIGURE 1-45 GRAB RAILS**

Rails attached either to the coach roof or inside the cabins for holding on to while at sea.



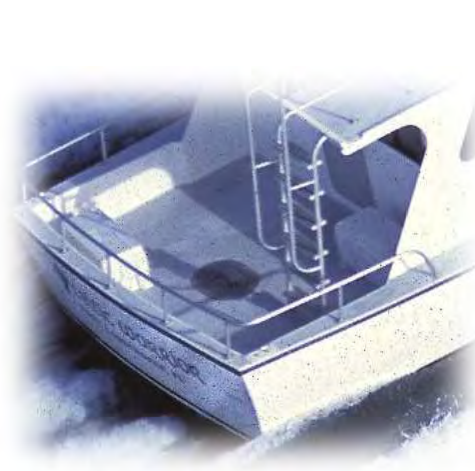
**FIGURE 1-44 JACKSTAY**

A wire or webbing strap attached at the front and back of a vessel along the deck to which a safety harness line may be clipped. (mostly found on sailboats)



**FIGURE 1-46 TOE RAIL**

A low timber or metal strip running around the outer edge of the deck to assist the crew in maintaining a foothold.



**FIGURE 1-47 COCKPIT**

A self-draining recess in the after part of a vessel.



**FIGURE 1-48 COMPANIONWAY  
(SAILBOAT)**



**FIGURE 1-49 COMPANIONWAY SUPERYACHT (POWER)**

A Companionway is a stairwell giving access from the deck to the cabin.



**FIGURE 1-50 WASHBOARDS**

These are boards used to seal off the companionway to prevent the entry of water in heavy weather.



**FIGURE 1-51 HATCH**

An opening in the deck that gives access to the space below.

**FIGURE 1-55 BOWSPRIT**

A bowsprit is a spar which projects from the bow of some boats to allow headsails to be secured further forward.

**FIGURE 1-54 DODGER ON SAILBOAT**

A dodger is a demountable cover, rigged over the companionway and the forward end of the cockpit to protect the crew from wind and water spray.

**FIGURE 1-53 BIMINI ON SAILBOAT**

A bimini is a canvas canopy to shade an area of deck or cockpit from the sun.

**FIGURE 1-53 BIMINI ON POWERBOAT****FIGURE 1-56 WINDLASS FOR HAULING ANCHOR**

A windlass is a winch which is positioned on the foredeck and used for hauling in anchor chain and rope. They can be either manual or electric.

**FIGURE 1-57 ANCHOR**

A device attached to rope or chain which is lowered to the seabed to hold a vessel in place.

**FIGURE 1-58 VENTILATORS**

Ventilators are movable devices fixed to the deck to carry fresh air below without permitting the entry of water.

**FIGURE 1-59 CONSOLE**

The steering console is where the steering wheel, instrumentation and throttle control are located.

**FIGURE 1-60 THROTTLE CONTROL**

The throttle control/transmission control selects forward, neutral and reverse gears and controls propeller speed.

**FIGURE 1-61 TILLER**

A tiller can be used to steer small boats. It is attached to the rudder.



**FIGURE 1-63 THRU-HULL FITTING**

Thru hull fittings are designed to allow water to pass through them from inside a boat, such as the sinks, toilets and for engine water cooling.



**FIGURE 1-62 WATER PUMP**

Water is delivered on small vessels to taps or faucets which have a pump attached. This may be a simple hand pump on the faucet or a foot pump located beneath the sink. On larger vessels the water system is pressurized by means of an electric water pump. This pressurized container is called an accumulator and prevents the water pump from activating every time a faucet is switched on.



**FIGURE 1-64 ELECTRIC & MANUAL BILGE PUMPS**

On all boats there is an accumulation of water at the bottom of the boat, and sometimes oil and other liquids accumulate in the lowest part of the vessel known as the bilge. There are two types of bilge pumps, manual and electric, that are used to pump out this water.

**Manual pump** - mounted so that a crew member can manually pump overboard any water which has accumulated in the bilges.

**Electric pump** - operated by pushing a switch and does the same job as a manual pump. Often bilge pumps are operated by a float switch, this works on a simple principal that when the water rises the float on the switch rises which turns on the pump.



**FIGURE 1-65 BILGE FLOAT SWITCH**

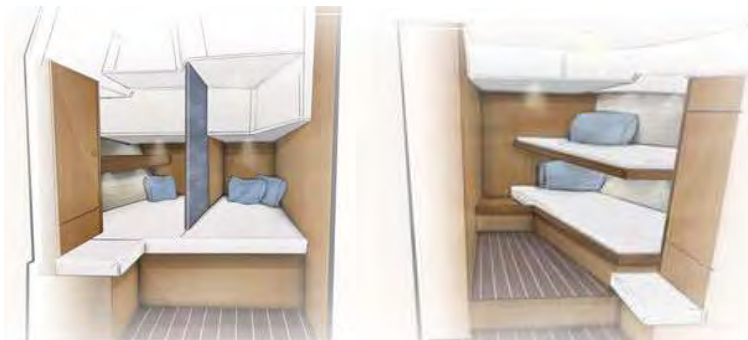
## 1.11 Accommodation

In a vessel, the floor is known as the "cabin sole", the walls are "bulkheads" and the ceilings are "deck heads".



**FIGURE 1-66 SALOON AND GALLEY**

This is the living room on board a boat and will consist of seating and possibly contain music, TV and an entertainment center. The larger the boat the more lavish the equipment and fittings are likely to be.



**FIGURE 1-67 CABIN OR STATEROOM**

These are the "bedrooms" and may consist of a single "bunk" or bed, to king size suites on supervachts.

**FIGURE 1-69 DINETTE**

The dining area of the boat may be simply a small table with bench seating to a full scale dining room setting on a large yacht.

**FIGURE 1-70 GALLEY**

The kitchen on a vessel and the equipment contained will depend on the size of the yacht and the number of crew it carries.

**FIGURE 1-68 FOREPEAK**

The forepeak is the space forward in the bow of the boat. Usually sleeping accommodation or sometimes used as storage for sails, tools, etc.

**FIGURE 1-71 ANCHOR LOCKER**

The anchor locker is where the anchor and anchor chain and rode (line) is stored.

## 1.12 Engine & Drivetrains

**Outboard motors** are by far the most popular type of motor for small craft. They are a demountable self-contained unit available in 2 stroke or 4 stroke configurations with a wide range of power/size applications. Easily removed for maintenance, storage and cleaning, they have the ability to be raised/tilted hydraulically or manually for shallow water operations.

An **inboard motor** is a marine propulsion system for boats. As opposed to an outboard motor where an engine is mounted outside the hull of the craft, an inboard motor is an engine enclosed within the hull of the boat, usually connected to a propulsion screw by a driveshaft.

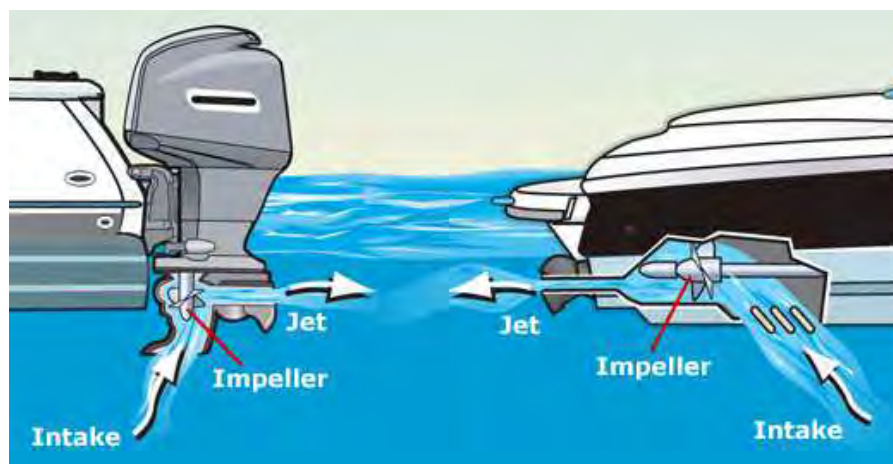


FIGURE 1-72 OUTBOARD (LEFT) & INBOARD (RIGHT)

A **sterndrive** or “inboard/outboard” is a form of marine propulsion which combines inboard power with outboard drive. The engine sits just forward of the transom while the drive unit (outdrive or drive leg) lies outside the hull.

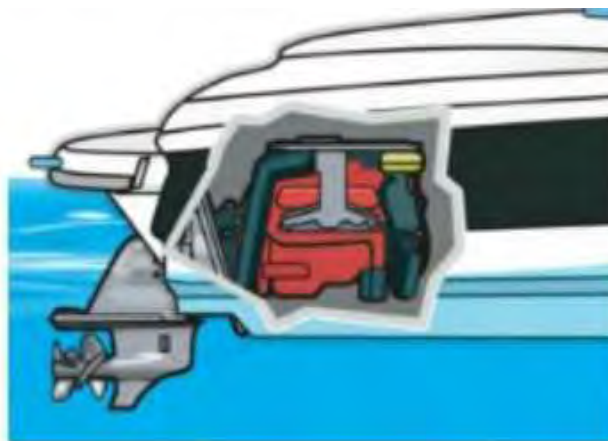


FIGURE 1-73 STERNDRIVE (INBOARD/OUTBOARD)

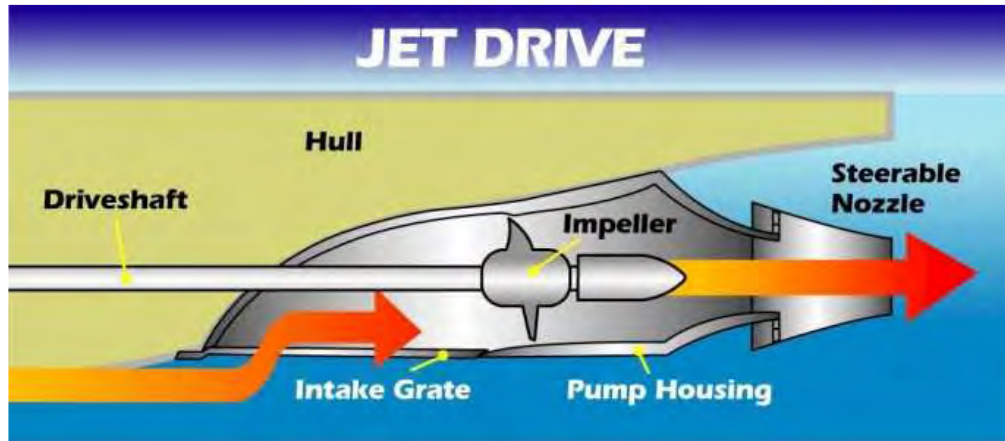


FIGURE 1-74 JET DRIVE

A **jet drive** is a propulsion system that does not have propellers, which are a potential danger to people in the water and to marine life. Jet drives are usually inboard engines that take in water that flows through a pump powered by an impeller. The water is then discharged at high pressure through a nozzle propelling the boat forward. The nozzle swivels to provide steering to the boat. All personal watercraft use jet drives.

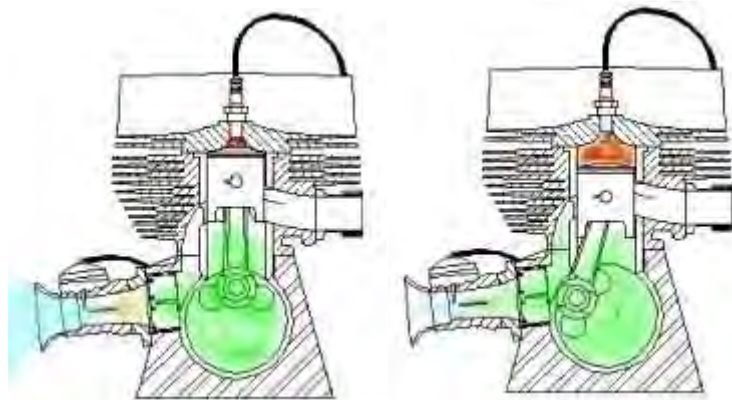


FIGURE 1-75 2 STROKE ENGINE DIAGRAM

A two-stroke, or two-cycle, engine is a type of internal combustion engine which completes a power cycle with two strokes (up and down movements) of the piston during only one crankshaft revolution. This is in contrast to a "four-stroke engine", which requires four strokes of the piston to complete a power cycle.



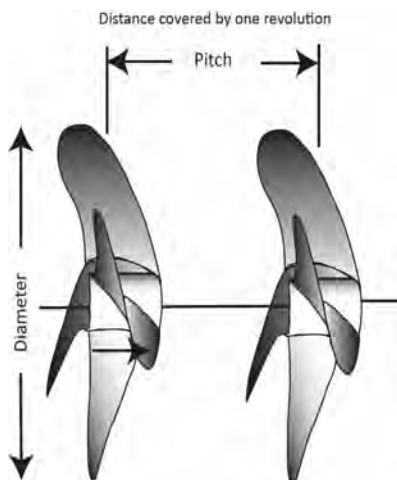
**FIGURE 1-76 PETROL  
OUTBOARD ENGINE**

A petrol engine (known as a gasoline engine in North America) is an internal combustion engine with spark-ignition, designed to run on petrol (gasoline).



**FIGURE 1-77 MARINE  
DIESEL ENGINE**

The diesel engine (also known as a compression-ignition or 'CI' engine) is an internal combustion engine in which ignition of the fuel that has been injected into the combustion chamber is initiated by the high temperature which a gas achieves when greatly compressed (adiabatic compression). This contrasts with spark-ignition engines such as a petrol engine (gasoline engine) or gas engine which use a spark plug to ignite an air-fuel mixture.



**FIGURE 1-78 PROPELLERS**

A power driven vessel requires an engine or engines to drive a “propeller” commonly known as a “screw” which is a rotating device with a number of different “blades”, from 2 to 5 depending upon hull type and performance requirements. Propellers are classed by 3 different features- “hand”, “diameter” and “pitch”. For example, a 3 bladed prop may be R 10” x 28” which means it will turn “right hand” or clockwise in forward gear, has a diameter of 10 inches and the pitch (the angle that the blades are set) is 28 inches which is the (theoretical) distance the prop would travel in one rotation.



**FIGURE 1-79 FEATHERING PROPELLERS**

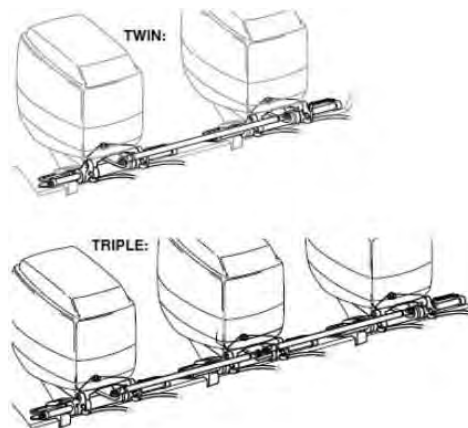
Feathering the propellers is changing the propeller blade by angling the blades parallel to airflow or water flow.

### 1.13 Inflatables and RIBS



**FIGURE 1-81 KILL CORD**

A kill Cord is an engine cut-out device, one end of which is attached to a switch near the throttle and the other to the driver's wrist. In the event of the helmsman falling overboard this device will stop the engine.



**FIGURE 1-80 MULTIPLE OUTBOARD ENGINES**

Outboard engines can be easily removed for maintenance, storage and cleaning they have the ability to be raised/tilted hydraulically or manually for shallow water operations. They are attached to the transom (stern) of a boat.

Boats may have more than one outboard engine.

## 1.14 Instruments and Electronics

Not all vessels will be equipped with all the instruments discussed below. There are many different types and makes of instruments but the information they relay is the same.

### The Magnetic Compass

The compass is perhaps the most important instrument on a boat. It is essential for navigation when out of sight of land, during the hours of darkness and at times of restricted visibility, e.g. fog, rain etc. where the compass is used to steer pre-determined magnetic courses. A hand-bearing compass is also used for some position fixing techniques which will be covered in greater detail in a further module.



FIGURE 1-83 GIMBALED COMPASS



FIGURE 1-82 HAND-BEARING COMPASS

### How does a Compass work?

A magnetic compass is an instrument used to find direction. All magnetic compasses operate on the same principle; the compass is simply a circular card, graduated with  $0^{\circ}$  -  $360^{\circ}$  (degrees) marked on its circumference and supported on a pivot point in a sealed bowl filled with a water/alcohol mixture which dampens or slows the movement of the card on the pivot. Two or more bar magnets are attached to the underside of the card, aligned to the north/south ( $0^{\circ}$  -  $180^{\circ}$ ) axis of the card. The bar magnets in the instrument follow the magnetic lines of force that circle the earth and the compass card "north point" will always point to the north magnetic pole. (These lines of force are generated by the earth's magnetic field).

The compass is "gimbal" mounted which means that no matter how the vessel heels/rolls or pitches the compass card will remain level.



FIGURE 1-84 GIMBALED COMPASS

## Compass Direction

When a vessel is traveling through the water, the direction it is heading is known as the "course". In order to help determine the direction of travel, a vessel will use a compass which is divided into 360° (degrees) and points to the magnetic north pole. Any object may be described in terms of a "compass bearing" from the vessel, such as another vessel sighted at 45 degrees off the starboard bow where zero degrees represents magnetic north.

## Depth Sounder

A depth sounder determines the depth of water beneath a vessel. The equipment comprises of a transmitter with a digital or pictorial display screen close to the helm, and a transducer sensor mounted through the vessels hull near the bottom of the hull. The transmitter sends pulses through the transducer, which picks up the returned pulse after it has "bounced" off the sea floor. The time the returning echo takes to return is interpreted by the transmitter, which displays the water's depth on the screen.



**FIGURE 1-85 DEPTH  
SOUNDER**



**FIGURE 1-86  
BAROMETER**

## Barometer

A barometer is an instrument which indicates the atmospheric pressure. A single reading of barometric pressure gives no worthwhile information, it is the rate of change of pressure that is important in itself and this can only be gained from a series of readings, hence the importance of recording barometer pressure on a regular basis in the boat's log book. A "barograph" is available which records the pressure variance either on paper charts or electronically.



**FIGURE 1-87 GPS SYSTEM**

## Log

The log is an instrument for measuring the vessel's speed through the water. Boat speed is usually measured in "knots" (nautical miles per hour, which is approximately 2000 yards per hour). One "knot" is approximately 1.15 statute miles. The navigator uses this to determine how far the vessel has traveled and to estimate likely arrival time at the destination.



**FIGURE 1-88  
HANDHELD GPS**

## GPS (Global Positioning System)

GPS is a global navigation system using radio signals from a transceiver which communicates with a number of satellites and automatically computes the

vessels location, heading and speed. The transceiver will have a display mounted close to the helm. There is a digital read-out of the vessel's speed and position (Latitude and Longitude) together with additional information for use by the navigator. The GPS receiver may have a charting function or may be connected to a "Chart Plotter" which will show the position of the vessel graphically on a chart displayed on the screen.

## Radar

Radar is used to detect another vessel or object, and show the "range" (distance) and bearing to the object. Detection is achieved by transmitting a short burst of electromagnetic energy so that it can strike an object, reflect back, and be detected by the receiver. The data is then processed and displayed on a screen mounted close to the helm.



FIGURE 1-89 RADAR SCREEN



FIGURE 1-90 RADAR REFLECTOR



FIGURE 1-91 SPINNING RADAR DOME

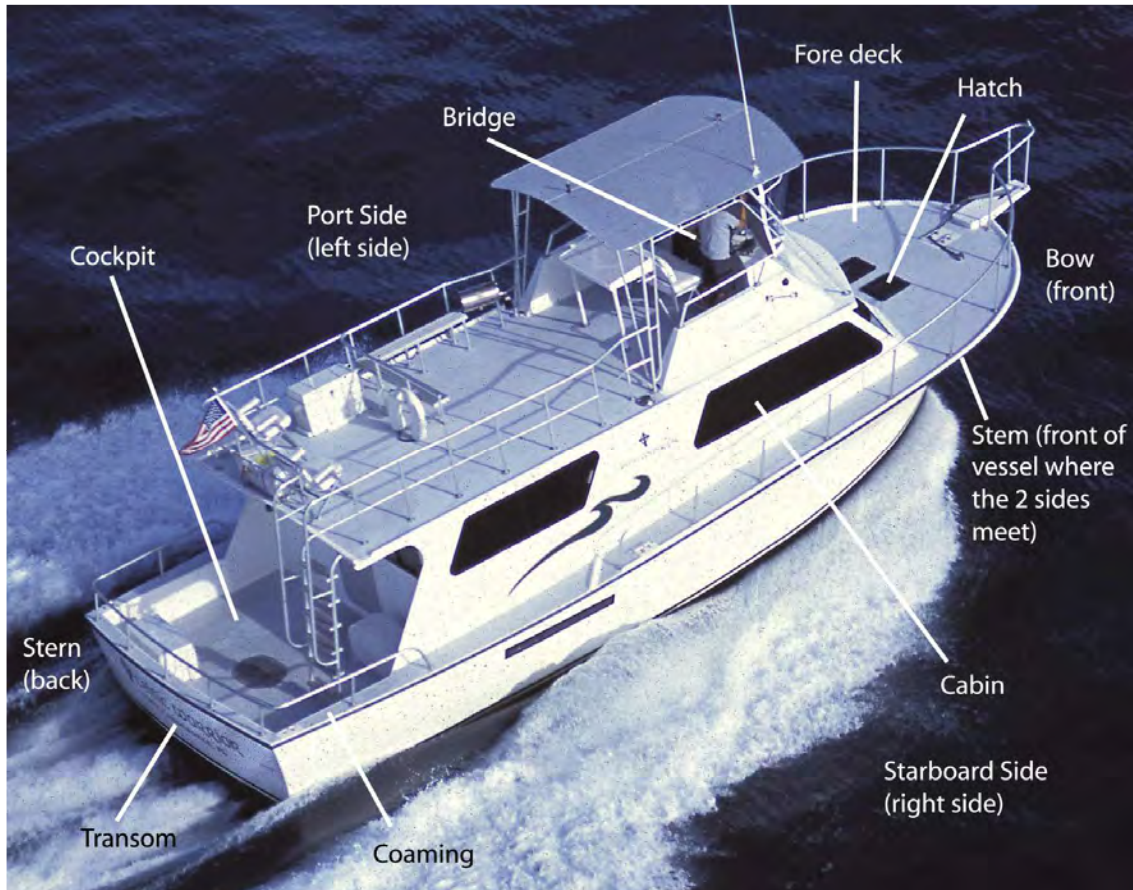
A radar reflector is a device fitted to boats to ensure they are seen on radar screens. Boats made of fibreglass or wood do not reflect the radar pulse very well which can result in collisions during limited visibility.

The spinning radar on a boat is a unit that usually sits at the highest part of the structure. It scans the horizon to pick up any radio magnetic signals from objects within range over a 360-degree pattern.

Information from the radar dome is transmitted to the radar screen in the wheelhouse.

## Relative Direction

When on board a vessel, there are correct ways of describing the location of surrounding objects. These are known as "relative bearings" and are based on the direction of the object in relation to the vessel. For example, an object directly in front of the vessel is referred to as "dead ahead" and one directly behind as "dead astern". Any object at 90 degrees to the vessel is known as "abeam". This can be abeam to port or abeam to starboard.



**FIGURE 1-92 PARTS OF A HULL AND VESSEL**

### Wake

A wake is the region of disturbed water flow caused by a vessel passing through the water. Generally speaking, the faster a boat travels the larger the wake it produces. (except in the case of planning hulls which ride on top of the water)

## 1.15 Windward/Leeward

On a vessel, reference is made to the direction from which the wind is blowing relative to the vessel, the side of the vessel from which the wind blows is known as the "windward" side, whilst the opposite side is known as the "leeward" side.



FIGURE 1-93 WINDWARD & LEEWARD - POWER



FIGURE 1-94 WINDWARD & LEEWARD - SAIL

## 1.16 Introduction to Collision Regulations

### Basic collision regulations (rules of the road)

All activities on the water are governed by a set of international regulations. These regulations are known as the INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA, (1972). This set of regulations runs to many pages and the full text is beyond the scope of this module, we will however discuss the most important sections.

#### Steering & sailing rules

This section defines what action must be taken by vessels to avoid collisions under specific circumstances.

One of the most important of all the Rules is Rule 5 which is given here verbatim:

#### ***“Rule 5. Lookout***

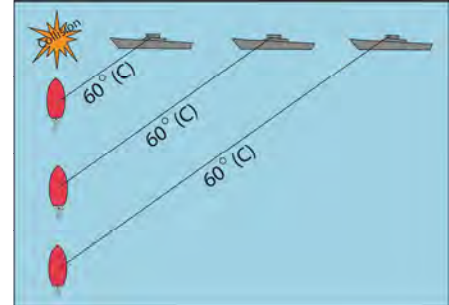
Every vessel shall at all times maintain a proper lookout by sight and hearing as well as by all available means appropriate in the prevailing circumstances and conditions so as to make a full appraisal of the situation and of the risk of collision.”

**Safe speed**

Vessels shall at all times proceed at a safe speed taking into consideration visibility, traffic density, maneuverability of the vessel, background lights at night and sea state.

**Determining if risk of collision exists**

Vessels shall use all available means to determine if risk of collision exists. Risk of collision shall be deemed to exist if the compass bearing of an approaching vessel does not appreciably change; risk of collision may sometimes exist with a large vessel, a tow or a vessel at close range even if the bearing does change appreciably. If there is any doubt, risk of collision shall be deemed to exist.



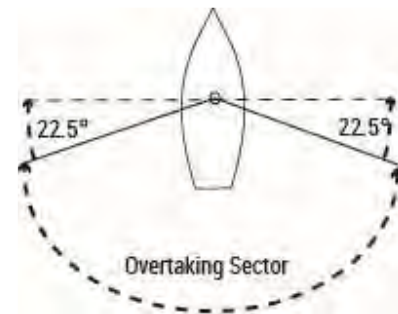
Assumptions shall not be made on the basis of scanty information, especially scanty radar information.

**Action when in a Channel**

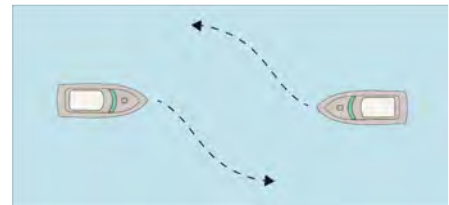
When in a channel all vessels should stay to the right hand or Starboard side, as near to the outer limit of the channel as is safe and practicable (Rule 9)

**Overtaking**

Any vessel overtaking any other vessel shall keep out of the way of the vessel being overtaken. A vessel is deemed to be overtaking if she is coming up with another vessel from a direction more than 22.5° abaft her beam. In other words at night time only the stern light of the vessel being overtaken would be visible.



If a vessel is in any doubt as to whether she is overtaking she must assume that she is overtaking and act accordingly.

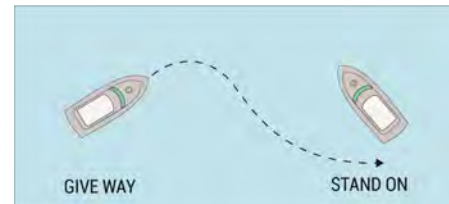


**Power driven vessels meeting head on**

When two power driven vessels are meeting head on both are required to alter course to starboard.

**Power driven vessels crossing**

When two power driven vessels are crossing, or converging, and risk of collision exists the vessel which has the other on her own starboard side must give way.

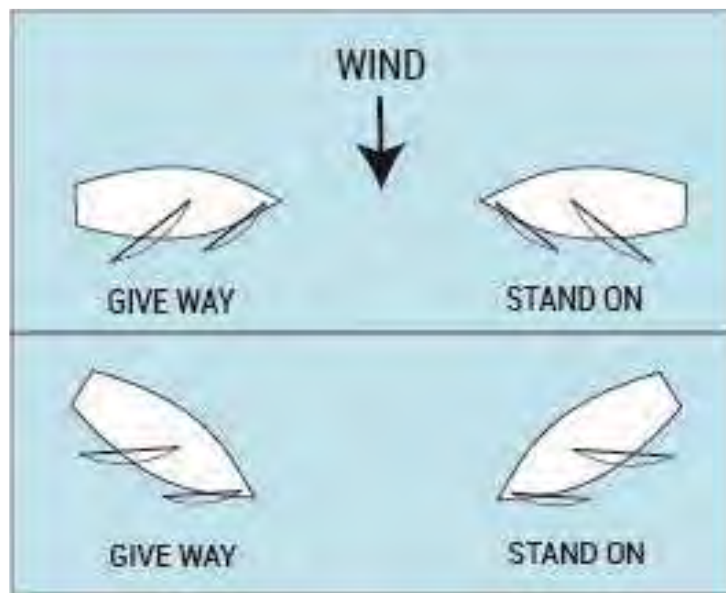


The give way vessel must not 'give way' by crossing ahead of the other vessel.

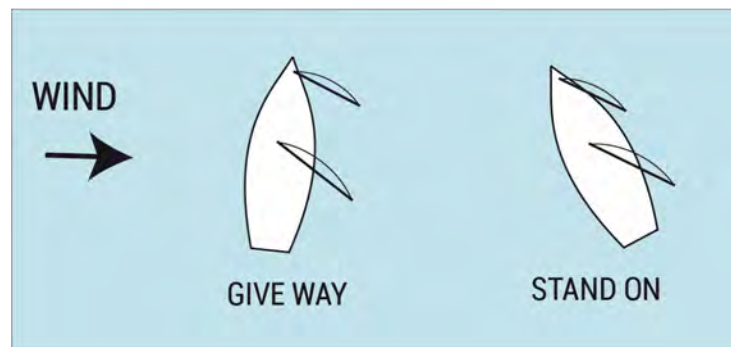
### ***Sailing Vessels***

When two sailing vessels are approaching one another, so as to avoid risk of collision, one of them shall keep out of the way of the other as follows:

1. when each has the wind on a different side, the vessel which has the wind on the port side shall keep out of the way of the other. In other words a sailing boat on port tack gives way to a sailing boat on starboard tack. A sailing vessel with the wind coming over the port side is said to be on port tack, when the wind is coming over the starboard side the vessel is said to be on starboard tack. The main sail indicates visually which tack the vessel is on as it will be carried on the opposite side to the side over which the wind is blowing.



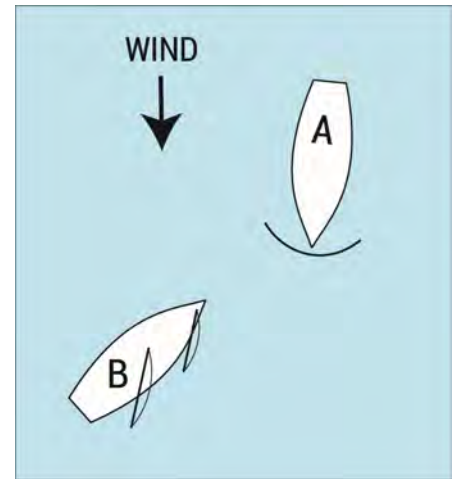
2. When both have the wind on the same side, the vessel which is to windward shall keep out of the way of the vessel which is to leeward;



3. If a vessel with the wind on the port side sees a vessel to windward and cannot determine with certainty whether the other vessel has the wind on the port or on the starboard side, she shall keep out of the way of the other.

In this diagram the yacht B, on port tack, cannot see which side the mainsail of the other boat, A, is being carried on as it is obscured by the large headsail.

To fully understand the rules it is necessary to read through them carefully, and like any legal document is open to interpretation and every situation is different. If in any doubt, give way, it's usually the safest thing to do.



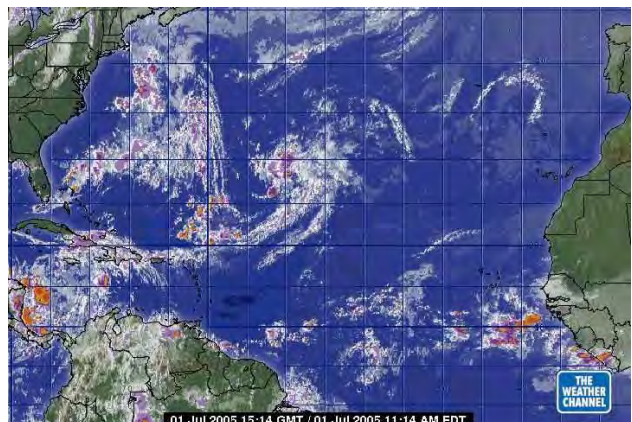
### ***Power meeting Sail***

A power-driven vessel underway shall generally keep out of the way of a sailing vessel (Rule 18)

This rule must be treated with respect and intelligence, for example, in various harbors around the world the working boats like ferries have a right of way under a "local rules" exemption to the general rules in the regulations. Equally if you are in a sailboat and see a large cargo ship in front of you flying a black barrel shaped object at its mast this means that it is "constrained by draught", or in other words can only go down the deep water channel into a harbor, and cannot get out of your way.

## 1.17 Introduction to Weather

Meteorology is the study of weather, which is caused by the movement or transfer of energy occurring with the movement of air in the atmosphere. Meteorology is a vast and very complex subject, it is worth bearing in mind that some of the most powerful computers in the world are designed to assist in the forecasting of weather, such is the complexity and difficulty involved.



However, of great importance to everyone who ventures out on the water is to obtain a weather forecast for the duration of the proposed trip. The result of obtaining such a forecast will dictate to the mariner whether to sail or not to sail.

The information that is important to know is wind speed, direction and strength, visibility and what may reduce this such as rain, fog, smoke, mist, etc., Wave height, air temperature, barometric pressure, sun strength, and the likelihood of tropical storms or hurricanes must also be taken into account.

Meteorology will be covered in greater detail in further modules.

## Sources of Weather Information

There are many sources of weather information available to the mariner, however, it is imperative to get an overall picture upon which to base your decision to sail. Below is a partial list of sources, and depending on where you are in the world, other sources may be available.

- Internet
- Radio (both VHF and commercial radio)
- Television
- Marina Offices
- Port Authority Offices
- Coastguard Organizations
- Meteorological Office
- Newspapers
- Weather fax

## To Go or not to go / sail or not to sail

Once the forecast has been received the decision to go or not to go will have to be made. If in doubt err on the side of caution and postpone the trip. Having decided to make the passage, weather updates can be received over the radio from Coastguard stations or Marine radio offices or via weather fax. One should plan to receive these updates on a regular basis throughout the passage, preferably twice daily, especially during the North Atlantic hurricane season and the South Atlantic cyclone season.

## 1.18 Introduction to Ropework

Ropes are used for a number of purposes on board a vessel, particularly on a sailing vessel. There are a number of different types of rope, each will be used for a different purpose. They will last a long time if looked after properly. If the rope has been stored badly, it will be

weakened and it will deteriorate in use. Misuse and incorrect handling will hasten this process. Contact with chemicals, gasoline/petrol/paint etc. cause serious damage to ropes and salt water has an adverse effect on them. Man made fiber ropes are badly affected by ultra-violet radiation and require protection from direct tropical sunlight. Ropes should be inspected and condemned if there are obvious defects such as broken strands, kinks or signs of rot.

Ropes should regularly be taken ashore and washed in fresh water and dried. Salt crystals harden the rope and their abrasive action shortens their life.

### Coiling a Line

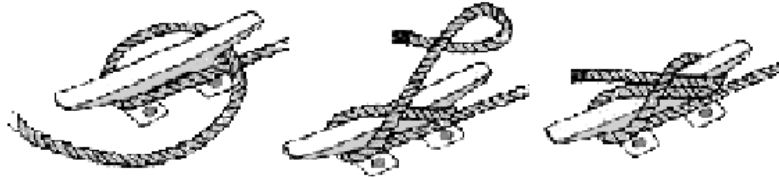
Ropes and lines should always be coiled neatly so that they are easy to access and use when needed quickly. Properly coiled lines allow the rope to run freely and not become kinked; it is also more easily stowed.

With stranded rope always coil with the lay, and for the more common right lay rope, this will be by coiling clockwise using a slight twist about half a turn, in the direction of lay as each coil is formed. When coiling a braided rope which has no lay twist must be used.



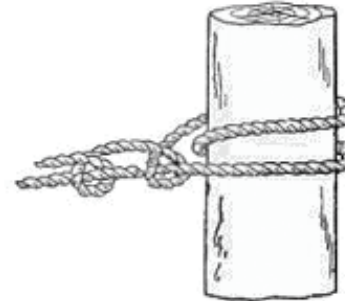
## Securing to a Cleat

The rope should be lead to the back of the cleat and a full turn taken around the base. This will hold the load. The second step is to make two figure of eight turns around the cleat finishing with another full turn around the base of the cleat. The general rule for securing a line to a cleat is "nearest side, furthest point, one round turn."

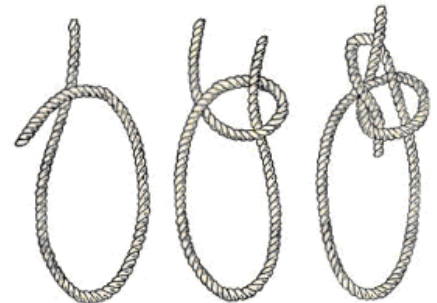


## How to tie most common knots or secure to a post

**Round Turn and Two Half Hitches** is mainly used for securing to a post or ring. The round turn creates friction, which allows the load to be held while the 2 half hitches are made.



**Bowline** creates a fixed loop in the end of a rope. It is a secure knot that is unlikely to slip or untie itself, and has the advantage of being relatively easy to untie even after being under load. Used for a number of applications such as creating a loop in a dock line or for attaching sheets to a sail.



**Figure of Eight** is a stopper knot used to prevent the end of a rope running out through a block or fairlead. It is easy to undo and is mostly used on the ends of sheets, halyards and deck lines.



See further sections for more information on 'knots', how to tie and purpose of each.

## 1.19 Knowledge Review

1. Name 8 types of vessels or boats.
2. What system of propulsion is used on a PWC?
3. Describe:
  - a. Length Overall (LOA)
  - b. Freeboard
  - c. Stern
  - d. Bow
  - e. Draft
  - f. Port
  - g. Starboard
  - h. Keel
  - i. Operate
  - j. Cleats
  - k. Bulkheads
  - l. Windward
  - m. Leeward
  - n. Radar Reflector
  - o. Fairleads
  - p. Springline
  - q. Pulpit
  - r. Sternrail
  - s. Foredeck
  - t. Grabrails
  - u. Washboards
  - v. Winch
  - w. Tiller
  - x. Thru Hull Fitting
  - y. Kill Cord
  - z. Relative Direction
  - aa. Barometer
  - bb. Companionway
4. Name 4 different types of hulls.
5. What is a forestay?
6. What is the function of a rudder?

## Module 2 PERSONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT

### 2.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS FOR ALL CREW MEMBERS TO HAVE A THOROUGH UNDERSTANDING OF THE IMPORTANCE OF LIFEJACKETS AND ALL OTHER PERSONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT, ITS OPERATION AND CORRECT STOWAGE.

### 2.2 Life Jackets

- 1) There should be at least one lifejacket per person on board every vessel. The sizes of lifejackets must be correct for each size passenger, including appropriate small sizes for any children.
- 2) A life jacket is designed to support a person's weight with their head turned upward with nose and mouth above the water. **They must be readily accessible at all times and must not be locked away in cupboards or lockers.**
- 3) **Wearing a lifejacket at all times when boating is the highest safety priority in preventing boating deaths. Not wearing a lifejacket could cost you your life. Test your lifejacket as per manufacturer's instructions.**
- 4) **There are many different types and designs of lifejackets. SOLAS lifejackets are the most internationally accepted.** Unlike other lifejackets, all SOLAS lifejackets are equipped with a whistle, a light and reflective tape and come in two sizes, over 32kg (70 lbs) and less than 32kg (70 lbs).
- 5) SOLAS, which stands for Safety of Life at Sea is a convention that was introduced by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) after the sinking of the Titanic in 1912.
- 6) The jacket is placed over the wearer's head and is then tied or clipped around the front and sides. The buoyancy may be provided by a solid material that has extremely buoyant properties, or by CO2 or a combination of both. Some CO2 filled jackets have an automatic inflation device which inflates when the lifejacket is submerged in water. To ensure correct size and buoyancy, all crew should test them



**FIGURE 2-1 SOLAS APPROVED LIFEJACKET**

in the water either by holding onto a swim platform or entering the water from a beach.

***Only a lifejacket will turn an unconscious person face-up in the water. Personal Flotation Devices (PFDs) and Buoyancy Aids, covered in the next section, will not.***



FIGURE 2-3 INFLATABLE LIFEJACKET



FIGURE 2-2 ADULT STANDARD LIFEJACKET

A standard type lifejacket will turn most unconscious wearers face up in the water and come in two sizes:

- Over 40 kg (88 lbs)
- Less than 40kg (88 lbs).



FIGURE 2-4 POUCH TYPE LIFEJACKET

These can be inflated by mouth or by pulling the toggle that activates a CO2 gas cartridge inflation system.



FIGURE 2-5 AUTOMATIC INFLATING LIFEJACKET

These inflate automatically when immersed in water. They may also be inflated manually by pulling the toggle. **They are not permitted for sports such as water skiing where they may get saturated as this will cause the jacket to inflate.**

Inflatable lifejackets are ideal for dinghy sailing and sailing vessels that require unhindered movement for hoisting and lowering sails and the use of winches. These are preferred by sailing yachtsmen and women throughout the world, especially when yacht racing. These require regular inspection, especially the CO2 cartridge as it will need to be replaced from time to time (see manufacturer's guidelines).

## 2.3 Buoyancy Aids / Personal Flotation Device (PFD)

Buoyancy aids, in some areas also known as personal flotation devices (PFD), are designed to provide buoyancy but will not turn an unconscious person upright or provide as much support as a lifejacket.

They are mainly used for watersports such as windsurfing, dinghy sailing, water skiing and kayaking. They are best suited to inland waterways, coastal operations and calm waters where there is a good chance of quick recovery. They are useful on smaller vessels where bulky life jackets may be impractical. Generally, they are the most comfortable for continuous wear and are available in many colors and styles. All PFDs must be kept in operable condition by regular checks and maintenance.



FIGURE 2-6 BUOYANCY AID OR PFD

## 2.4 Children's Lifejackets and PFDs

Ensure that children's lifejackets and PFDs are specifically designed for use by children. A child's lifejacket or PFD should have the following:

- An extra-large collar to support the head.
- A safety strap that fastens between the legs which prevents it from slipping over the child's head.
- A grab handle/strap on the collar.
- Reflective material

Children's lifejackets and PFDs have a crotch strap on them to prevent them from rising over the child's shoulders. It is imperative that this strap is fastened prior to entering the water.

Remember that a PFD should never be considered a flotation device suitable as substitution for adult supervision. The lifejacket or PFD must fit the child properly.



FIGURE 2-7 CHILDREN'S LIFEJACKET



FIGURE 2-8 CHILDREN'S PFD

## 2.5 Maintaining Lifejackets and PFDs

Boaters must be responsible for regular care and maintenance of lifejackets and PFDs.

### Care of Lifejackets and PFDs

- Inspect regularly, checking buckles, straps and zippers. If ripped or damaged they must be replaced immediately.
- They should be air-dried out of direct sunlight or direct heat source.
- When not in use, store in a dry well ventilated area onboard.
- Do not store in the proximity of chemicals or petrol (gasoline).
- Never use as cushions or fenders as this can damage and make less effective.
- For PFDs see the owner's manual for specific care instructions.

### How to Clean Lifejackets and PFDs

- Use mild soap and water
- Rinse thoroughly
- Never use solvents, strong detergents or gasoline
- Air dry out of direct sunlight or direct heat source.

## 2.6 Safety Harnesses

Mainly used on sailing vessels, safety harnesses are worn by crew members when on deck in bad weather, at night and by request of the skipper. The harness comprises a webbing shoulder strap and waistband which are adjustable, and a tether of rope or webbing (usually about 2 to 3 meters long) which has a carabineer clip on both ends. The crew member clips on to strong points onboard the vessel or onto a “jack stay” which runs along the deck of the vessel from bow to stern and is usually made of webbing or steel cable.



FIGURE 2-9 SAFETY HARNESS

## 2.7 Horseshoe Buoy / Ring Buoy or Lifebuoy

These are type 4 personal flotation devices and are lightweight, highly visible and are throwable in the event of a man overboard situation. They are designed to be thrown to a conscious person in the water to assist in keeping them afloat while the vessel manoeuvres to recover the person. All vessels that venture offshore should be equipped with at least one.

They will generally have reflective tape attached for night visibility and a buoyant heaving line attached to pull the person in the water back onboard.



FIGURE 2-10  
HORSESHOE BUOY



FIGURE 2-11 RING BUOY

## 2.8 Lifesling & A Heaving Line

This is another type of throwable man-overboard (MOB) recovery device. It is normally attached to the stern rail or transom of the vessel. Commonly used aboard sailing vessels, they are deployed by opening the bag and throwing the sling into the water. Forward momentum of the vessel will draw out a long line. The vessel is then manoeuvred in a wide circle around the MOB enabling the person to grasp the line and work their way back to the boat. The person places the sling under their arms and when ready, the crew will pull the line in and pull the person back on board. Getting the person back on board may require the lowering of a swim ladder or may require the use of a winch or halyard.



FIGURE 2-12 LIFESLING

## 2.9 Man Overboard Pole

An MOB pole is a fiberglass pole typically used on cruising or racing sailboats. It is attached upright to the stern of a vessel, usually about 2 meters long and can be quickly released from its Velcro strap and thrown into the water as soon as someone has fallen overboard. It has a flag and/or a light on top which can easily be spotted from a distance, (especially in heavy seas) and helps to lead the vessel back to the position where the person has fallen overboard. It also lets other vessels know that there is a person in the water. In some instances, it may be attached to the horseshoe or ring buoy. It is especially useful in areas of fast flowing currents as it will drift at the same speed as the person in the water thus making it easier to find them.



**FIGURE 2-13 MAN OVERBOARD POLE**

## 2.10 EPIRB (Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon)

An EPIRB is a self-contained, waterproof, transmitter used to alert search and rescue services in the event of an emergency at sea. They are generally used on vessels that travel far offshore and out of sight of land. When activated, it transmits a signal via satellite, to a land based rescue co-ordination center who will organise rescue services via helicopter or nearest available lifeboat or ship.

They have a built in GPS which allows rescue services to locate you within 50 meters. They will transmit for approx. 36 -48 hours and have a flashing light on top. They are generally activated when the life raft has been deployed and where there is a serious threat to the survival of the crew. They are manufactured in various shapes and sizes.



**FIGURE 2-14 EPIRB**

## 2.11 SART (Search and Rescue Transponder)

A radar SART is a self-contained waterproof transponder intended for emergencies at sea. The radar SART is used to locate survival craft or life raft by creating a series of “dots” on a vessels radar display when it comes within range of the signal (usually within 8 nautical miles). It has a built in battery and can transmit for 36 – 48 hours.



**FIGURE 2-15 SART**



**FIGURE 2-16 A MOCK-UP RADAR TRACE FROM SART**

A mock-up radar trace from a SART transponder, shows the location of the transponder in the trace.

## 2.12 Immersion Suit

Immersion suits are used in extreme cold weather and are used when abandoning ship. They are designed to be worn over your clothes and cover your entire body (except for your face) and can sustain life in very cold temperatures thus avoiding hypothermia. They do not need to be carried on board vessels in warmer climates or where thermal protection is unnecessary.



**FIGURE 2-17 IMMERSION SUIT**

## 2.13 Buoyant Heaving Line

A buoyant heaving line is used to rescue a man overboard. It is usual for the heaving line to be equipped with a weighted plastic shell at one end which enables it to be thrown with less difficulty. It is recommended that buoyant heaving lines be 15 meters in length for craft under 24 meters in length. They must be readily accessible at all times in case of emergency.



**FIGURE 2-18 BUOYANT HEAVING LINE**

## 2.14 Safety Brief / Suitable Clothing

Before heading out on a boat it is important to wear suitable clothing and footwear for the type of boat you will be operating and the weather conditions that you are likely to encounter.

In colder climates it is very important to wear multiple layers of clothing, with gloves and a hat to retain your body heat.

Waterproof clothing is essential if sailing offshore or operating in big seas where sea spray is a constant event.

Warmer or tropical climates will require staying cool and covering bare skin with light clothing and a hat where excessive sunshine is a problem. Sun screen, lip balm, sunglasses and plenty of drinking water are essential to prevent dehydration & heatstroke. Heatstroke is a serious condition and its symptoms include vomiting, nausea, dizziness, weakness, fatigue and muscle cramps. Treatment includes removing excessive clothing, cooling the body down with cold water, placing icepacks under the arms and groin to reduce body temperature. It is essential to drink lots of water as heatstroke also causes dehydration.



FIGURE 2-19 WATERPROOF CLOTHING



Suitable footwear is required with sailing shoes recommended for their grip and to prevent stubbing toes against deck hardware. Waterproof (preferably lined) boots are a must for the colder wet weather conditions.



## 2.15 Knowledge Review – Personal Safety Equipment

1. What is the difference between a lifejacket and a PFD?
2. What is the highest safety priority in preventing boating deaths?
3. When is it not permitted to use automatic inflating lifejackets?
4. What needs to be fitted to a child's lifejacket to prevent it from rising over the child's shoulders?
5. How do you take care of lifejackets and PFDs?
6. How do you clean a lifejacket?
7. Name the 4 types of personal flotation devices.
8. What is an EPIRB?
9. What is a SART?
10. How long should a heaving line be for a vessel <24m?
11. What is an immersion suit?
12. What is recommended when boating in hot weather?

## Module 3 BOAT SAFETY EQUIPMENT

### 3.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE FOR ALL CREW MEMBERS TO HAVE A THOROUGH UNDERSTANDING OF THE IMPORTANCE OF ALL BOAT SAFETY GEAR, ITS USE AND FUNCTION AND THE IMPORTANCE OF KEEPING IT IN GOOD WORKING ORDER.

### 3.2 Life Rafts

**Life rafts must be inspected annually to keep in date.**

Life rafts are generally used on vessels that travel offshore (out of sight of land) and can come in many different sizes, such as 4, 6, 8, 12, 24, 72 man capacities depending on the size of the vessel, type of liferaft, the number of passengers aboard and the climate in the region they are operating. They are only to be used when a vessel is sinking and there is no other choice but to abandon ship



FIGURE 3-1 CANISTER LIFE RAFT

**Canister type life rafts** can be seen on most passenger vessels and ferries and are secured to points around the deck and will automatically inflate when they are launched. It is important that crew become familiar with the procedures for launching life rafts before heading out on a voyage.



FIGURE 3-2 VALISE LIFE RAFT

**Valise type life rafts** are soft containers and are generally kept in storage (aboard a vessel) when not in use and are secured to the deck before undertaking a voyage. Every life raft has survival equipment included in it. *This subject will be covered in much greater detail in the IYT STCW Personal Survival Course.*

A **hydrostatic release** is a device that can be attached to a life raft so that it will automatically deploy in the event of a sudden sinking. If it is not possible to deploy the life raft manually, at a depth of approx. 5 meters, the hydrostatic release will automatically inflate the life raft allowing it to float free. It is mounted between the life raft and the cradle which holds it and must be replaced every two years.



**FIGURE 3-3**  
HYDROSTATIC RELEASE

### 3.3 Pyrotechnic Distress Signals (Flares)

Flares are used to attract attention in the event of emergencies at sea. They should always be stored in a watertight container and located in a cool, dry, accessible area. All distress equipment must be kept in full working order.

You may be required to carry specific types of flares onboard your vessel depending on:

- Size and type of boat
- The body of water on which you are operating

Examples:

- If at sea or on a waterway where you may be further than one nautical mile from shore.
- Generally, you are not required to carry flares if you are operating on a river, canal or lake if less than one nautical mile from shore.

#### Types of Approved Flares

There are four basic types of flares.

##### **Type A: Parachute Flare**

- Easily seen from water, land and air
- Emits a red light

##### **Type B: Multi-star Flare**

- Easily seen from water, land and air
- Emits a red light

##### **Type C: Hand-Held Flare**

- Not as easily seen from afar but effective for pinpointing your position
- Emits a red light

##### **Type D: Smoke Flare**

- Highly visible during daylight hours
- Gives off orange smoke



**FIGURE 3-4** FLARES

There are also **White Hand-Held Flares** which burn bright white and are used to alert other vessels to the risk of collision.



FIGURE 3-5 WHITE HAND-HELD FLARE

### Using Flares

- 1) All flares and pyrotechnic distress signals must be approved for use and are usually valid for only a few years from their date of manufacture. You must check for expiration dates and ensure those you have onboard have not expired.
- 2) Flares should always be used with caution and kept out of reach of children. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions before using a flare. The instructions are always visible on the casing.
- 3) It is illegal to test or discharge a flare if it is not being used for an emergency situation. Additionally, you should only dispose of flares in an approved manner. Contact the manufacturer or local law or fire agency for proper disposal procedures.



FIGURE 3-6 FLARES - LEFT TO RIGHT - TYPE A, TYPE B, TYPE C, TYPE D

**Type A: Parachute Flare**

To discharge this aerial flare, read the manufacturer's instructions. Hold away from body and pull the release mechanism. When launched, this red light flare reaches a height of approximately 300 m and burns for at least 40 seconds. This type of flare can be seen from water, land and air.

**Type B: Multi-star Flare**

This is also an aerial flare. This device fires two red stars to a height of approximately 100 m. To discharge read the manufacturer's instructions and trigger the flare from a hand-held position. This type of flare will burn for four to five seconds and be visible from water, land and air.

**Type C: Hand-Held Flare**

This type of flare is designed for hand-held use and is not highly visible from a distance. Because of its limited visibility, this flare is most effective when used to help rescuers pinpoint your location once they are nearby. To discharge read the manufacturer's instructions, hold downwind and away from your body and trigger the flare. This flare will burn intensely for at least one minute.

**Type D: Smoke Flare**

This type of flare is most effective for daytime use. Hand-held or floating type smoke flares will discharge intense orange smoke for at least three minutes. To discharge read the manufacturer's instructions, pull the release mechanism and hold the flare upright or toss it into the water.

### 3.4 Fire Extinguishers

Fire extinguishers are highly recommended and sometimes mandatory onboard any boat with a motor, and any one of the following:

- Closed compartments where portable fuel tanks may be stored.
- Closed living and cooking spaces
- Permanently installed fuel tanks.
- Enclosed engine compartments

Boaters should mount a fire extinguisher in an easily accessible location where it can be quickly retrieved in case of emergency.



## Fire Extinguisher Rating System

Fire extinguishers are rated using a system of letters and numbers. The classes explained and depicted here are for United States. Class letters are assigned to the different types of fire, but these differ between territories. There are separate US, European, and Australian standards. You should research the rating system in your region to ensure you have the correct class for your vessel.

Designed for use on:

**Class A** – water / combustible solid materials such as wood and paper

**Class B** – combustible liquid fires including gas, oil and grease

**Class C** - Electrical fires



FIGURE 3-7 FIRE RATING SYSTEM

In general, fire extinguishers on boats will be either a dry powder or foam that smothers the fire or CO<sub>2</sub> which starves the fire of oxygen. It is recommended that one of the crew members complete a basic firefighting course from a recognized training authority.

There are four main types of fire extinguishers:

- Water – use on ordinary combustibles (class A)
- Dry powder/chemical – use on multi-purpose (class A, B, C)
- Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) use as smothering agent for gas, liquid and electrical fires (class B, C)
- Foam – use as smothering agent for flame inhibition (class A, B)

Ensure that the fire extinguisher you choose meets the requirements for the size and type of your boat. Remember, even if your boat is equipped with an automatic extinguishing system, you must still carry portable fire extinguishers.

**Fire Extinguishers require annual inspection to keep in date.**

## 3.5 Fighting a Fire

Boat fires can be caused by a number of things including engine malfunctions, galley fires or insufficient ventilation of an enclosed engine compartment.

If a fire does occur, you can reduce the severity of an emergency by:

- Having the mandatory fire-fighting equipment onboard
- Ensuring the equipment is maintained regularly and is easily accessible.
- Ensuring you and your passengers understand what to do and do so quickly and effectively.

### Abandoning ship:

If you need to abandon ship due to a fire, ensure that:

- 1) All passengers are wearing lifejackets.
- 2) Signal for assistance as soon as possible using VHF radio, phone, flares or air horn.
- 3) Launch liferaft (if applicable).
- 4) Jump into the water on the windward side of the boat so the boat does not drift down on top of you.
- 5) Make sure all passengers are present and accounted for.

### How to use a fire extinguisher

Remember the acronym “P.A.S.S.” which is the method to fight a fire onboard.

#### **PULL**

Pull the safety pin on the handle of the fire extinguisher.

#### **AIM**

Aim at the base of the flames.

#### **SQUEEZE**

Squeeze the handle

#### **SWEEP**

Sweep the fire by spraying from left to right in a sweeping motion.

Ensure the extinguisher is suitable for the type of fire you are trying to put out. Stand at a safe distance from the source of the flame.

### Important Tips Regarding Fire Extinguishers

- Use an extinguisher designed for marine use.
- Use an extinguisher with an external gauge which includes the condition of the charge.



- CO2 type extinguishers should be weighed annually and re-filled when they have diminished to less than 90% capacity.
- If using CO2 type extinguishers in an enclosed area proceed with caution as they utilize colourless, odorless gases that displace oxygen.
- Always use a fire extinguisher to put out electrical fires or flammable liquid fires. Never use water as it will spread the fire as water conducts electricity.

### Maintenance of Fire Extinguishers

Monthly inspections are required to keep fire extinguishers in good working order. When inspecting a fire extinguisher, you should do the following:

- Check the gauge to ensure the extinguisher is fully charged
- Check the seals and hoses and replace any that are cracked or broken
- Turn the extinguisher upside down and shake at least once per month to prevent the agent from clumping.



### Fuel Burning Appliances

It is important to understand that gas fumes, leaking propane and butane are heavier than air and will flow into the lower portions of your boat. These fumes are hard to remove and are highly explosive.

Follow these safety procedures when using butane and propane:

- Use fuel-burning appliances only in well-ventilated areas
- Secure gas cylinders, portable appliances and heaters so that unexpected movement will not result in a leak
- Always attend to open-flame heating, cooking or refrigeration systems
- Install fuel burning equipment according to manufacturer's instructions

*This subject will be covered in much greater detail in the IYT STCW Personal Survival Course.*



**FIGURE 3-8 FIRE EXTINGUISHER GAUGE**

### 3.6 Basic First Aid Kit

Every vessel should carry a first aid box and a first aid manual for quick reference. The longer the voyage to be undertaken, the more comprehensive the first aid kit should be. Any crew member taking prescription medications should make sure they have an adequate supply.

Contents of a first aid kit will include items such as: various size bandages and gauze pads, aspirin, antiseptic wipes, motion sickness tablets, insect bite cream, alcohol swab pads, tweezers, synthetic gloves, eyewash, antibiotic cream, and many other items depending on the size of the first aid kit.



FIGURE 3-9 FIRST AID KIT

### 3.7 Watertight Flashlight

There are many different types of watertight flashlights. There should be multiple flashlights on-board every vessel and every crew member should carry a pocket flashlight at night. The power of a flashlight is measured in candlepower and some rechargeable flashlights produce up to 15 million candlepower.

A flashlight qualifies as a navigation light on non-powered vessels <7m.



FIGURE 3-10  
WATERTIGHT  
FLASHLIGHTS

### 3.8 Sound Signalling Devices / Air Horns/whistles

Due to their very loud noise, usually around 105 – 115 decibels, these are essential to catch the attention of other boat users who are not maintaining a lookout or if in danger at sea. Whistles are also recommended and are a standard feature on a SOLAS lifejacket. All distress equipment must be kept in full working order.



FIGURE 3-11 AIR  
HORN

### 3.9 Radar Reflector

Small vessels do not always show up on the radar of large ships and can therefore run the risk of being run over especially at night and in low visibility. A radar reflector increases the “signature” on a radar screen and should be used in fog, restricted visibility, heavy rain, high seas and at night. They should be mounted as high as possible on a vessel for maximum effect.

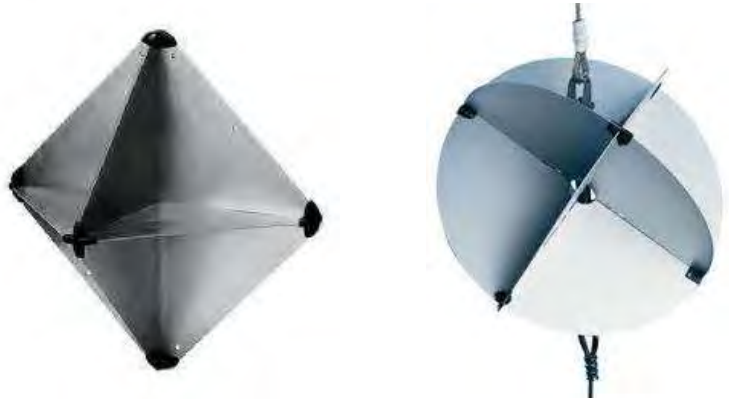


FIGURE 3-12 RADAR REFLECTORS

### 3.10 Axe

During a fire an axe can be used to cut away parts of a burning vessel which can be thrown overboard.



FIGURE 3-13 AXE

### 3.11 VHF Marine Radio

The Very High Frequency (VHF) radio is a transmitter and receiver combined in one instrument called a “transceiver”. When a message is sent from one transceiver it can be received by another provided they are within range and tuned to the same channel or frequency. Both transceivers MUST be tuned to the same frequency to enable a conversation to take place. VHF radios are an essential piece of equipment in the event of on-board emergencies. Uses also include weather and Coastguard information as well as routine ship to ship communication.

They are also used to transmit Mayday, Pan- Pan and Securite information. A “Mayday” call is used when danger is imminent, a “Pan-Pan” is used when a vessel has a problem but danger is not yet imminent and a “Securite” call is used to alert other vessels to hazards of navigation. Radios can be “fitted” to the vessel or can be “handheld” devices.

*This subject will be covered in much greater detail in the IYT VHF Operators Course.*



FIGURE 3-14 VHF RADIO & HANDHELD VHF RADIO

### 3.12 Bailer or Bucket

A bailer or bucket is used to remove water from the inside of a boat and can also be used to fight fires if necessary.

Vessels over 24m generally require 2 buckets painted red.

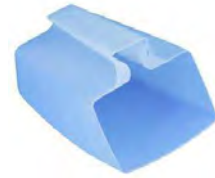


FIGURE 3-15 BAILER

### 3.13 Oars or Manual Propelling Device

In case of an engine breakdown in a small vessel or dinghy, it is imperative to have a set of oars to row yourself to shore or out of harms' way.



FIGURE 3-16 OARS

### 3.14 Swim Ladder or Re-boarding Device

Swim ladders are designed to allow easy re-boarding after swimming or in the event of a man-overboard. Most charter yachts are equipped with a swim ladder that can be accessed from the water.

A re-boarding device cannot be part of a propulsion unit (i.e. do not stand on engine housing or drive train to board boat)



FIGURE 3-17 SWIM LADDER



FIGURE 3-18 NIGHT VISION BINOCULARS

### 3.15 Binoculars & Night Vision Binoculars

Binoculars are an essential part of boat safety equipment. If you have one, a night vision device can greatly enhance navigating at night. If you operate in an area of recurring fog or limited visibility it is highly recommended that you invest in such a device.



FIGURE 3-19 NIGHT VISION MONOCULAR

### 3.16 Bilge Pumps, Electric and Manual

Bilge pumps are used to remove water from the lowest part of the inside of your vessel, known as the “bilge. These pumps can be either manual, or electrically driven from the battery of your boat. Some electric bilge pumps will turn on automatically by a floatation device if the water rises above a certain level. An additional bilge pump “switch” is usually located near the cockpit of a vessel. When using a manual bilge pump, be sure that the hose is long enough to reach from the bilge over the side of your vessel.



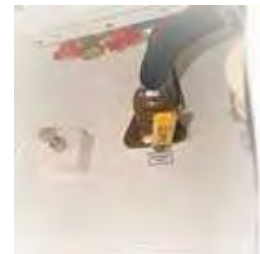
**FIGURE 3-20** MANUAL & ELECTRIC BILGE PUMPS



**FIGURE 3-21** BILGE PUMP SWITCH EXAMPLES

### 3.17 Wooden Plugs for Thru-hull Fittings

Most vessels sink because of broken hoses, clamps or rusted out thru-hull fittings. Thru-hull fittings are generally fitted below the waterline and are intakes and outlets for water to cool the inboard engine, operate the air conditioning, bilge pumping and black and grey water discharging. It is recommended that boat owners tether a wooden plug to each thru- hull so they are ready to hammer into place in the event of failure or leakage. Plugs come in many different sizes and are readily available at most marine stores.



**FIGURE 3-22** WOODEN PLUGS FOR THRU-HULL FITTING

### 3.18 Battery Selector Switch

A battery selector switch is used to isolate different sets of battery banks on a vessel. For instance, on most vessels over 15m there will be one battery specifically for starting the engine and another set of batteries to run the navigation lights, electronics, radio etc. While the engine is running, the alternator will charge both sets of batteries. It is important to select “off” when leaving a vessel for any length of time to prevent battery discharge.



**FIGURE 3-23** BATTERY SELECTOR SWITCH

### 3.19 Sea Anchors and Drogues

In the event of a breakdown or engine failure at sea, vessels have a natural tendency to turn themselves “beam on” to the sea which causes the vessel to roll violently in the waves. This is both dangerous and uncomfortable.

A **sea anchor** resembles a small parachute and is streamed on a line from the bow of the boat. The boat will be blown downwind from the sea anchor (which creates drag) and this will pull the bow of the boat into the wind which stabilises the vessel. It is important to use as much line as possible when using a sea anchor.



FIGURE 3-24 SEA ANCHOR

During strong following seas, the wave action on the stern of a vessel can cause the vessel to constantly “yaw” which will push the boat from side to side. To prevent this, a **drogue** is dragged behind a vessel (attached to the stern) which will act as a brake and assist in maintaining the boat's course. It will however reduce the speed of the vessel but will allow for a greater level of stability and comfort.



FIGURE 3-26 DROGUE

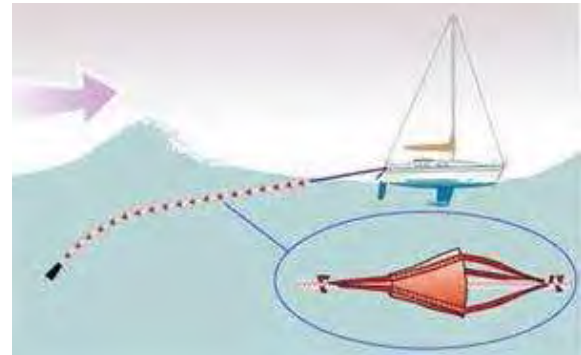


FIGURE 3-25 DROGUE EXAMPLE

### 3.20 Ditch Bag

A ditch bag, also known as a survival or abandon ship bag, is a highly visible, water proof, positive flotation bag that is used to store important items in the event that you have to abandon ship and get into a life raft. While life rafts are equipped with basic survival equipment, you have a greater chance of survival if you have prepared your ditch bag in advance. Some items are essential while others are personal needs or preferences. It is entirely up to the skipper and crew of a vessel to decide which items they would like to place in a ditch bag depending on:



FIGURE 3-27 DITCH BAG

- How far offshore they will be travelling
- The weather/climate conditions they are likely to encounter
- How many crew are on board the vessel

#### Contents of a ditch bag could include:

- EPIRB
- SART
- Handheld VHF radio
- Cell phones (if within signal range)
- Selection of flares and smoke signals
- Waterproof flashlight (with extra batteries)
- Whistle
- Signal mirror
- Additional water
- Emergency food rations
- Spare spectacles
- Personal medications
- Solar blanket
- Sunscreen & chap stick
- Bailer Pen & paper in waterproof bag (to keep a log)
- Binoculars
- Sunglasses
- Mask and snorkel (in case bottom of life raft needs to be repaired).
- Fishing line and hooks



FIGURE 3-28 ABANDON SHIP BAG

- Knife
- First aid kit
- Patch kit for life rafts
- Blankets/ warm clothing
- Survival at sea handbook
- Passports (in waterproof bag)
- Sea sickness tablets
- Toilet paper in waterproof bag (personal hygiene)
- Hand bearing compass
- Cash



FIGURE 3-29 FIRST AID KIT

### 3.21 Anchors and Anchoring

*This subject will be covered in greater detail in Module 10*

#### **Anchor**

An anchor can be used during an engine failure emergency or during bad weather to keep you from drifting towards obstacles.

#### **Anchor Types**

Choosing the right anchor depends on the size and weight of your boat and the characteristics of the waterway bottom you generally operate on (i.e. Sand, rock or mud). Larger anchors are recommended for adverse conditions and are equipped with a shackle pin should have a locking device. Below are 4 common types.

***Fisherman Anchors*** - These are non-burying with one arm that penetrates the bottom. They are best used for rocky bottoms.

***Fluke or "Danforth" Anchors*** – These have pointed flukes that dig into the ground. They are best used for grass and mud bottoms.

***Plough Anchors*** – These anchors function like a farmer's plough. These anchors are generally good in all bottoms, but not exceptional in any.

***Bruce or "Claw" Anchors*** – These are popular for small boats because they set easily and tend to maintain their hold during changes in wind and tide. They are best used in most waterway bottoms.



**FIGURE 3-31**  
**FISHERMAN ANCHOR**



**FIGURE 3-32 FLUKE OR**  
**“DANFORTH” ANCHOR**



**FIGURE 3-30 PLOUGH**  
**ANCHOR**



**FIGURE 3-33 BRUCE**  
**ANCHOR**

Always remember to securely attach the end of your anchor line to the bow of the boat and securely attach the outboard end of the anchor line to the anchor.

You may want to use multiple anchors in tidal streams or in strong winds.

## 3.22 Knowledge Review – Boat Safety Equipment

1. What is the function of a liferaft?
2. What is a hydrostatic release?
3. What is an abandon ship/ditchbag?
4. Name 10 items an abandon ship bag might contain?
5. What is a VHF Radio?
6. Name the 4 types of flares
7. What is a smoke flare used for?
8. How many classes of fire extinguisher are there?
9. How often should a fire extinguisher be inspected?
10. Name 6 items you would find in a first aid box
11. A flashlight qualifies as a navigation light on what size vessel?
12. What is an airhorn used for?
13. When would oars be used?
14. What is a reboarding device?
15. What are wooden plugs used for?
16. What is a battery selector switch?
17. What are sea anchors and drogues used for?
18. Name 6 spare parts that may be stored aboard a vessel
19. What is a nautical chart?
20. What is the importance of navigation lights?
21. Name 3 different types of anchors

## Module 4 VESSEL CHECKOUT – DOCUMENTATION, CHARTS, NAUTICAL PUBLICATIONS, FLAGS, EQUIPMENT & GENERAL

### 4.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO COVER THE NECESSARY PAPERWORK AND DOCUMENTATION REQUIRED TO OPERATE A VESSEL, NAUTICAL PUBLICATIONS TO BE CARRIED, THE USE OF FLAGS, THE NECESSARY SAFETY CHECKS, MAN-OVERBOARD EQUIPMENT, SPARE PARTS, TOOLS AND HOUSEKEEPING ITEMS THAT ARE REQUIRED BEFORE UNDERTAKING A VOYAGE.

### 4.2 Registration / Ships Papers

Every vessel has registration/ownership papers that proves the ownership of the vessel and its port of registry. These are sometimes required by Port State Control/Marine Police, Customs or Immigration to prove that the boat belongs to whom it says it does, and to prove that it has not been stolen.

*It is best to keep all important documents in a waterproof bag in case you need to abandon ship.*



FIGURE 4-1 VESSEL  
REGISTRATION

### 4.3 Passports / Visas

If chartering or travelling to a foreign country, it is imperative that all crew and guests have their passports (in date) with all necessary visas if applicable. Be sure to check in advance with the country that you will be visiting to find out which visas you may require. Visitor's visas can sometimes take several weeks to process so be sure to check well in advance of your planned trip.

The master of every boat must furnish Immigration with a list of passengers and a crew list upon arrival in a foreign port. The vessels crew list should consist of name, nationality, passport number and date of birth of each crew member.

*Fees for both customs and immigration authorities are usually charged in the local currency which you should plan to have in advance.*



*Cruising permits may also be required in many countries to cruise their territorial waters. A fee will also be charged for the permit.*

## 4.4 Insurance Papers

It may be necessary to produce insurance papers in the event of an accident at sea. Personal liability insurance is also a good idea due to the amount of accidents that occur at sea.



## 4.5 Nautical Qualifications or Certificates of Competency (COC)

Most countries will require some form of “proof of competency” in order to skipper a vessel. In Europe, most countries will require an “International Certificate of Competency or ICC”. IYT students who successfully complete the ICC course and examination will automatically obtain an ICC without further study or examinations. To operate a boat in Canada, Canadians require a “Pleasure Craft Operator Card or PCOC”. A pleasure craft is any vessel used for recreational purposes and is not used for carrying paying passengers or goods.



It is always a good idea to make sure that the skipper of the vessel is adequately qualified and experienced to command the size and tonnage of the vessel they will be operating. Remember, your life is in the skipper’s hands! The “operator” is also known as the skipper.

***It is very important to check with local authorities to find out what level of certifications they will require for the size and type of vessel that you will be operating.***

## 4.6 VHF Radio Operators License & Radio Equipment License

Most countries will require proof that you can safely operate a VHF radio and some countries require that the radio set itself is actually licensed. Check with your local administration.



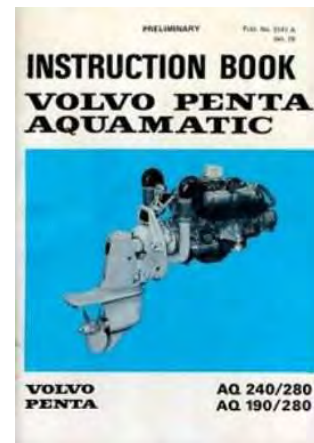
## 4.7 Crew List / Logbook

It is always a good idea to have a crew list on board your vessel with personal information of all your crew such as name, address and contact information for next of kin (in the event of an accident) and their doctor's name and contact information in the event that one of your crew is on medication. This information may also be written into the vessel's logbook. These can be purchased at most marine supply stores.



## 4.8 Equipment Manuals

Most vessels will carry equipment manuals issued by the vessel's manufacturer such as engine, generator, water maker, refrigerator, electronics, heads, etc.



## 4.9 Nautical Charts

Nautical charts are essentially maps of sea areas showing coastlines and their prominent features, depths, objects in, on and under the water and include many other pieces of useful information. They are intended primarily for use by mariners to assist in route planning, pilotage and navigation, as well as to find information concerning the depth of water, hazards to navigation, aids to navigation, channels, anchorage areas, harbours, tides, water levels, magnetic variation and information on currents. Many maritime nations have agencies that publish charts which are readily available through marine supply stores.



FIGURE 4-2 NAUTICAL CHART

## 4.10 Nautical Publications

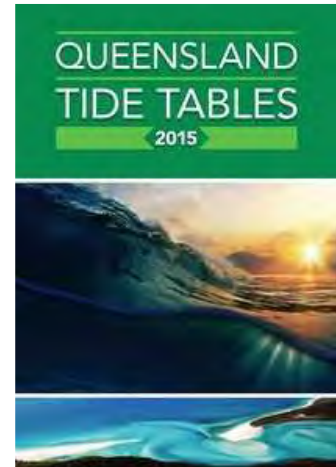
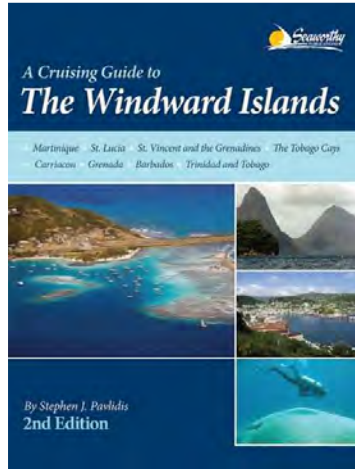
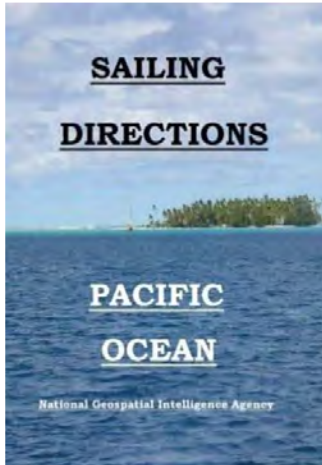
There are several nautical publications that should be carried on your vessel depending on the length of the voyage you intend to undertake and the area you intend to travel in. The main publications are:

### Cruising Guide or Sailing Directions

The “Cruising Guide” contains extremely valuable information about anchorages, local weather conditions, navigation channels, fishing spots, GPS waypoints, planning tips and local information about shopping, car rental and everything needed for planning a safe and fun trip. They are available for most regions of the world.

## Tide Tables

Tide tables provide daily times and heights of high water and low water for a given area. The table are published in various forms such as paper based tables or on the internet.



## Symbols and Abbreviations for Nautical Charts

This book contains explanations of all the symbols, abbreviations and terms needed to interpret nautical charts.



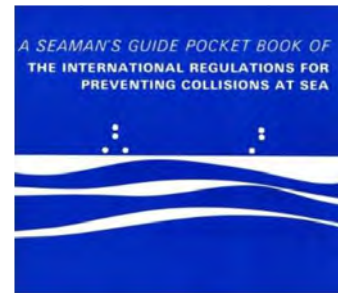
## List of Lights

The “List of Lights” is a publication describing lighthouses and other aids to navigation such as lighted buoys, approaches to channels, information on storm signals, signal stations, approaches to harbours, radio beacons and fog signals.



## Colregs

Colregs are the collision regulations and are sometimes referred to as the “Rules of the Road” or the “International Regulations for the Prevention of Collisions at Sea”. They set out the “rules of the road” or navigation rules to be followed by ships and other vessels at sea to prevent collision between two or more vessels. They may also refer to inland waterways which are subject to their own navigation rules. Different countries may have different rules for inland waterways so always check that you are carrying the correct publication for the country you are in.



## Flags and Flag Etiquette

There are only a few flag rules that recreational boaters need to be aware of although most ships will carry a complete range of signal flags containing every letter of the alphabet and every numeral. A vessel will generally fly the flag of the **country of registration** on the stern of their vessel to identify its country of origin. A flag should not be flown if it is torn or tattered and should be replaced. If at anchor or in harbour, it is generally lowered at sunset and raised at sunrise.



**FIGURE 4-3 COUNTRY OF REGISTRATION FLAG ON STERN**

A **courtesy flag (or ensign)** is flown by a visiting vessel in foreign waters as a sign of respect and is generally smaller than the flag of registration and will be flown on the starboard side of the vessel.



**FIGURE 4-4 COURTESY FLAG ON STARBOARD**

The **Q flag (or customs flag)** is a yellow square and is flown on the starboard side of a vessel when entering a foreign port or harbour. It indicates that the vessel requires customs clearance. In some countries, crew are not allowed to disembark from a vessel until a customs official arrives to clear your vessel and issue you with a “customs clearance document”. Once you have cleared customs you may then remove the Q flag. It is important to check with the local authorities in the port you are visiting.



**FIGURE 4-5 CUSTOMS Q FLAG**

A “diver down” flag or scuba flag indicates that there is a diver in the water in the vicinity of the vessel and the vessel should be given a wide berth and to steer clear

when passing it. There are two flags that indicate that a diver is down. The red and white flag has become the most internationally recognised and the signal flag “A” is most common in Europe and the British Commonwealth.



**FIGURE 4-7 DIVER DOWN FLAG**



**FIGURE 4-6 DIVER DOWN "A" FLAG**

The observance of strict rules of etiquette in boating today is practically standardized throughout the maritime world and all the rules governing ceremonies and routine aboard yachts and in yacht clubs have a distinct reason for their existence. The observance of strict rules of etiquette in yachting, as in everything else, has been found conducive to pleasant relations between yachtsmen and the foundation of all rules of this kind is courtesy. Boating is fun and all who take part in the sport, whether they are owners of outboard runabouts or huge motor yachts, are expected to be fully conversant with the principles of proper conduct.

## 4.11 Equipment & General Checks

A series of checks should be carried out before every trip or voyage and it is important to know that all equipment is in good working order. It is also important that all vessels carry spare parts necessary for the safe operation of their size of vessel, and enough tools to make any minor repairs that may be required. Checking tools, spares and safety equipment is a good opportunity to introduce the location of this equipment to new crew members and as a reminder to those who have been on board before.

**Before each boating season, it is imperative that the boat is serviced by trained professionals and is kept in a seaworthy condition at all times.**

## 4.12 Hull & Rig Checks

- Tool Kit
- Hull Checks
- Engine Checks
- Engine Spares
- Rigging Checks (sailboats)

### Tool Kit:

A socket set  
Open and box wrenches  
Screw driver set  
Crescent wrench  
Pliers  
Vise grips  
Hammer  
Assorted allen wrenches  
Wire cutters/strippers  
Utility knife  
Hacksaw  
Spanner wrench (to remove oil filters)  
Spark plug wrench



TOOL KIT

### Hull Checks:

Check the condition and operation of the following:

- Location and condition of through hull fittings.
- Through hulls and sea-cocks operate easily, hoses in good condition, hose clamps fitted (double)

- Spare hose clamps should be carried (two or three of each size).
- Through hull plugs attached to each sea-cock.
- Bilges are clean and dry, bilge pumps operational.
- Grab rails, life-lines in good condition.
- Hull cracks or damage.



**MANUAL BILGE PUMP**



**ELECTRIC BILGE PUMP**



**THRU HULL FITTING**

## Engine Checks

Check the condition and operation of the following:

- Engine warning lights and alarms working.
- Emergency stopping of runaway engine, fuel cut off, etc.
- Steering and shift mechanisms in good condition.
- Interior spaces are well ventilated.
- Run the blowers for several minutes before starting to clear the engine space of any vaporized fuel.
- Fuel supply full, estimate a reasonable margin of safety approx. 1/3 tank.
- Fuel system free of leaks.
- Engine oil and transmission fluid levels correct.
- Cooling water full.
- Electrolyte level in the battery full.
- Belt tension correct and in good condition with no wear and tear.
- Check all hoses, especially fuel.
- Prop shafts clear – no engine room materials left out of place.
- Stern gland and stuffing box, seal secure.
- Bilge free of fuel vapors and excess water.
- Steering and shift mechanisms in good condition.
- Throttle cable not sticking or binding.

## Engine Spares

Check to make sure you have the following:

- Oil filters
- Belts
- Water impellers
- Lubrication oil
- Transmission fluids
- Hose clamps, assorted, two or more of each size
- Engine hoses
- Flexible fuel line
- Air filters
- Engine drain plugs
- If gasoline/petrol engine - spare spark plugs
- Fuel filters
- Water filters
- Engine oil
- Fuel container
- Tie wraps
- Electrical tape
- Assorted nuts, screws & bolts
- Impellers



ENGINE SPARES

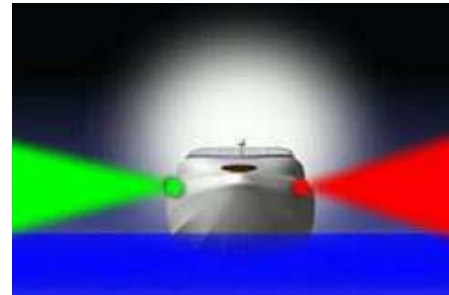
## Rigging Checks – Sail boats (discuss with skipper)

- Check the condition and operation of the following:
- Sail wardrobe for the intended voyage and conditions expected.
- Standing rigging, no kinks, broken strands, especially at rigging screw terminals.
- Rigging screws unfrozen and in good condition.
- Mast, boom and mast fittings.

## 4.13 Navigation Lights & Electronic Equipment

Check the condition and operation of the following:

- Depth finder, GPS, Log, VHF radio, Depth Sounder and other electronics are working
- Radio: call the local coastguard or marina office and ask for a radio check
- All navigation lights working



NAVIGATION LIGHTS

Between sunset and sunrise and during any period of reduced visibility (fog or heavy rain) you are required to use navigation lights. If operating a non-powered craft with no fixed navigation lights, you must have a watertight flashlight or lantern which emits a white light.

## 4.14 Safety Equipment

- Check all safety equipment is in date
- Heavy line with life buoy
- Fire extinguishers.
- Signal flares and other signaling devices with current expiration dates.
- Life jacket suitable for each person on board, readily accessible, in good condition.
- MOB equipment and throwable flotation easily accessible to helmsperson.
- Flashlight and extra batteries.
- Horn or sound signaling device.
- Bell.
- Comprehensive first aid kit, including sunscreen, pain relievers and any special medications for the crew.
- Bailer or manual water pump
- Sufficient foul weather gear, warm clothing & safety harnesses for all crew
- Anchors.
- Anchor lines in good condition ready to use, bitter end made fast.
- Boat hook.
- Mooring lines and fenders appropriate for the vessel.

### Ignition protection

Keeping sparks and flammable vapors apart is vital on a boat, and many boaters fail to consider all the hazards. Careless gasoline storage, improper locker venting, and use of power tools that can spark a flame may lead to explosions resulting in injury and damage to the vessel.

Using ignition protected fuses, fuse blocks, circuit breakers, switches, and motors in critical areas is a good idea. Ignition protected devices are designed in such a way that:

- **they won't ignite a surrounding air-fuel mixture** if there is an explosion inside them
- **they can't reach a high enough surface temperature** or generate enough spark to ignite an air-fuel mixture.

Follow the guidance below to help keep your boat safe.

### Know your fuel sources.

It's easy to think that there's nothing to worry about if your boat has a diesel engine. Your starting motor does not need to be ignition protected, and neither does the circuit protection in the engine space. But if the gasoline for your dinghy's outboard is stored in the same compartment as a non-ignition protected device, your vessel is at risk. A non-ignition protected starter could provide the spark that ignites the vapors from a leaky gas can cap. Other fuel sources include vapors from propane or gasoline, propane bar-b-que bottles, gasoline tanks, and fuel joints and fittings.

### Know your ignition sources.

Anything that produces or can produce a spark or flame, intentionally or otherwise, is a potential ignition source. Circuit breakers, starters, alternators, and distributors, and open flames are obvious, but exploding fuses, switches, household outlets, and power-tool motors are possibly just as hazardous.

## 4.15 Housekeeping Items

- Taps or faucets working as necessary
- Fresh water in the tanks and also carry some extra bottled water for emergencies
- Propane gas including spare bottle, in outside locker with drain.
- Sewage holding tanks (also called black water) should be emptied, along with grey water tanks. (grey water is water stored from washing dishes and showers etc.)
- Heads flushing or pumping as necessary
- Ample food and water for the voyage intended.



## 4.16 Dinghy (if applicable)

Check the condition and operation of the Following:

- Stowed properly.
- Inflatable in working order.
- Paddles or oars.
- Outboard motor maintained and stowed properly.
- Spares.
- Safety equipment etc. for dinghy.
- Additional fuel properly stowed

## 4.17 Float Plan

A float plan is a voyage itinerary and includes the basic details of your intended voyage. If on a long voyage, it is recommended that you check in daily to report your position. File a float/passage plan with a responsible person ashore (or your local Coastguard), with your intended destination and estimated time of arrival and any additional information that accurately describes your vessel such as length, color, make, model and number of persons aboard with instructions as to when to call for assistance. Be sure to cancel/terminate your float plan when you reach your intended destination to avoid unnecessary search and rescue operations for you.

## 4.18 Departing the Marina or Dock

- Disconnect all power cords and water lines.
- Instruct passengers and crew to keep limbs inside the vessel when maneuvering.
- Release and stow all lazy dock lines.
- Sound proper whistle (horn) signals.
- Remove last dock lines.
- Appoint one crewmember to be the “roving fender”. If it looks like the vessel will touch the dock they should drop the fender into the gap between the vessel and the dock to protect the hull. Especially keep watch on the corners of the dock. If the vessel is caught by a wind gust and blown onto the corner, the impact with the corner can cause serious hull damage.
- After clearing the dock area, take in all lines and fenders; keep lines clear of the propeller.
- Proceed slowly using just enough power to maintain control whenever leaving or returning to a dock.
- Make sure to avoid all swimmers, divers, snorkelers, canoes and kayaks.
- Avoid specific hazards such as dams, rapids, white water, high waves and strong tides.

Remember to always consult your local maritime authority or coastguard for information on the safety equipment required for your vessel. This may vary from country to country and with the different lengths or capacity of boats.

## 4.19 Knowledge Review

1. Why are registration papers important?
2. What is a “Certificate of Competency”?
3. What information is contained on a nautical chart?
4. What information might be contained in a logbook?
5. Name some nautical publications that should be carried aboard a vessel.
6. What are the COLREGS?
7. What is a courtesy ensign and when is it flown?
8. What are the two types of “diver down” flags?
9. What is the “Q” flag?
10. What are the 5 main requirements for taking over a vessel?
11. Name as many of the important hull checks as you can.
12. Name as many of the important engine checks as you can.
13. What is the importance of navigation equipment and checking navigation lights?
14. List all safety equipment that must be on board for a safe voyage.
15. Name the general vessel equipment and housekeeping items that should be checked during a vessel take over.
16. What are the actions required for departing a marina?

## Module 5 BASIC ROPEWORK

### 5.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO ENSURE THAT ALL CREW MEMBERS CAN DEMONSTRATE THE ABILITY TO TIE BASIC KNOTS AND KNOW THE CORRECT PROCEDURE FOR SECURING A BOAT TO A DOCK BY TYING LINES TO CLEATS.

### 5.2 Types of ropes, care & maintenance of ropes

There are many ropes used for a variety of reasons aboard a boat and particularly on a sailboat. Each rope (or line as they are called) has a specific name and a specific function. There are lines for tying a boat to a dock and lines for hoisting and adjusting sails. There are a number of different colors, thickness, makes and lengths each designed for a single purpose. The larger the boat is, the larger the lines will need to be to attach the boat to the dock or for the hoisting of heavy sails.



Rope can be made of hemp or of synthetic fibers such as nylon or rayon. It can last a long time if properly cared for. Leaving rope soaked in water or in direct sunlight will deteriorate it quickly. Contact with chemicals, gasoline, salt or corrosive substances will shorten its lifespan. Ropes should be regularly checked for wear and tear and discarded if there are signs of broken strands or rot. Ropes used in salt water should occasionally be washed in fresh water as salt crystals can harden the strands and cause damage.

Man-made fiber ropes are affected by ultra-violet radiation and require protection from direct tropical sunlight. Ropes should be inspected and condemned if there are obvious defects such as broken strands, kinks or signs of rot.

## 5.3 How to tie knots

The correct selection of the right type of knot, bend, or hitch for any job is essential to prevent it undoing as well as having the ability to be readily untied when required. Knots, Bends, and Hitches are all ways of fastening one or more ropes together or for attaching a rope to an object such as a spar or ring.

The following selection of knots, bends and hitches and their purpose are adequate for most requirements on a yacht.

**Round Turn and Two Half Hitches** is mainly used for securing to a post or ring. The round turn creates friction, which allows the load to be held while the 2 half hitches are made.

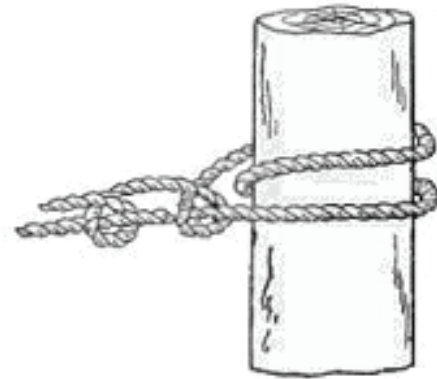


FIGURE 5-1 ROUND TURN & TWO HALF HITCHES

**Bowline** creates a fixed loop in the end of a rope. It is a secure knot that is unlikely to slip or untie itself, and has the advantage of being relatively easy to untie even after being under load. Used for a number of applications such as creating a loop in a dock line or for attaching sheets to a sail.



FIGURE 5-2 BOWLINE KNOT

**Figure of Eight** is a stopper knot used to prevent the end of a rope running out through a block or fairlead. It is easy to undo and is mostly used on the ends of sheets, halyards and deck lines.



FIGURE 5-3 FIGURE OF EIGHT KNOT

**Rolling Hitch** is used for a number of purposes where a load on one rope needs to be transferred to another, for example when load need to be taken off a winch with an overriding turn.



FIGURE 5-4 ROLLING HITCH

**Sheet Bend** is used to join together 2 ropes.

**Double Sheet Bend** is used to join together 2 ropes but is more secure and works better if there is a difference in the thickness of the two ropes.

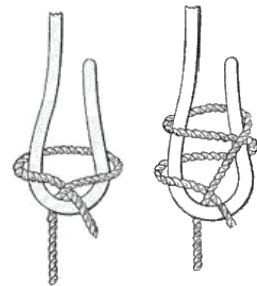


FIGURE 5-5 SHEET BEND & DOUBLE SHEET BEND

**Reef Knot** is used mainly for fastening reef ties when shortening sail. Because it will undo easily if the load is not constant it should never be used to join two ropes together, especially if the two ropes are of different diameters. A better knot to join two ropes is the “sheet bend” or “double sheet bend” described below. An improperly tied reef knot is known as a “granny knot”.



FIGURE 5-6 REEF KNOT

**Clove Hitch** may be difficult to untie after being under heavy load and is usually used for tying the painter of a dinghy to a bollard or attaching fenders to lifelines.



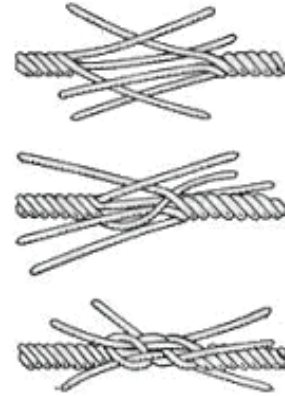
FIGURE 5-7 CLOVE HITCH

## Whipping and splicing

Loops or “eyes” may be formed in a rope by means of an “eye splice”. To protect the ends of ropes and to prevent them fraying a “whipping” is applied. These topics will be covered in future modules.



FIGURE 5-8 WHIPPING



## Securing to a Cleat

The rope should be lead to the back of the cleat and a full turn taken around the base. This will hold the load. The second step is to make two figure of eight turns around the cleat finishing with another full turn around the base of the cleat. The general rule for securing a line to a cleat is "nearest side, furthest point, one round turn."

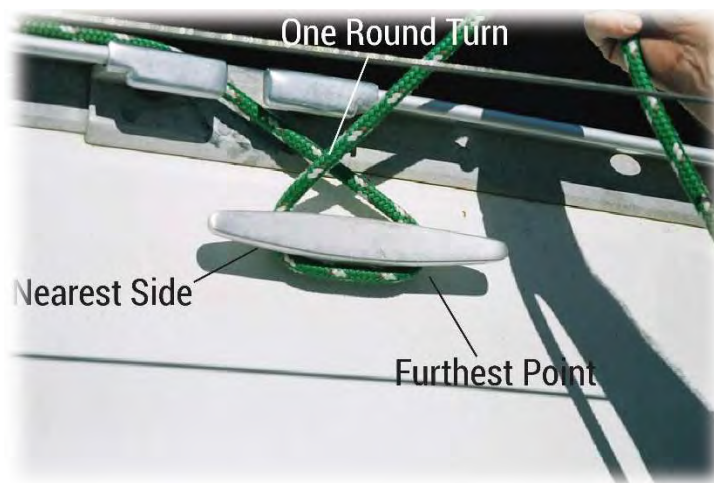


FIGURE 5-9 SECURING TO A CLEAT

## 5.4 Coiling Line

Ropes and lines should always be coiled neatly so that they are easy to access and use when needed quickly. Properly coiled lines allow the rope to run freely and not become kinked; it is also more easily stowed.

With stranded rope, always coil with the lay, and for the more common right lay rope, this will be by coiling clockwise using a slight twist about half a turn, in the direction of lay as each coil is formed. When coiling a braided rope which has no lay less twist must be used.



FIGURE 5-10 COILING LINE SEQUENCE

## 5.5 Knowledge Review

1. What causes ropes to deteriorate?
  2. Know how to properly coil a line.
  3. Know how to secure to a cleat.
  4. Know all the various types of knots and their uses.
- It is very important to practice tying your knots so you are familiar with them when you need to secure a boat to a dock or mooring buoy. Practice this with your skipper until you have managed the correct procedure.

## Module 6 REFUELING

### 6.1 Key Objectives

THE KEY OBJECTIVES ARE TO ENSURE THAT THE CREW UNDERSTAND THE CORRECT RE-FUELING PROCEDURES AND THE SAFETY MEASURES THAT NEED TO BE UNDERTAKEN TO MINIMISE THE RISK OF FIRE.

***The best place to refuel your vessel is at the local marina. Marina staff are aware of the precautions that need to be taken in order to prevent a fuel spill, and how to deal with them should they arise.***

### 6.2 Refueling Procedures

The procedures that need to be followed are as follows:

- Secure the vessel to the dock.
- Shut down all engines and electrical systems.
- Extinguish all naked flames including cigars and cigarettes.
- Only those involved in refuelling should be on the vessel.
- Do not smoke near the refuelling area.
- Have a fire extinguisher on hand in case it is needed.
- Avoid overflowing the tanks.
- Clean up any spillage with absorbent cloths and dispose of properly.
- If your vessel is gasoline powered, run the engine room blower for several minutes before starting the engine.
- Fill all additional fuel containers on shore and never aboard the boat.
- Close all windows and ports to prevent fumes entering the boat.
- Before starting the engine, make sure it is in neutral and all divers and swimmers are clear of the prop.



***\*Get to know the fuel range of your boat, and never trust a marine fuel gauge, they are nearly always wrong.***

## 6.3 Refueling a Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Follow the appropriate refueling procedures as listed previously with the following additions:

- Check the fuel/water separator and if necessary remove any water before fueling.
- Certain PWC's require pre-mixing of oil and gasoline before fueling so do so in a separate container.
- If the PWC is oil injected, make sure the oil reserve tank is full with the recommended oil from the manufacturer.
- Make sure the fuel selector switch is off when fueling and remember to turn it back on before restarting the engine.

## 6.4 Planning

***Plan ahead to ensure you never run out of fuel or oil. This is the number one cause of boater distress.*** You should always be sure to plan your requirements and carry enough fuel and oil.

As a general practice you should use the rule of thirds when considering the amount of fuel required:

- 1/3 out
- 1/3 back
- 1/3 in reserve

## 6.5 Knowledge Review

1. Name 6 precautions that need to be undertaken before refueling a vessel.
2. What additional procedures need to be undertaken before refueling a PWC?
3. What is the recommended general practice when considering your fuel requirements?

## Module 7 MAN-OVERBOARD PROCEDURES

### 7.1 Key Objectives

THE KEY OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO UNDERSTAND THE PROCEDURES TO BE UNDERTAKEN TO RETRIEVE A MAN-OVERBOARD. THIS MODULE IS DESIGNED TO BE A “PRACTICAL” MODULE REQUIRING THE ACTUAL PRACTICE OF THE PROCEDURES OUTLINED IN THIS THEORY MODULE.

### 7.2 Man overboard (person overboard) emergency

***Over 40% of all boating fatalities are the result of people falling overboard. Getting struck by the boom is the number one cause of man overboard accidents on sailboats.***

All boats should be prepared with the knowledge and equipment to rescue someone who has fallen overboard.

- Ensure that the emergency equipment is properly maintained and readily accessible.
- Practice overboard rescue techniques with your passengers (using a bucket) and make them aware of their responsibilities in this event.
- Practice manoeuvring your pleasure craft to properly position your boat so that you're ready to perform an overboard rescue.
- Be aware of the water surface and weather conditions as well as condition of the person being rescued.

### 7.3 Rescuing a Person Overboard - General

- Shout “man overboard” reduce speed and prepare to turn around
- Assign another person onboard to keep a lookout for the person overboard and continuously point to their location in the water.
- Immediately throw a bright colored buoyant item overboard (such as a cockpit cushion or lifejacket) to increase their visibility in the water and mark their approximate position.



- In limited visibility, look at the compass for the course you were steering when the person fell overboard
- Put the wheel hard over towards the side where the person fell. This will take the stern of the vessel and the propellers away from the person in the water.
- Turn to about 60 to 70 degrees from your course and then put the wheel hard over to the other side.
- Come back on to the reciprocal of your original course. For example, if you were steering 105 degrees then you would come back onto 285 degrees this will put you on course straight back towards the person.
- Carefully manoeuver the boat, turning the bow into the wind and in a downwind position from the victim. This is because you want the person overboard to drift towards your boat, not move away from the boat.
- Once the person is alongside, put engine into neutral or shut down the engine to avoid injury to the victim from the propellers.
- Use one of the following rescue techniques to retrieve the victim:
  - Reaching Assist
    - Move to the side of the boat and keep your weight low
    - Use the reaching assist to pull the victim to the side of the boat and assist them back into the boat.
  - Use a Buoyant Heaving Line
    - Throw the heaving line so that it lands behind the victim
    - Slowly pull the line towards you so the victim can grab onto it
    - Pull the victim to the side of the boat and assist them back into the boat
  - Use a Life Ring
    - Ensure the life ring is secured to the boat with a line
    - Throw the life ring so that it lands behind the victim
    - Slowly pull the line toward you so the victim is able to grab onto it
    - Pull the victim to the side of the boat and assist them back into the boat



***It is important to note that a rescuer should never jump into the water in an attempt to rescue the victim (unless they are unconscious) because if the victim is panicking and thrashing around they could pull the rescuer under water.***

## 7.4 Man Overboard - Sailboats

***Despite what other nautical training associations may tell you, there is no one “correct” procedure for rescuing a man overboard while under sail or power.***

The following need to be taken into consideration when deciding which procedure is best for you and your crew:

- 1) Is the person in the water wearing a lifejacket?
- 2) Is the boat flying a spinnaker?
- 3) What are the weather conditions?
- 4) Is it daytime or nighttime?
- 5) How big are the seas?
- 6) What is the visibility like?
- 7) What is the water temperature?
- 8) How many crew are on deck?
- 9) How experienced are they?
- 10) Does the sailboat have an auxiliary motor?
- 11) Has the person been knocked unconscious?
- 12) Are they wearing survival clothing?
- 13) How heavy is the victim?

**The reasons for this are as follows:**

- 1) If the person is wearing a lifejacket then they will be visible from a distance and less likely to panic, if they are not, reaction time will need to be a lot faster.
- 2) If the boat is flying a spinnaker, it is imperative that this sail is taken down before anything else happens. This is a very powerful sail and can cause a lot of damage if gybed and it will be very difficult to get back to the person in the water in a timely fashion without removing this sail first.
- 3) If the weather conditions are reasonably calm it will be much easier to turn the boat around and retrieve the victim, not so in rough conditions.

- 4) If it is daytime, visibility will be much better than nighttime and easier to spot the victim in the water, if nighttime, reaction time will need to be much faster.
- 5) If there are big seas with high waves, it is far easier to lose sight of the victim.
- 6) If visibility is restricted due to fog or heavy rain, it will be much harder to keep the victim in sight.
- 7) If the water temperature is high (such as Caribbean or Mediterranean), the victim can survive afloat for days. If the water is cold, you will have far less time to react.
- 8) If you are alone on deck, you will need to get the crew topside immediately to help you.
- 9) If the crew are experienced and have practiced man overboard procedures, they will be far more likely to respond positively and without delay.
- 10) If the sailboat has an auxiliary engine, it should be started immediately so as the boat can be maneuvered without the need for sails.
- 11) If the person has been knocked unconscious, it may be necessary for another crew member to grab a life ring and jump overboard to assist the unconscious person. This will of course depend on water temperature, sea state, visibility, whether they are wearing a lifejacket etc.
- 12) If the victim is wearing survival clothing, they are less likely to panic and can survive longer in the water.
- 13) If the victim is an adult and there are only children on board, hauling a wet person back on board can be a very difficult task. If close to shore, it is possible to get the victim to hold on to the side of the boat while you motor into shallow water where the person can stand or get back on board under their own strength.

Getting the victim back onto the deck is another issue, some modern sailboats have a boarding ladder on the “sugar scoop” at the stern which is easy in light weather, however in a heavy swell this could be dangerous as the boat may rise and fall a substantial distance. Winches can be used to recover a man overboard on either a sailboat or powerboat.



**FIGURE 7-1 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL – APPOINT LOOKOUT**  
**PHOTO BY JOHN ROUSMANIERE & PHIL COWLEY**



**FIGURE 7-2 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - APPROACHING VICTIM**  
**PHOTO BY JOHN ROUSMANIERE & PHIL COWLEY**



**FIGURE 7-3 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - TOSS LIFE SAVING FLOAT OBJECT**  
**PHOTO BY JOHN ROUSMANIERE & PHIL COWLEY**



**FIGURE 7-4 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - RETRIEVE VICTIM USING LIFELINE  
PHOTO BY JOHN ROUSMANIERE & PHIL COWLEY**

## 7.5 Man Overboard – Powerboats

Note: Under instruction, the candidate will demonstrate good practical understanding and application of MOB procedures.



**FIGURE 7-5 MAN OVERBOARD POWER**  
**PHOTO BY JOHN ROUSMANIERE & PHIL COWLEY**

## 7.6 Cold Water/Weather Survival Gear

If operating in cold conditions, you should always use cold weather/water protection gear. You should wear multiple layers of dry, light clothing and a water or wind proof outer layer as well as a lifejacket or PFD. Gear designed for cold environments offers better protection from the elements and can delay the effects of hypothermia.



**FIGURE 7-7 WET SUITS**

Traps and heats water against the body and should be used with a flotation device.



**FIGURE 7-6 DRY SUIT**

Remains dry on the inside and should be used with a flotation device.



**FIGURE 7-9 IMMERSION SUIT  
(OR SURVIVAL SUIT)**

Should be used in extreme conditions when abandoning a vessel. It works as a full body flotation device.



**FIGURE 7-8 EXPOSURE  
COVERALL**

Insulated suit to protect from hypothermia

Always know how the equipment you choose works in water. Test the equipment in a warm swimming pool or calm water to ensure it works properly in the event of an emergency. Choose the appropriate cold weather/water protection gear for your voyage.

## 7.7 Knowledge Review

1. What is the cause of 40% of all boating fatalities?
2. What is the number one cause of man-overboard on sailboats?
3. Describe the procedure for rescuing a man-overboard for power and sail vessels
4. What criteria do you need to take into account when considering a man-overboard rescue?
5. Describe 4 types of cold weather survival gear

## Module 8 CAPSIZING, SWAMPING AND SINKING

### 8.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO GET THE CANDIDATE TO UNDERSTAND THE SERIOUSNESS OF CAPSIZING, SWAMPING OR SINKING AND THE ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN IN THE EVENT OF SUCH AN OCCURANCE.

### 8.2 Definitions

*According to the “Safety of Life at Sea” (SOLAS) convention, all mariners are obligated by law to render assistance to any vessel that is in distress whether from capsizing, fire, swamping, grounding or sinking, as long as they do not endanger their own crew, passengers or vessel.*

**Capsizing** is when a vessel is turned upside down in the water yet the vessel still remains afloat due to the air trapped inside the hull, or if the buoyancy built into the vessel causes the hull to remain afloat.

**Swamping** is when a vessel is filled with water that comes in over the sides or bow/stern of a vessel yet the vessel remains upright.

**Sinking** is when a boat disappears below the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea or lake.

**Capsizing** usually occurs when heavy weather is encountered. This is most likely to happen when hit by a large wave on the beam of the vessel causing the center of gravity to shift to the point of what is called “vanishing stability” and the vessel will overturn. It can also be caused by the wake of a large vessel as it passes by.

Another way that a vessel can capsize is to “turn turtle”. This generally occurs when the bow of the vessel buries into a wave and the stern flips over the bow. Capsizing is a very frightening experience and it



FIGURE 8-1 CAPSIZED VESSEL



FIGURE 8-2 SWAMPING



FIGURE 8-3 SINKING

can cause injury and/or death. Passengers are most likely to survive if wearing lifejackets.

- If you cannot stop your vessel from sinking, try swimming to safety if close to shore. If not, stay with your vessel until help arrives and if possible climb on top of it, it is much easier to spot an overturned vessel in the water than a swimmer. Climbing onto the overturned hull will avoid the onset of hypothermia (if in cold water) and will increase your visibility to other boaters.
- A hull will generally stay afloat for a very long time. If you do capsize, confirm that all passengers are all present and accounted for, determine if other craft are in the area that may offer assistance, and if possible try to find your air horn or flares for signalling.

**Swamping** generally occurs when large waves overtake the bow, stern or sides of the vessel and fill the boat with water or if the hull is punctured by a log or sharp object in the water. It is far more likely to occur if a vessel is overloaded with too many passengers or weight. It can also occur from a burst thru hull fitting. As with capsizing, it is most likely to occur during heavy weather. As with all hull leaks or flooding, start bailing or pumping the water out as fast as possible and head for shore. If possible, transfer your crew and passengers to another vessel. Make sure all passengers are wearing lifejackets and have your signalling devices ready if they are needed.

**Sinking** is the worst case scenario for a vessel. It can occur from capsizing, swamping or hitting an object in the water such as a log, whale or container. When a boat sinks there is nothing to hold onto for buoyancy and will leave the passengers on their own in the water or in their liferaft. If close to shore, stick together and swim to safety. If your vessel is equipped with a liferaft, the golden rule is to “never leave your vessel unless you have to step up into a liferaft”.

**Grounding** is running aground and can happen very easily in areas that have a high tidal range. It is imperative to keep a close eye on your navigational charts and stay within the deeper water channels if in doubt. If you do run aground on a falling tide, make sure that the hull has not been punctured and wait until the tide turns. If you run aground at high water, you may need to seek towing assistance. Lighten up the boat if possible by getting the passengers or crew onto another vessel. Make sure that everyone is wearing a lifejacket and have a radio and signalling device ready.

***To avoid any of the above scenarios from taking place it is imperative that you get a marine weather forecast before leaving shore. Getting caught in bad weather can be avoided by getting regular forecasts and “if in doubt, do not venture out”. Having safety equipment ready, an abandon ship bag and life jackets for all passengers will help to increase your chances of rescue and survival.***

## 8.3 Knowledge Review

1. What are the differences between capsizing, swamping and sinking?
2. Name 3 things that could cause a boat to swamp
3. What is the “point of vanishing stability”?
4. When is a boat most likely to capsize?
5. What is the main cause of capsizing, sinking or swamping?
6. What safety precautions can be taken for all of the above?

## Module 9 ANCHORS, ANCHORING AND RUNNING AGROUND

### 9.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO UNDERSTAND THE MOST COMMON TYPES OF ANCHORING, ANCHORING PROCEDURES AND WHAT TO DO IN THE EVENT OF A GROUNDING.

Anchors hold best in soft bottoms such as sand and mud, but will also hold in hard sand, shingle or pebbles. Smooth rock and weed are not good for holding. The Fisherman is probably the best for holding in rock. On vessels >10M it is best to carry two anchors of different types. The anchor line is called “rode” or “warp”. The rode may be line (nylon warp or fiber rope), chain, wire rope or a combination of line or wire rope and chain. The end of the rode that is attached to the boat is known as the “bitter end”.

Whichever type of anchor is used to hold the vessel without dragging, a horizontal pull along the seabed must be created. **This requires the correct amount of scope; at least 5 times the maximum depth of water for chain and at least 7 times the maximum depth for rode. This means that in 3m of water, you would lower 15 feet of chain or 21m of chain and rode.** **Scope** is defined as the ratio of length of anchor line in use, to the vertical distance from the bow of the vessel to the bottom of the water. Larger boats generally carry all chain while smaller boats are more likely to carry a short length of chain attached to a nylon warp.



FIGURE 9-1 ANCHOR WITH RODE AND CHAIN

## 9.2 Anchors and Your Boat

### Anchors uses

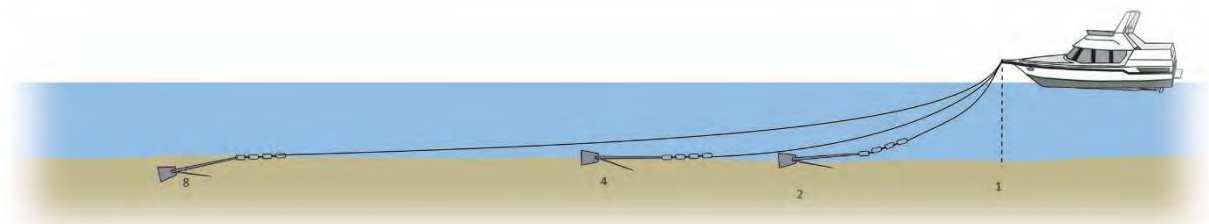
- In event of a breakdown
- During severe weather
- Non-emergencies such as stopping to swim or an overnight stay

### Anchoring

It is important to understand that it is not the anchor alone that holds the vessel in place but the combined effect of both anchor and chain. The anchor fixes the chain to the seabed and the weight of the chain and the friction of it on the seabed hold the vessel in place. One of the most important considerations is the depth of water and one must remember that it will change according to the tide. The procedure requires a minimum of two people, one to work the anchor gear and the second to steer the vessel.

### How to anchor the boat

- 1) Make sure that one end of the anchor line is securely fastened to the vessel, the other end is securely fastened to the chain and the chain is shackled to the anchor.
- 2) Slowly lower the anchor over the bow or side of the boat until it touches bottom. (Never throw the anchor over the side of the boat).
- 3) Make a mental note of the length of line used for the anchor to reach bottom, operate the engine in reverse and let out an additional 5-10 times more anchor line than the depth of the water and securely fasten to the boat.
- 4) At only 2x and 4x depth, the anchor can dig in but there is too much upward pull on the anchor line. At a length of 5 to 10 times the water's depth, the rope lies flat on the bottom and pulls the anchor in deeper.



### Choosing landmarks

Once the anchor is set, choose two fixed landmarks on the horizon and occasionally check your position in relation to the landmarks to ensure that you are not drifting.

### Swing

Never secure the anchor to the stern of the craft. If the wind changes direction, your boat will swing with the stern into the wind. Smaller boats can be easily swamped by waves crashing over the back of the boat.

### Right of swing

If you are preparing to set anchor in an anchorage among other boats, remember that the first craft into anchorage has the 'right of swing'. Other boats may 'swing' with changes in wind direction or current. Always allow for another craft's right of swing and anchor well clear of it.



FIGURE 9-2 ANCHOR SWING

### Retrieving the anchor

To retrieve the anchor, slowly pull on the anchor line, move the boat forward until the anchor frees itself from the bottom and is hanging directly downward, bring the anchor onto the vessel and fasten securely.

*This subject will be covered in much greater detail in the IYT Bareboat Skipper Course.*

### Scope

Scope is defined as the ratio of length of anchor line in use to the vertical distance from the bow of the vessel to the bottom of the water. The scope of chain or warp will vary with conditions, the type of anchor, and size and type of boat but, if the anchor is dragging, more warp should be let out.

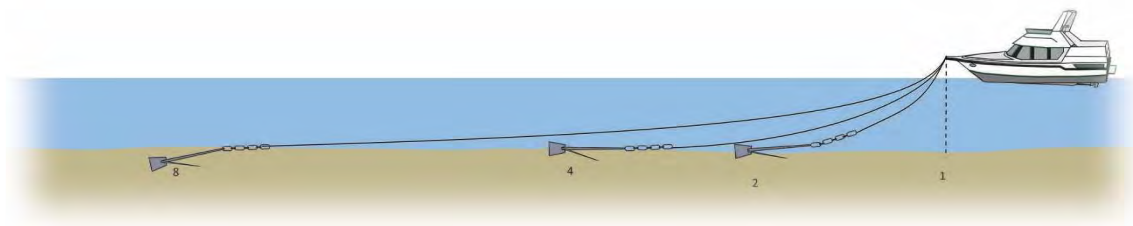


FIGURE 9-3 SCOPE

### Setting the Anchor.

- 1) Do not anchor in prohibited areas, for example: where there are submarine cables, (these are underwater electrical or communication cables and will be marked on a nautical chart).**

- 2) Do not anchor on old shipwrecks as this will likely snag you anchor (these will also be marked on a nautical chart).
- 3) Having established the depth of water at high tide in the location you wish to anchor, you will prepare to lay out your anchor and chain.
- 4) Examine the way vessels on the other moorings are lying, this will help you evaluate the best place to anchor. Vessels will either be lying head to wind or if the current is stronger heading into the current.
- 5) If the anchorage is crowded, it is best to plan to anchor among vessels that are similar to your own, power boats and sailing boats have different characteristics in the way they lie at anchor and it best to swing with a similar group of vessels.
- 6) Remember the vessel will swing on its anchor so you need room between you and other vessels to allow your boat to possibly swing through 360 degrees.
- 7) Drop your anchor and rode according to the depth of water you are in (remember your scope ratio). When the anchor hits the bottom, the chain will momentarily slacken
- 8) Once the anchor is on the bottom go astern slowly and at the same time pay out the rode until you reach the length you decided to use.
- 9) At this point, when you stop paying out, the anchor chain will become taught and run forward from the vessel at a shallow angle, close to horizontal.
- 10) You should feel the vessel slow as the chain becomes taught, take the engine out of gear and the boat should move forwards until the chain is hanging close to vertical from the bow.
- 11) Once the vessel has settled, take compass bearings from objects that you can clearly define, or take a reading from the GPS if fitted.
- 12) Repeat the last process after a period of time, the figures should match reasonably closely. Even if the vessel turns with the wind or current to head in a different direction these bearings should remain constant.
- 13) If there are large changes in the bearing, the anchor is dragging and will have to be reset.

### Beach Anchoring

In order to insure that your vessel does not drift away on a rising tide it is common practice to anchor the dinghy on the beach as shown.



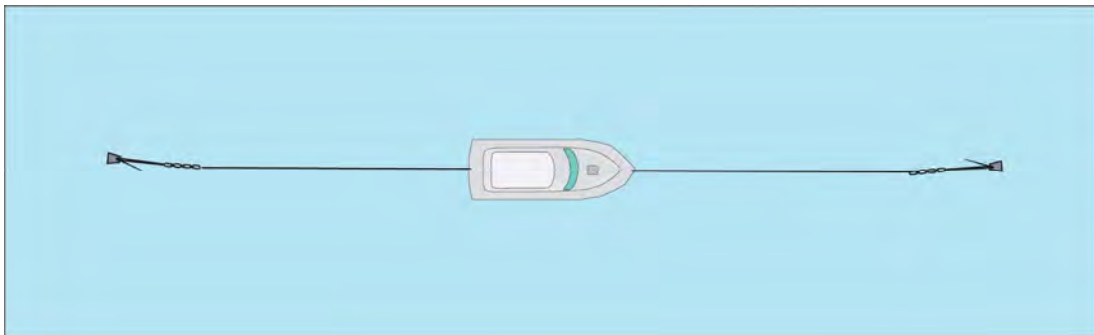
**FIGURE 9-4 BEACH ANCHORING**

## 9.3 Laying a Second Anchor

Sometimes it is necessary to lay a second anchor to reduce the swing or yaw of the boat due to tidal stream or strong wind, especially in a confined anchorage (the boat is then technically said to be moored). Unfortunately, not all boats, lie at the same angle in identical conditions. Some will lie more to wind and some more to tidal stream.

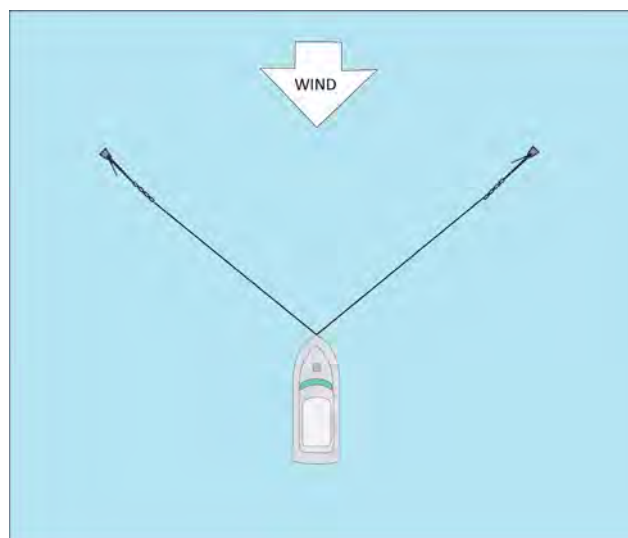
One method of laying two anchors is to lead both from the bow, the heaviest one in the direction of the strongest tidal stream and the other in the opposite direction. This method is only suitable for a strong tidal stream with little or no wind. In calm conditions both anchors can be led out over the bow, the heaviest one laid towards the strongest tidal stream.

Anchoring fore and aft is not normally suitable for a small boat as it induces too much strain in a cross-tide or a strong cross wind. It can however be useful in narrow channels.



**FIGURE 9-5 FORE AND AFT ANCHORING**

Another way is to position the two anchors well forward from the bows, with not too wide an angle between them. This method is used when expecting strong winds.



**FIGURE 9-6 LAYING SECOND ANCHOR**

## 9.4 Kedging

Kedging is a method of getting a boat which has run aground back into deeper water. The method is to take the anchor in your dinghy and drop it into deeper water. You can then use the anchor windlass to pull the boat toward the anchor in order to refloat the boat. This process is repeated until such time as the boat is in deep water and is referred to as kedging.

## 9.5 Fouled Anchor

If the seabed is covered with debris, the anchor can become fouled and difficult to retrieve. It may require “driving over the anchor” (with the engine in gear) in an effort to release it and in some instances (if the water is shallow enough), it may be necessary to dive down to un snag it. A trip line can be fastened to the anchor so that the crown can pull it up. There is a hole or ring on most anchors for the attachment of such a line. The other end of the line may be attached to a small buoy (which has the advantage of marking the position of your anchor).

## 9.6 Running Aground (groundings)

### Problems

Unintentional groundings may occur with or without warning. A disabled vessel may drift ashore if the anchors fail to hold her and there may be time to make preparations. A grounding due to errors in navigation may occur without warning.

All crew on board should be wearing lifejackets. If the vessel is disabled, it is almost certain that a call for towage may be required. If the vessel starts to break up after grounding, it will be necessary to abandon her and preparations should be made in advance, even if the chances of having to do so appear slim.

- After grounding, the situation must be assessed.
- The position of the vessel must be ascertained.
- Where possible, a full internal inspection should be carried out to assess the damage to the vessel.
- Soundings must be taken all round the outside of the vessel to establish how much of the vessel is aground and how hard aground.
- There is no point in trying to refloat the vessel if she is so badly damaged that she will sink as soon as she reaches deep water. It would be better to keep her firmly aground and not grinding on the bottom and doing further damage. Much will depend on the state of the sea, the anticipated weather and the type of bottom.
- The decision to call for assistance or to try to refloat the vessel without assistance will be affected by all the above factors. If she is reasonably intact and not too firmly

- aground, it may be possible to refloat her by removing weight such as a dinghy, pumping water tanks and removing stores.
- Before any attempt is made to refloat, the operation should be carefully planned. If possible, anchors should be placed to seaward by the vessel's dinghy. A careful survey of the proposed track of the vessel into deep water should be made using the dinghy. These may also be useful in towing the vessel.
  - If possible, a diver's inspection should be carried out to check for damage and especially to check the rudders and propellers.
  - Any repairs to the hull should be completed before trying to move the vessel. Obviously, the best time to start the operation is on a rising tide, soon before high water. If the main engines cannot be used, it is almost certain that assistance will be required.

### If you run aground:

- Make sure that all your crew are safe and free of injury and are wearing lifejackets.
- Check your position, if the navigator knew where he was, then the vessel would probably not have run aground. Consider holding the vessel in position with anchors.
- Monitor the situation and make regular checks on all compartments.
- Take soundings around the vessel to determine the nature of the ground on which the vessel lies and how much of the vessel is actually aground.
- Assess the degree of risk and this will depend on many factors, including the present weather and the forecast, the state of the tide and the amount of damage found. Divers may be required to make more a detailed inspection.
- Arrange outside assistance, this may involve a Mayday, a Pan Pan or a call to arrange a tow.
- Passengers and crew may have to be taken off.

### Solutions:

- If you have run aground at low water, the vessel will refloat as the tide rises.
- Seek assistance from a passing vessel if at all possible.
- Determine if she will survive the tow to a safe port or if extra water pumps will be needed.
- If necessary, use your VHF radio to call a local towing company.
- If a tow is engaged to pull the vessel off, then good communications are essential between vessel and tow, together with an agreed plan of action.
- In order to secure the tow, bearing in mind the strain on the towing gear in such an operation, it is worth considering using the heavy towing gear from the towboat. Give some thought as to how the line is to be secured aboard.
- It may be useful to lay out an anchor to assist. Timing, weather, the state of the tide and daylight will effect this.

- Determine where the nearest port is that will have the necessary facilities to make repairs.

## 9.7 Knowledge Review

1. When would you use an anchor?
2. What is scope?
3. How much scope would you use if using just chain?
4. How much scope would you use if using rode and chain?
5. Describe the sequence for setting an anchor
6. What is swing?
7. Who has the “right of swing”?
8. Describe the sequence for retrieving an anchor?
9. When would you lay a second anchor?
10. What is fore and aft anchoring?
11. What does kedging mean?
12. How would you retrieve a fouled anchor?
13. List the problems associated with running aground
14. What safety measures should you take if you run aground?
15. What solutions are open to you if you run aground?

## Module 10 RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CREW, CARE OF THE ENVIRONMENT, PROVISIONING & HOUSEKEEPING

### 10.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RESPONSIBILITIES AS A CREW MEMBER, THE EFFECTS OF ALCOHOL, WHEN TO CALL THE SKIPPER, PROTECTING THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT AND PROVISIONING AND HOUSEKEEPING RULES.

### 10.2 Rested and Alert Crew

For safety reasons it is important that the skipper and crew are rested, sober and alert. Regular periods of rest and a healthy diet will ensure that all members of the crew will be able to maintain a proper watch and be alert to the needs of the vessel in changing conditions.

The effects of fatigue, alcohol and drugs are:

- slow mental process including the following:
  - visual perception
  - decision making
  - mental calculations
- reduced reaction time for simple and complex tasks
- diminished judgement/ errors of omission
- slower / lower productivity
- decreased morale resulting in lack of motivation
- poor communications
- sleeping on watch
- reduced motor skills, blurred vision and possible loss of balance
- If consuming alcohol in cold climates- accelerated hypothermia as alcohol lowers the body's resistance to cold
- If consuming alcohol in hot climates- dehydration (see first aid module)

In certain countries (such as Canada) it is prohibited to operate a vessel when under the influence of alcohol. (if boating in a foreign country, check with local authorities before heading out as there may be regulations concerning the amount of alcohol you can carry on a vessel and rules for how much alcohol your crew may consume). Drinking alcohol and not wearing a lifejacket could be a lethal combination.

**40% of accidents at sea are related to alcohol and drugs. Consuming drugs or alcohol may put your life and the lives of others at risk, so don't drink and drive!**

## 10.3 Navigational Duties / Responsibilities of Crew

During the course of any voyage the crew should:

- maintain a proper lookout (sight and sound) at all times
- maintain a continuous record of:
  - speed
  - direction
  - position
  - positions of other vessels and hazards (Charts and Logbook)
- The crew also needs to:
  - maintain an effective radio watch.
  - safeguard against pollution and protect the environment.
- Crew members are required to:
  - respond in a timely and efficient manner to all instructions and orders of the skipper.
  - to maintain a watch.
  - help in the general running of the vessel.
  - steer a compass course as requested by the skipper.
- Practice personal safety by:
  - checking all of the personal safety equipment to ensure it is in good working order.
  - ensuring clothing is adequate and having foul weather gear as appropriate for weather conditions.

## 10.4 When to Call the Skipper

The skipper is responsible at all times for operational safety of the vessel and the welfare of the crew, even when asleep or down below. The skipper will generally have specific instructions as to circumstances (often written in the log book) when he/she requires the crew to call him on deck. The general rule is if you have ANY doubts whatsoever alert the skipper immediately.

## 10.5 Protecting the Marine Environment

**It is an offence to put oil, garbage or other pollutants into the water.** Check with your local authorities about the discharge of sewage in your area (often referred to as blackwater) Use pump out facilities as required.



- Keep your bilge clean, do not pump oily water overboard.
- Use biodegradable bilge oil dispersing solutions in place of detergents or toxic cleaning products.
- Do not pump sewage (blackwater) overboard, use a holding tank (the discharge of blackwater is an offense in certain waters).
- Bring your garbage home.
- Observe local and federal sewage regulations.
- When fueling, do not “top up” tanks, clean up any excess spillage.
- Watch your wake and prop wash, protect the shoreline from erosion.
- It is your responsibility to clean up and report pollution to the authorities when you see it.
- It is your responsibility to clean up boat-coat sandings and scrapings, cross contamination of invasive species and report incidents of same to the authorities.
- Some countries allow grey water (water from showers and kitchen sink) to be discharged directly overboard, check with local authorities first.

## 10.6 Provisioning and Housekeeping Considerations

- Prior to leaving port for a trip or voyage, sufficient food for three meals a day with snacks, soda and soft drinks, bottled water, tea, coffee, long life milk, etc. should be provisioned for.
- There should then be a reserve of provisions added to the required food and stores on board in the event of adverse weather, unforeseen delays or a need to deviate

course in the event of responding to a distress or having an incident on board (medical emergency etc.).

- Note any special food requirements of the crew and any food allergies.
- Check availability of fresh water at ports en route and at the destination before departure
- Ensure there are proper medical supplies onboard and that the crew carry any medications they may require.
- Ensure there is plenty of propane gas for the stove and spare propane tanks.
- Additional canned meats, vegetables and fruits should be carried in the event that the cooker breaks down or the propane supply is depleted.

## 10.7 Cooking While Underway

Cooking while underway poses an interesting challenge.

- During rough or extreme weather or situations when the boat is rolling or pitching, it is recommended not to attempt cooking hot food due to the likelihood of burning yourself or a fellow crew member.
- If you know that bad weather is on the way, it may be better to prepare sandwiches or foods that can be eaten without likelihood of spillage.
- In order to facilitate cooking while you are underway, cookers or stoves are generally held in place by a gimbal which allows the cooker to swing, yet remain stable when the boat rolls.
- Pots are held in place by attaching “fiddles” around them which help to hold them in place and prevent them from falling off the stove or spilling on the cabin sole.



## 10.8 A Balanced Diet

Provisioning should be planned to incorporate foods included in a balanced diet. All diets should include:

- proteins (meats, eggs, dairy products, soy products and legumes)
- carbohydrates (fruits, vegetables and grains)

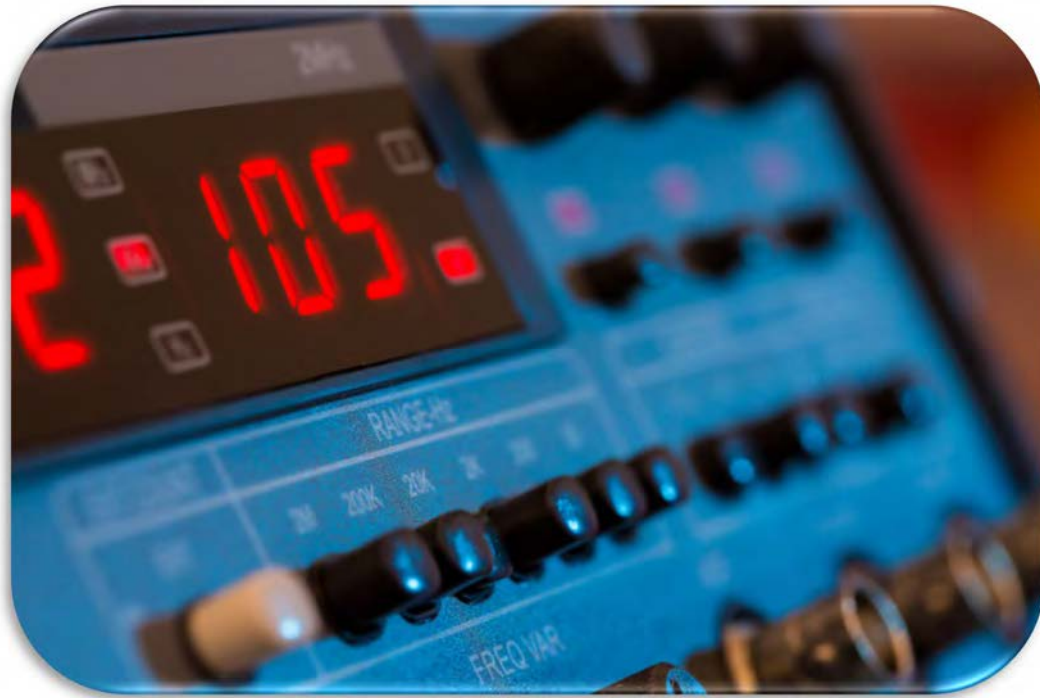
The daily recommended portions differ from one person to another based on age, sex and physical activity. For instance, the U.S. Government has introduced “My Pyramid” which recommends the daily portion of vegetables, fruits, grains, proteins, beans and dairy.

A proper diet is extremely important to counteract the effects of heat, cold and seasickness. These can become critical factors when on open water.



## 10.9 Knowledge Review

1. What are the effects of fatigue?
2. What are the responsibilities of a navigator/ watchkeeper?
3. When should you call the skipper?
4. List 6 obligations for protecting the marine environment
5. When would you alert the captain of issues he/she should be made aware of?
6. What should you take into consideration when provisioning a boat?
7. What factors would you take into consideration when cooking at sea?
8. Why is it important to have a balanced diet?



## **MARINE COMMUNICATIONS COURSE NOTES**

**CERTIFICATION FOR VHF RADIO OPERATIONS  
AND SHORT RANGE CERTIFICATE (SRC)**

*(IYT PASSPORT TRAINING PROGRAMME MODULE 12)*

## Module 11 VHF-SRC MARINE COMMUNICATIONS

### 11.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO TEACH CANDIDATES HOW TO EFFECTIVELY OPERATE A VHF RADIO.

### 11.2 Introduction

In 1912 the sinking of RMS Titanic changed the way the world regarded maritime safety. The event was the catalyst for the formation of the international treaty for Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS). Over the years SOLAS has introduced minimum guidelines that flag states must comply. In particular Chapter IV of SOLAS V requirements deals with Radio Communications equipment.

Internationally Marine Communications are controlled by the international Maritime Organisation (IMO) and are advised by the International Telecommunications union (ITU). They developed the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) an internationally agreed upon set of safety procedures, types of equipment and communication protocols to increase safety and make it easier to rescue distressed boats and aircraft. The GMDSS requirements are laid down in Chapter IV of SOLAS.

Whilst not all vessels are bound to carry GMDSS equipment, it is recommended that they should at least carry some form of radio communications in case of distress and danger. Mobile or cell phones are readily available nowadays and have their uses, but they should not be relied on alone when at sea. Coverage can be extremely limited offshore and would not prove effective in the case of an emergency.

#### Accuracy of Information

While this course aims to teach as accurately as possible the International scope of each topic is covered, it is impossible to list all differences for every country. It is the duty of all marine VHF operators to know and understand any local laws and procedures required by their own flag state when operating marine communications equipment registered in that state.

#### Course Information

This course outlines the various types of communications equipment, the regulations concerning their correct use, types of radio equipment used and the correct procedures for emergency radio communications.

At the end of each chapter there is a knowledge review box that checks your knowledge of the key points of each section. Complete these as a self-study aid.

Successful completion of the course will enable you to use a VHF radio and introduces you to the correct operational procedures and common radio terminology.

These notes may be kept on board your vessel to serve as a quick reference guide.

## 11.3 Licensing

### Licensing Requirements

In accordance with the most recent 2012 edition of International Radio Regulations (2012):

- All Marine Radio equipment (Including portable equipment) must carry a license issued in an appropriate form and in conformity with the provisions of International Radio Regulations by or on behalf of the government of the country to which the equipment or station is subject.
- All Marine Radio equipment using frequencies and techniques for GMDSS shall be controlled by an operator holding a certificate issued or recognized by the government to which the station is subject.

Attaining a VHF license through an agency that is IMO and ITU approved should allow the operator to use VHF equipment globally but it is always prudent to check specific local requirements to ensure you are following all applicable rules and regulations (Both National and International. The figure below shows some examples of such agencies:



FIGURE 11-1 VARIOUS VHF AGENCIES

There are six categories of Radio Operator certification:

- First Class electronic certificate
- Second Class electronic certificate
- General Operator's certificate
- Restricted Operator's certificate
- Long Range Certificate – (only for non SOLAS Vessels)
- Short Range Certificate – (only for non SOLAS Vessels)





This IYT course is the Very High Frequency (VHF) Short Range Certificate (SRC) and follows the World Radio Conference (WRC) 2012 syllabus guidelines. It is recognized by the Republic of the Marshall Islands. It is the outcome of the WRC that revises the Radio Regulations. For most coastal operations this SRC will be more than sufficient but if the vessel you are working

with operates commercially offshore; more advanced certification in radiotelephony may be required. This will be further explained in the next chapter.

The Long Range certificate covers Medium Frequency (MF) and High Frequency (HF) equipment and is outside the scope of this course.

**TABLE 1** below details four examples of minimum Maritime VHF certification requirements:

**TABLE 1 EXAMPLES OF MINIMUM MARINE VHF CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS**

| Serial (1) | Country (2)  | License Issued By: (3)  | Certification Required: (4) | Complies with IMO & ITU (5) |
|------------|--|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1          | <br>AUSTRALIA | ACMA*<br>Issued by the OMC* a branch of the AMC* on behalf of the ACMA. | MROVCP*                     | YES                         |
| 2          | <br>CANADA    | CPSS*   | ROC (M)*                    | YES                         |
| 3          | <br>UK       | RYA   | SRC*                        | YES                         |
| 4          | <br>USA     | FCC*  | MP*                         | YES                         |

The following abbreviations were used in **TABLE 1** above:

- \*ACMA – Australian Communication & Media Authority.
- \*AMC – Australian Maritime College.
- \*CPSS – Canadian Power & Sail Squadron.
- \*FCC– Federal Communications Commission.
- \*MCA– Maritime & Coastguard Agency.
- \*MP – Marine Radio Operator Permit
- \*MROVCP – Marine Radio Operators VHF Certificate of Proficiency.
- \*OMC – Office of Maritime Communications.
- \*ROC (M) – Radio Operators Certificate (Maritime).
- \*RYA – Royal Yacht Association.
- \*SRC– Short Range Certificate.

## 11.4 Maritime Mobile Band

### Maritime Mobile Band

The ITU refers to the Marine VHF Frequencies between 156.0 and 162.025 MHz as the Maritime Mobile Band. This frequency band is split into a number of channels, which can be accessed by the operator.

### Simplex and Duplex

Marine VHF mostly uses Simplex transmission, where communication can only take place in one direction at a time. A transmit button (presell) on the set or microphone determines whether it is operating as a transmitter or receiver.

Some channels are Duplex where communication can take place in both directions simultaneously when the equipment on both ends allows it. This would be similar to a normal landline telephone call where both parties can speak at the same time.

It is important to note that for Full Duplex operation, both the radio channel needs to be Duplex and also the radio equipment used, otherwise the transmission will be semi Duplex or Simplex.

### International channels

There are a number of international channels with distinctive purposes. There is the likelihood that there may be additional local channels for these purpose that will vary from country to country.

- **Channel 16** is the international VHF distress frequency. It is used for distress, urgency and traffic safety.
- **Channel 70 DSC (Data communications only – NO Voice)** is used to establish initial contact between stations for distress, urgency and safety traffic. Following an alert by Digital Selective Calling (DSC), communications are then carried out by radio using voice. This will be explained in detail later in the course.
- **Channel 13 - Bridge to Bridge** - is set aside under GMDSS. It will normally be monitored by commercial vessels if a danger of collision exists.

- **Channel 80.** International Marina channel. Since marinas are not fitted with Channel 16 the initial call must be made on Channel 80.
- Other International Channel types:
  - **Inter-Ship Channels** These channels are for communications between ship stations.
  - **Port Operations and Ship movement.** Allocated by international agreement, they are assigned to a user, such as port or oil terminal where safe movement of ships is important.
  - **Public Correspondence.** Rarely used nowadays, these channels have been set aside, by international agreement for making calls to the public telephone network. Calls made on these channels are known as “link calls”

## 11.5 GMDSS Equipment

### GMDSS Requirements

The IMO regulates the radio communications equipment carriage requirements and operation for vessels engaged on international voyages, except warships. These radio regulations generally affect all passenger ships and all other ships of **300 gross tonnage and above** on international voyages and are known as **SOLAS** or **compulsory fit** vessels. Details are published in Chapter IV of the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS) Convention which has been ratified by the IMO members which includes about 170 maritime administrations (Governments).

Recreational Vessels and those less than 300 gross tonnage are collectively known as **non-SOLAS** or **voluntary fit** vessels are limited. These do not have to comply or carry GMDSS equipment, however they may choose to equip themselves with components of GMDSS equipment if they wish to be able to communicate with SOLAS Vessels or shore stations.

### GMDSS Components

The main components of the GMDSS system are:

- Maritime Safety Information Broadcasts
- Emergency Positioning Indication Radio Beacon (EPIRB)
- NAVTEX
- IMMARSAT

- High Frequency (HF) /Medium Frequency Radio (MF) (Sea areas A2 –A4 only. Outside Scope of this course)
- Search and Rescue Transponder (SART)
- Digital Selective Calling(DSC) *discussed in detail later*
- Power Supply Requirements

## GMDSS Sea Areas

There are four classifications of GMDSS Sea areas; **A1, A2, A3 and A4**. These areas serve two purposes. They describe areas where GMDSS services are available and define which GMDSS equipment's a compulsory fit vessel must carry. The sea areas are categorised as follows:

- **A1** An area within radiotelephone coverage of at least one VHF coast station in which continuous Digital Selective Calling (Ch70) alerting and radiotelephony services are available. Such areas could extend 30 - 40Km from the coast station.
- **A2** An area outside of A1, within the radiotelephone coverage of at least one medium frequency coast station in which continuous Digital Selective Calling (DSC) alerting and radiotelephony services are available. Such areas extend 150 - 180Km offshore.
- **A3** An area outside A1 and A2 within coverage of Inmarsat geostationary satellite. This area lies between 70 degrees North and South.
- **A4** An area outside of A1 –A3. Essentially the Polar Regions.

*NOTE: Presently the US Coast Guard maintains a sea area A1 service through its Rescue 21 system. Outside of this area a Compulsory Fit vessel must fit to A3 or A4 regardless of where they operate until a permanent A1 and A2 sea area is established.*

## Maritime Safety Information (MSI) Broadcasts

An essential component of the GMDSS is Maritime Safety Information broadcasts. As soon as a meteorological (weather) or navigational warning is issued an announcement is made on Channel 16. This will direct listeners to a working channel where further information is given. In addition to warnings, regular (normally 3 hour) weather forecasts are announced on Channel 16 and transmitted on working channels. Consult your local almanac for channel and timing information.

## Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon (EPIRB)

Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon (EPIRBs) are transmitters which aid in the detection and location of craft in distress. Essentially they interface by radio signal with an international satellite system for Search and Rescue authorities (SAR). Once they are activated, either by immersion or manually, they transmit a distress signal which is detected by satellites, informing authorities of the distress situation. In the case of modern (406 MHz) EPIRBs they transmit digital signals and provide SAR organisations with both an identification of the distressed vessel and its position to within 100 meters, anywhere in the world. This allows SAR aircraft and vessels to come swiftly to the aid of the distressed vessel. The figure below shows typical examples of EPIRB equipment.



FIGURE 11-2 EPIRB RADIO EQUIPMENT

### EPIRB Systems /Organisations / Regulations

EPIRBs interface with COSPAS-SARSAT, the international satellite system for search and rescue.

Many countries regulations require that all 406 MHz EPIRBs fitted must be registered with the appropriate authority. Any changes to registered beacons must also be notified. It is an offence not to comply with these requirements. Ensure you register any EPIRB equipment with the relevant authority.

### NAVTEX

Navigational Telex (NAVTEX) **Error! Reference source not found.** below is an essential component of GMDSS. It is an international automated medium frequency direct printing service for delivery of navigational and meteorological warnings and forecasts, as well as

urgent maritime safety information to vessels. NAVTEX was developed to provide a low cost simple means of receiving this information up to 370Km off shore.

The original frequency of 518 kHz is now supplemented with 490 kHz on most new sets.



FIGURE 11-3 NAVTEX

### INMARSAT

Inmarsat is a satellite system capable of receiving maritime safety information not within range of the NAVTEXT system.

The figure here shows a pictorial overview of the system.

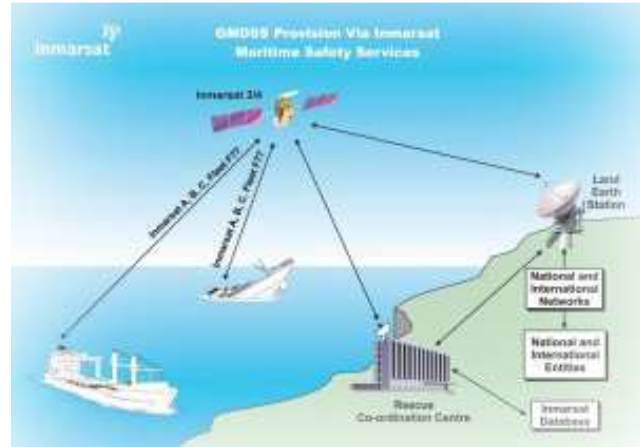


FIGURE 11-4 INMARSAT OVERVIEW

### Search and Rescue Transponders (SART)

SARTs are location aid beacons (operating on a radar frequency - 9GHz) that actively respond to being “interrogated” by another vessel’s radar within a range of approximately 8 nautical miles.

Compulsory fit Vessels must now carry at least two SARTs, one each side of the vessel, located so that they can be rapidly placed in a survival craft. Alternatively, one transponder can be carried in each survival craft, the SART being carried in lieu of a radar reflector in a life raft.

Once activated the SART will “paint” a marker on the screen of any “in range” search vessel’s operating radar display as an easily recognized series of dots. Many of the available SARTs include visual and/or audible warning when illuminated by radar. They should be positioned as high up as possible for maximum detection.

The SART operates by receiving the pulse from the search radar and sending back a series of pulses in response, which the radar will then display as if they were normal echoes.

Initially a series of 12 in-line dots is shown, leading away from the position of the SART; as the rescue craft gets closer, the dots become arcs and then increase until eventually complete rings on the display. See **FIGURE 12-6** below:



**FIGURE 11-5**  
**SART**

**FIGURE 11-6 SART RADAR SCREEN**



## Power Supply

GMDSS requirements state the Radio power supply should have sufficient capacity to power Radio transmissions for a considerable time without being charged by an alternator. i.e. In the event of a distress situation, exchange of vital information by VHF radio can still take place independently of engine power.

## 11.6 VHF DSC Radio Equipment

### Transmitter, Receiver, Transceiver, Antenna

A VHF radio set consists of a transmitter and receiver combined in one instrument, usually called a transceiver. The transmitter is the part that can send a radio signal and the receiver is the part that receives a radio signal from another transmitter. When you speak into the microphone the sounds of your voice are converted by the transmitter into radio waves, or signals, which are then transmitted (sent out) from the transmitter through an antenna or aerial.



FIGURE 11-7 VHF RADIO SET

A receiver can pick up these radio signals through its antenna and convert them back into intelligible sounds which are heard coming from the radio speaker.

### Antenna types

There are generally two types of antennas used in Marine communications. Each type has its own advantages and disadvantages:

**High Gain Antenna:** A spotlight has its beam focused into a narrower beam to make the light shine further. In much the same way an antenna can be designed so that it focuses the radio signal thus transmitting it further.

This type of antenna is called a high gain antenna but, because the beam is narrow, the antenna must remain reasonably upright and directed towards its target receiver.

A high gain antenna is therefore only really suitable for a motor boat rather than a sailing boat which will operate at an appreciable angle of heel most of the time.

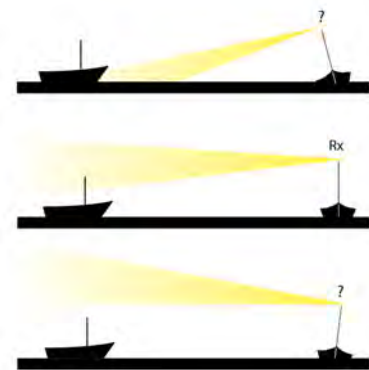


FIGURE 11-8 HIGH GAIN ANTENNA

### Unity Gain Antenna

Aerials for sailing boats are usually ‘Unity Gain’ types, in other words they are designed without any gain. Sailing boats have the advantage of a high mast on which to mount their antennas and gain range in this way; the wide angle of the signal from an aerial without any gain reduces the risk of broken or interrupted transmissions.

## Range

VHF radio waves travel in a straight line but the surface of the earth is curved; therefore, the maximum range between two VHF transceivers will depend on the height of the transmitting aerial and the height of the receiving aerial. Essentially the maximum range of a VHF signal is known as ‘**line of sight**’. Without the antennas “*seeing*” each other the stations will not be able to communicate. Increasing power will not increase range where the antennas are not in this line of sight.

The higher the aerial the greater the range, which is why coast radio stations put their aerials on hilltops. In the same vein a sailing boat, with the higher aerial location, would likely have a greater VHF radio range than a motor boat.

## Frequency

Radio transmitters send out their signal on a precise carrier frequency and only a receiver tuned exactly to the same carrier frequency will receive that signal. The frequency selected is usually indicated on the radio by a pointer against a printed scale or by a digital readout. In order to find the frequencies used by a specific station, a publication listing radio stations will have to be consulted.

More sophisticated radio receivers may allow frequency information for a number of regularly used stations to be inputted into its memory, so that by just pressing a marked button the radio receiver automatically switches to the desired frequency. If the radio has this facility you can also switch from one frequency to another by simply pressing the correctly marked button.

## 11.7 Makes of VHF Equipment

There are a large number of manufacturers producing different types and models for both the recreational and commercial markets. Each unit has different controls and layouts but essentially the functions of the controls on all types are similar. It is important that every crew member or anyone using VHF should be familiar with the specific radios operation and the manufacturers’ guidance. The radio set shown in **Error! Reference source not found.** below is a typical DSC enabled VHF transceiver which has all the international channels fitted.

### NOTE

*Vessel Owners and operators should ensure the radio set is in compliance with any local and international regulations. Not all VHF radios are built to the same standard.*



FIGURE 11-9 DSC ENABLED VHF RADIO

Controls

The figure below illustrates a typical front panel set up of a VHF radio.

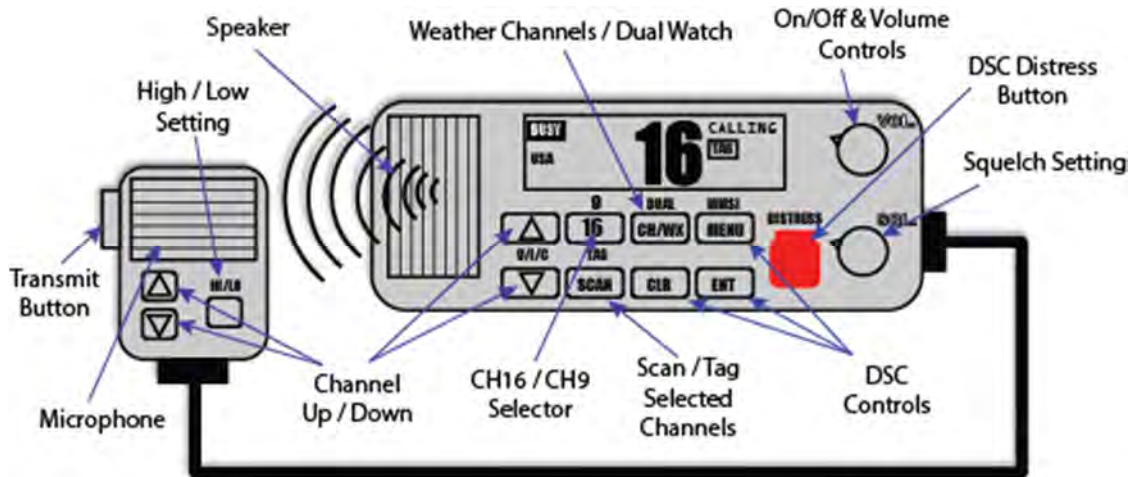


FIGURE 11-10 TYPICAL DSC ENABLED VHF RADIO CONTROLS

**On / Off / Volume:**

- The set is switched on and off by turning the on/ off knob; this also controls the volume of sound from the speaker. Adjusting the volume increases or decreases the sound coming from the speaker; it does not increase or decrease the power output from the transmitter.

**DSC Distress Button:**

- The red DSC Distress Button is found on sets fitted with Digital Selective Calling (DSC) It should be protected in some way to prevent accidental activation. When activated it will send out a pre-defined distress data message. DSC is covered in greater detail later on.

**Squelch:**

- The 'squelch' control increases or decreases the sensitivity of the receiver. In practice the set is switched on and the squelch control is adjusted until continuous loud background noise is heard.
- The squelch control is then turned back slightly until the background noise disappears; at this setting the receiver is tuned to its optimum sensitivity allowing it to pick up signals within range.

**Channel (CH):**

- The "Arrow Up" and "Arrow Down" Buttons are used to select the required channel. The channel selected is indicated by the number displayed in the screen of the set. Some sets use digital keypads, similar to the keypad on a calculator, to select the required channel.

**Channel 16 (Distress/Safety/Calling):**

- As a safety feature most modern sets automatically select channel 16, Distress and Safety channel, when first switched on. The set illustrated has a channel 16 selector button. It is usually the bright red button next to the volume control. Pressing this button will automatically select channel to 16 at full power.

**Dual Watch (DW):**

- Channel 16 is the Distress, Safety and Calling channel so it makes sense to listen to this channel at all times; in fact, it is a legal requirement for commercial shipping to do so. However, it is often desirable to be able to listen in to another channel at the same time; for example, Channel 13 in order to hear Bridge to Bridge Calls from other vessels in the area. A dual watch facility allows you to listen to both channels 16 and any one other channel at the same time. To use dual watch, select the channel you wish to listen to, say channel 13, and then press the DW button. The receiver will then switch momentarily from channel 13 to channel 16 and back to 13 again and will repeat this cycle continuously until the dual watch is switched off. If the receiver detects a signal on CH 16 it will lock on to that channel when in dual watch mode.

**High/Low – (H/L):**

- The maximum power output from a VHF set allowed by law is 25 Watts. Most of the time a much lower output is quite sufficient, such as when talking to another boat, which is close by. Virtually all fixed VHF sets can (in theory) transmit at the legal maximum power of 25 Watts and they also have a switch, which reduces the power

output to 1 Watt for close range communications. The power level will be displayed on the screen; 'HI' indicates 25 Watts and 'LO' indicates 1 Watt. Simply pushing the button marked 1/25 or H/L changes the power output. Handheld VHF Radio power settings are typically 1 and 5 Watts.

#### NOTE

*This only affects the power output when transmitting and has no effect on the set's ability to receive signals.*

*HI power should ONLY be used when calling distant stations or in emergency. Using low power is a courtesy, so other distant users are not overwhelmed by your signal. Additionally, this allows users who have an emergency to enable their message to be transmitted successfully.*

#### Transmit (TX):

- TX is 'shorthand' for transmit. When you are transmitting some sets show a little red light to confirm that the set is transmitting. ('RX' is shorthand for receive).

#### Microphone (MIC):

- The lead from the microphone cable is plugged in to the socket marked 'MIC'.

#### Antenna Connection:

- This is the socket into which the aerial lead is connected. On no account press the transmit button on a radio without an aerial connected because serious, or irreparable, damage to the transmitter may result if you do. You may also experience a RF burn which can be painful.

#### GPS Connection:

When connected to a GPS the use of the DSC Channel 70 Alarm button transmits not only the Distress Alert data message but also the position of the vessel.

### Digital Selective Calling

Digital Selective Calling is a radio data paging system that is used to automate distress alerts sent over VHF, MF and HF radio systems. Ch70 is the international DSC Data channel.

The DSC systems utilise digital processing techniques combined with narrower receiver bandwidths. This provides a better signal to noise ratio compared with voice transmissions resulting in increased range of data messages over VHF voice transmissions.

There are several types of DSC equipment available. This course deals only with Class D DSC which is specifically designed for recreational vehicles. Class D equipment includes a dedicated channel 70 receiver so you will never miss a DSC call.

DSC is used to establish initial contact between stations. Rather than just a general indication that the sending station is in distress, the DSC system allows for greater information to be transmitted including:

- Priority of Call – DISTRESS, URGENCY, SAFETY or ROUTINE
- Address – i.e. All Ships or single Ship or station
- Identification of ship in distress using MMSI number (see below)
- Position of ship in distress
- Nature of Distress- Sinking, Fire, Medical etc.

### Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) Number

All DSC equipment is programmed with a unique nine digit identification number, known as a Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI). The MMSI is sent automatically with each and every DSC transmission made.

Each MMSI number consists of a country designation code called Maritime Identification Digits (MID). Normally 3 digits.

### Handheld VHF Radios

Small hand held portable VHF transceivers are readily available; their operation is similar to that of the fixed set explained above including DSC functions if fitted.

Handheld radios such as **Error! Reference source not found.** above have a self-contained, rechargeable battery and an aerial connected directly to the top of the set.

The maximum power output is normally between 1 to 5 Watts; any more power would make no difference to the range of the set due to the low antenna height.

Most hand held radios have the full range of channels, various different methods being used to select them.

Usually the battery pack is removable allowing a fully charged spare to be carried. Some sets have provision for an external microphone to be fitted. Nowadays most hand held radios are waterproof.

Chargers suitable for mains and 12 volt systems should be supplied with the set; never let the batteries remain flat for any length of time or they may not recharge.



FIGURE 11-11 HANDHELD VHF RADIO

A hand held radio is useful on a small boat and makes an ideal back up for the larger boat. In the case of an emergency a hand held radio will allow communications from the life raft or dinghy.

The regulations and licensing requirements for hand held radios are the same as for fixed sets; remember it is the vessel that is licensed, not the radio.

## Radio Operation Code of Practice

### Radio Regulations

Since the global use and management of frequencies and the maritime radio operational procedures require a high level of international cooperation, one of the Principal tasks of the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) is to develop legally binding agreements between sovereign states. These agreements are covered in the ITU Radio Regulations. They include amongst others the following guidance and rulings:

- The international radio language is English.
- Each radio installation (Station) must be licensed and the license displayed and available for inspection.
- Each radio installation must be operated by a qualified operator or under the supervision of a qualified operator.
- **Secrecy of Correspondence** Individuals are legally bound to ensure the secrecy of radio communications and not to improperly divulge the contents or even the existence of correspondence transmitted, received or intercepted.
- The ship's master is responsible for all radio messages sent.
- Stations must obey instructions from any Coast Radio station and once engaged are to be stood down from coastguard prior to closing down radio communications.
- Stations must identify themselves by using the station's name and/or call sign. The vessel's name must be stated on each transmission.
- Before transmitting, a station must first listen to ensure that its transmission will not interfere with communications already in progress.

- Channel 16 the international channel for distress and safety can be used for initial calls and replies required to commence communications between stations, but as soon as contact has been established both stations must transfer immediately to an appropriate working channel/frequency.
- To facilitate reception of Distress calls, all transmissions on Channel 16 should be kept to an absolute minimum.
- Channel 70 DSC (data communications only – NO Voice) is used to establish initial contact between stations for distress, urgency and safety traffic.
- Following an alert by DSC, communications are then carried out by radio.
- Swearing, profanity or indecent language is forbidden.
- It is a criminal offence to transmit a false distress message.

### Language (Pro Words)

English is the chosen language for VHF Radio communications utilizing a specific set of Procedure Words, Phonetic Alphabet and Numerals. The purpose of this is to aid in clear communications even when operators may not speak the same language fluently.

#### Procedure Words

Procedure words are single words which are used to define a specific and unambiguous meaning. They are used internationally for the sake of brevity and clarity.

**ALL AFTER** - Everything that follows word or phrase indicated

**ALL BEFORE** - Everything before word or phrase indicated

**CORRECT** - Confirms that station has correctly repeated message.

**CORRECTION** - I have made an error (followed by I SAY AGAIN .....

**IN FIGURES** - The following figures are to be written as figures (i.e. '2')

**IN LETTERS** - The following numerals are to be written in letters (i.e. 'two')

**I SAY AGAIN** - I repeat (e.g. important words). Used with the pro-words **WORD AFTER, WORD BEFORE, ALL AFTER, ALL BEFORE**

**I SPELL** - I will spell the last word using the phonetic alphabet

**OVER** - Invitation to reply

**OUT** - End of working (NEVER SAY “OVER AND OUT”)

**RADIO CHECK** - Please tell me the strength and clarity of my transmission

**READ BACK** - Receiving station will now repeat the message received

**RECEIVED** - Receipt acknowledged (NOT ‘ROGER’)

**SAY AGAIN** - Repeat your message

**STATION CALLING** - Used when a station is uncertain of the identity of the station calling

**TRAFFIC** - Radio / telephone communications

**THIS IS .....** - This transmission is from the station whose name follows

**WRONG** - The message has been read back incorrectly

**WAIT....MINUTES** - If a station is unable to accept traffic immediately it will indicate how long before it can accept traffic.

**NOTHING HEARD** - When there is no reply from a station being called.

## Phonetic Alphabet

When spelling a word during a message the following pronunciation (Table 2 Phonetic Alphabet below) should be followed.

| TABLE 2 PHONETIC ALPHABET |          |                             |
|---------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| Letter                    | Word     | Pronounced as               |
| A                         | Alpha    | AL FAH                      |
| B                         | Bravo    | BRAH VOH                    |
| C                         | Charlie  | CHAR LEE or SHAR LEE        |
| D                         | Delta    | DELL TAH                    |
| E                         | Echo     | ECK OH                      |
| F                         | Foxtrot  | FOKS TROT                   |
| G                         | Golf     | GOLF                        |
| H                         | Hotel    | HOH TELL                    |
| I                         | India    | IN DEE AH                   |
| J                         | Juliett  | JEW LEE ETT                 |
| K                         | Kilo     | KEY LOH                     |
| L                         | Lima     | LEE MAH                     |
| M                         | Mike     | MIKE                        |
| N                         | November | NO VEM BAH                  |
| O                         | Oscar    | OSS KA                      |
| P                         | Papa     | PAH PAH                     |
| Q                         | Quebec   | KEH BECK                    |
| R                         | Romeo    | ROW ME OH                   |
| S                         | Sierra   | SEE AIR RAH                 |
| T                         | Tango    | TANG GO                     |
| U                         | Uniform  | YOU NEE FORM or OO NEE FORM |
| V                         | Victor   | VIK TAH                     |
| W                         | Whiskey  | WISS KEY                    |
| X                         | X Ray    | ECKS RAY                    |
| Y                         | Yankee   | YANG KEY                    |
| Z                         | Zulu     | ZOO LOO                     |

## Phonetic Numerals

Numbers too have pronunciation for use when transmitting using the pronunciation listed below in Table 3 below:

| TABLE 3 PHONETIC NUMERALS |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| Numeral                   | Spoken as |
| 1                         | WUN       |
| 2                         | TOO       |
| 3                         | TREE      |
| 4                         | FOW ER    |
| 5                         | FIFE      |
| 6                         | SIX       |
| 7                         | SEV EN    |
| 8                         | AIT       |
| 9                         | NIN ER    |
| 0                         | ZERO      |

### NOTE:

*When reading out numbers read phonetically digit by digit:*

*Example: “and I expect to arrive at Miami, - I spell: Mike India Alpha Mike India, (Miami), - at One Five Zero Zero tomorrow afternoon”. (1500).*

*Decimal Numbers should be stated digit by digit with any decimal points stated as “Decimal” NOT “Point”.*

*Examples:*

*23 = TOO, TREE*

*NOT Twenty Three.*

*2.3 = TOO, DECIMAL, TREE*

*NOT 2 Point Three*

## Correct Radio Operation Procedure

To use the VHF, correct procedure should be used to reduce the time of communications to a minimum:

1. Switch the VHF on,
2. Select the required channel (Usually channel 16 is used to initiate contact and then once this is established both stations move to a “working channel” to complete their call).
3. Adjust squelch control.
4. Ensure channel is not in use. Listen for any transmissions to ensure you will not interrupt another station.
5. Plan what you want to say in advance.
6. Press the microphone transmission switch.
7. Speak clearly into the microphone, with the microphone directly in front of the mouth. If you are on deck or on the fly bridge, ensure the microphone is shielded from the wind before you start transmitting.
8. Keep the message as brief as possible.
9. Complete the message with the word “OVER”.
10. Release the transmission switch
11. Wait for a reply. If no reply, wait at least 2 minutes before calling again. General guidelines state that you can call 3 times at 2 minute intervals.

For example, a typical call and move to a working channel might be:

**Caller:** “Misty, Misty, Misty this is this is Motor Yacht Ruma, Motor Yacht Ruma, Motor Yacht Ruma”

**Reply:** “Motor Yacht Ruma, this is Misty.”

**Caller:** “Misty, switch to six-eight.”

**Reply:** “Received, Ruma, switching to six-eight.”  
Both vessels switch to Channel 68 (USA)

**Caller:** “Misty this is Motor Yacht Ruma and then the conversation continues until it is completed with the word “**OUT**”

After the communication has ended, both vessels should return to Channel 16.

If reception conditions are bad, the names of the calling and called boats may be repeated not more than three times. The person on board Misty will normally recognize their own boat quickly but might have difficulty catching the name of the calling boat; for this reason, the

name of the calling boat can be repeated not more than three times. If a boat has a particularly odd or difficult name it may be better to use the boat's call sign rather than her name.

In the event of no reply, wait three minutes before repeating the call again. If the receiving boat is not sure if they are being called, they should wait and see if called again.

*Note:*

*If your station is registered with an MMSI number, it is good practice to include it in your transmission such as in the example below:*

*Radio exchange with MMSI number.*

**Caller;**            *Hello Planet Earth, Planet Earth, Planet Earth  
THIS IS Major Moto, Major Moto, Major Moto  
MMSI Number 123 456 789  
OVER*

## Radio Checks

It is a good idea to perform a radio check before departing safe harbour. Common responses can be "Loud and Clear" or "5 by 5" for a good transmission. For an unclear transmission you may hear "loud, but a lot of static" or "5 by 3".

The response with numbers indicates the quality and loudness of the received signal. It was a system that is relevant to analogue communications but not so relevant to modern digital communications.

The first number 1-5 is an answer to the question *How Do you read me?*  
*With 1 being unreadable and 5 being perfectly clear.*

The second number 1-5 is an answer to the question "how strong is my signal?" With 1 being weak and 5 being very loud.

**NOTE:**

*When using a Handheld, ensure the antenna is in a vertical position for maximum range.*

*The specific sequence for radio transmissions will vary slightly around the globe but all follow the same basic guidelines. It is a good idea to listen to multiple VHF communications in a new area before contacting a local station to avoid unnecessary confusion and / or a delayed response.*

## DSC Routine Calling Procedure / Specific Station Calling

Routine individual calls to other DSC equipped vessels or coastal stations are relatively straightforward.

Before a caller can contact another station using DSC it is essential that the caller use the number (MMSI) of the station being called just as one would do with a radio pager.

On many DSC radios a memory or directory is available to store the name and MMSI of frequently called numbers or favourites.

- The caller selects the channel on which the voice communications are to be carried out. Note that with DSC you select the MMSI number of the station you are calling.
- Then transmit the message digitally on Channel 70.
- The other vessel receives an audible alert indicating the caller's MMSI and proposed channel on which voice communication is desired.
- When acknowledged, some radios will automatically change to the voice channel pre-selected for communication, and voice communication can begin, without having to manually select the working channel.

## Repeating a Routine call

The DSC call will trigger an audible tone at the called DSC radio if it is turned ON.

If an acknowledgement is not received, it may be that the called station is not turned ON, or the operator is not available to answer the call. If ON, most DSC radios will log and display a message indicating a call had been received and an acknowledgement is requested. Some DSC radios also have a built in 5 minute delay before a second attempt may be repeated.

## Group Calling

You can also send an alert to a group of stations requesting communication or to make an announcement. You will need all the individual MMSI numbers to be entered into all the VHF equipment and stored as a group MMSI. This is commonly used if navigating as a group such as a racing regatta.

## 11.8 Distress Messaging

### Emergency Radio Communications – Distress Calls (MAYDAY)

The Procedure words used for a Distress Calls are “MAYDAY” stated 3 times at the beginning of the message.

“MAYDAY MAYDAY MAYDAY”

The Distress signal “MAYDAY”. comes from the French “m’aidez”, which means “help me”.

A Distress signal is the most important transmission that can be made and has priority over all other radio transmissions. Nothing is allowed to interfere with a Distress message.

Due to the importance given to this type of message it’s meaning is defined clearly and this definition must be understood.

#### **Distress defined:**

*“the distress signal indicates that life or vessel (ship, aircraft, or vehicle) is threatened by grave and imminent danger and requests immediate assistance.”*

The key words are GRAVE AND IMMIDENT. If these two conditions are not simultaneously fulfilled the situation does not justify the sending of a distress message. The skipper, or person in charge, decides whether a situation is both grave and imminent. It is accepted practice to use MAYDAY in cases of man overboard.

The distress procedure is in two sections:

- **Distress call** is transmitted on VHF Channel 16, using high power (25watts).
- This is followed by the **Distress message** which must include the vessel’s position, given first, as accurately as possible, either in latitude and longitude or as a bearing and distance FROM a known feature. For example, “position 2miles east from Port Everglades”.

A position as a bearing and distance from a landmark or location might alert someone nearby that they are close to the distressed vessel faster than having to first plot the latitude and longitude on a chart. The bearing should be in the 360° notation from True North and be that of the position FROM the mark.

*Example 1: “my position is two seven zero degrees from Battery Point Lighthouse two decimal eight miles.”*

The nature of the distress is given next so that the rescue services know what assistance is needed. The number of people on board is the next most important piece of information so that the rescuers will know how many people to search for in the event of the crew being unable to remain together. If there is sufficient time, give any other information that may be relevant. Finally, finish with the word “over”.

A useful acronym to remember to help formulate the distress message in the correct order once the Distress call has been transmitted is **MIPDANIO**. The table below shows how the acronym **MIPDANIO** is broken down for simple message formation:

**TABLE 4 MAYDAY MESSAGE STRUCTURE (MIPDANIO)**

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| <b>M</b> | <b>MAYDAY</b>                                     |
| <b>I</b> | <b>IDENTITY (THIS IS) followed by MMSI number</b> |
| <b>P</b> | <b>POSITION (AS ACCURATE AS POSSIBLE)</b>         |
| <b>D</b> | <b>NATURE OF DISTRESS (SINKING, FIRE ETC)</b>     |
| <b>A</b> | <b>ASSISTANCE REQUIRED</b>                        |
| <b>N</b> | <b>NUMBERS ON BOARD</b>                           |
| <b>I</b> | <b>ANY OTHER INFORMATION</b>                      |
| <b>O</b> | <b>OVER</b>                                       |

Figure 12-12 **MAYDAY EXAMPLE 1** give examples of MAYDAY messages:

**FIGURE 11-12 MAYDAY EXAMPLE 1**

**EXAMPLE 1**

Calling All Stations (CH16) :

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>MAYDAY X3<br/>THIS IS<br/>Station Calling X3<br/>MAYDAY X1<br/>Station Calling X1<br/>MMSI (if registered)<br/>Distress Message<br/>Additional Information<br/>OVER</p> | <p>MAYDAY, MAYDAY, MAYDAY<br/>THIS IS<br/>Cayman Sun, Cayman Sun Cayman Sun<br/>MAYDAY, Cayman Sun<br/>Our Position is (19'22.165N, 081'25.240W)<br/>Sinking quickly<br/>We require Immediate Assistance<br/>12 souls aboard<br/>We are a 50foot flat top vessel with blue canopy<br/>All souls are wearing lifejackets and<br/>abandoning the vessel<br/>OVER</p> |
|--|--|



FIGURE 11-13 MAYDAY EXAMPLE 2

**EXAMPLE 2**

**Calling All Stations (CH16) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>MAYDAY X3<br/>THIS IS<br/>Station Calling X3<br/>MAYDAY X1<br/>Station Calling X1<br/>MMSI (if registered)<br/>Distress Message<br/>Additional Information<br/>OVER</p> | <p>MAYDAY, MAYDAY, MAYDAY<br/>THIS IS<br/>Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky Cayman Sky<br/>MAYDAY, Cayman Sky<br/>We are currently moored to Round Rock dive site at the<br/>north end of seven mile beach<br/>Boat will not start<br/>Medical Emergency Onboard, suspected heart attack<br/>We Require Immediate Assistance<br/>22 souls aboard<br/>We are a 50foot Cabin Cruiser, V-hull Dive Vessel<br/>CPR and O2 are currently being administered<br/>OVER</p> |
|--|--|

### DSC Distress Messages

With DSC (Digital Selective Calling) it is accepted practice to send out a DSC Distress Alert message before the standard verbal distress call and message. This allows all stations in range to be aware of the MAYDAY in the time it takes to press and hold the Distress button. The DSC Alert, once acknowledged by a coast station can then be followed by the verbal MAYDAY message. The figure below shows the DSC button behind the small Red Cover



FIGURE 11-14 DSC RED BUTTON

## Making a DSC Distress Call

There are two methods of sending out a DSC Distress call; **Non-Designated** and **Designated**:

- **Non-Designated:** By pressing and holding the special “DISTRESS” button for five seconds, a DSC radio will automatically send a generic Distress call and message to all coast stations and other DSC equipped vessels in the immediate area.
- **Designated:** By pressing and releasing quickly the “DISTRESS” button a selection of 10 designations will appear on the screen. Select one of these items from list below. Press and hold the special “DISTRESS” button for five seconds. The DSC radio will then automatically send a designated Distress call and message to coast stations and other DSC equipped vessels in the immediate area. This method gives instant notification of what assistance might be required.
  - Abandoning Ship
  - Fire or explosion
  - Flooding
  - Collision
  - Grounding
  - Listing
  - Sinking
  - Disabled
  - Adrift
  - Piracy or attack
  - Man Overboard

As all radios might not have DSC, mariners should follow up their DSC transmission with a MAYDAY call and message on VHF Channel 16 to ensure maximum awareness in the immediate vicinity.

To further enhance safety, interfacing a GPS with the DSC is highly recommended to ensure that the vessel’s accurate position is transmitted.

If GPS interface is not possible, the operator is required to input a position manually at frequent intervals (at least every 4 hours).

This automated distress message provides information regarding the identity of the vessel, nature of the distress, and location of the vessel. In addition, it sounds an alarm at other DSC equipped stations.

## Receiving The Distress Call

The International Regulations state: *“The Obligation to accept Distress calls is absolute in the case of every station without distinction, and such messages must be accepted with priority over all other messages, they must be answered and the necessary steps must immediately be taken to give effect to them”.*

A coast station which receives a DSC distress alert will immediately send an acknowledgement. The sending device will then both stop repeating the alert and tune to the designated channel for the distress message to be sent. Ships receiving a distress alert who are outside coast station range or do not receive an acknowledgement are required to relay the distress alert by any means to land.

*Note: that some radios on commercial vessels have the ability to turn off a distress vessel’s DSC Distress call by responding digitally, however, they should not do so unless they are advised to by the Coast Guard or a Rescue Coordination Center.*

*On receiving a Distress alert, do the following:*

- Record time and all information into the ship’s log.
- Continuously record all information heard and inform the most senior member of the crew.
- Maintain a close watch on Channel 16 for a coast station to acknowledge the MAYDAY.
- If no station acknowledges the MAYDAY after 4 minutes and the message is repeated, you MUST transmit a MAYDAY RELAY.

*If no digital acknowledgement is received, then it is likely the shore station will respond by voice as in the figure below.*

**FIGURE 11-15 MAYDAY RESPONSE**

**EXAMPLE 3**

**Responding to a MAYDAY (CH16)**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;">MAYDAY X1<br/>Station In Distress X3<br/>THIS IS<br/>Station Calling X3<br/>RECEIVED MAYDAY X1<br/>OVER</p> | <p style="text-align: center;">MAYDAY<br/>Cayman Sun, Cayman Sun,<br/>Cayman Sun<br/>THIS IS<br/>Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky,<br/>Cayman Sky<br/>RECEIVED MAYDAY<br/>OVER</p> |
|--|--|

To Be immediately followed by communications regarding the responding vessels current location, speed and ETA to the vessel in Distress.

## MAYDAY Relay

A MAYDAY RELAY (Figure 12-16 below) is used when:

- The station in distress is not able to send a message itself.
- A non-verbal Distress signal is observed (See Chapter 9)
- You hear a MAYDAY but are not in a position to render assistance and do not hear an acknowledgement of the message within 4 minutes.

### NOTE:

A Class D VHF radio does not allow you to RELAY a MAYDAY using DSC. Instead you can send out an Urgency Alert which will alert other stations and switch their VHF to Channel 16 in order to receive a verbal MAYDAY RELAY.

**FIGURE 11-16 MAYDAY RELAY**

| <b><i>EXAMPLE 4</i></b>      |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>MAYDAY RELAY (CH16) :</b> |  |
| MAYDAY RELAY X3              | MAYDAY RELAY, MAYDAY RELAY,            |
| THIS IS                      | MAYDAY RELAY                           |
| Station Calling X3           | THIS IS                                |
| MAYDAY X1                    | Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky     |
| Station In Distress X1       | MAYDAY Cayman Sun                      |
| MMSI (if registered)         | Vessel 1 mile west of North West Point |
| Distress Message             | Sinking quickly                        |
| Time (optional)              | Requires Immediate Assistance          |
| OVER                         | 12 souls aboard                        |
|                              | Vessel is a 50foot flat top with       |
|                              | blue canopy                            |
|                              | All souls are wearing lifejackets and  |
|                              | abandoning the vessel                  |
|                              | OVER                                   |

## Radio Silence (See-Lonce MAYDAY)

The station controlling Distress traffic may declare radio silence to avoid any interference with important messages regarding the search and rescue efforts. An example is shown below.

FIGURE 11-17 IMPOSING RADIO SILENCE

**EXAMPLE 5**  
**Imposing Radio Silence (CH16) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>MAYDAY X1<br/>         All Stations X3<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Controlling Station X3<br/>         MAYDAY X1<br/>         Station In Distress X1<br/>         MMSI (if registered)<br/>         SEELONCE MAYDAY<br/>         Time (GMT / UT)<br/>         OUT</p> | <p>MAYDAY<br/>         All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Port Security, Port Security,<br/>         Port Security<br/>         MAYDAY Cayman sun<br/>         SEELONCE MAYDAY<br/>         Time 1345UT<br/>         OUT</p> |
|--|--|

### Restricted Working (Pru-Donce)

The station controlling Distress traffic may end radio silence, but require restricted use of channels due to the possibility of further distress traffic. The figure below shows an example message.

FIGURE 11-18 MAYDAY RESTRICTED WORKING

**EXAMPLE 6**  
**Restricted Working (CH16) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>MAYDAY X1<br/>         All Stations X3<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Controlling Station X3<br/>         MAYDAY X1<br/>         Station In Distress X1<br/>         MMSI (if registered)<br/>         MAYDAY PRUDONCE<br/>         Time (GMT / UT)<br/>         OUT</p> | <p>MAYDAY<br/>         All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Port Security, Port Security,<br/>         Port Security<br/>         MAYDAY Cayman sun<br/>         MAYDAY PRUDONCE<br/>         Time 1410UT<br/>         OUT</p> |
|--|--|

## End Of Radio Silence (See-Lonce Fee-Nee)

The station controlling Distress traffic removes any form of radio silence or restricted working, allowing communications to resume as normal **FIGURE 12-19** shows an example message.

**FIGURE 11-19 END OF RADIO SILENCE**

**EXAMPLE 7**  
**End of Radio Silence (CH16) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>MAYDAY X1<br/>         All Stations X3<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Controlling Station X3<br/>         MAYDAY X1<br/>         Station In Distress X1<br/>         MMSI (if registered)<br/>         SEELONCE FEENEE<br/>         Time (GMT / UT)<br/>         OUT</p> | <p>MAYDAY<br/>         All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br/>         THIS IS<br/>         Port Security, Port Security,<br/>         Port Security<br/>         MAYDAY Cayman sun<br/>         SEELONCE FEENEE<br/>         Time 1500UT<br/>         OUT</p> |
|--|--|

## Cancelling A Distress Call

If a DSC Distress call is transmitted in error, then it should be cancelled using the procedure in **FIGURE 12-20** below:

**FIGURE 11-20 CANCELLING AN ACCIDENTAL DSC DISTRESS MESSAGE**

**Accidental Distress Messages**

If a Distress Alert is sent using DSC allow the transmission to complete the first time. If there is no acknowledgement, switch off the equipment to prevent another transmission then switch the equipment back on and transmit using Channel 16:

All Stations X3  
 THIS IS  
 Station Calling X3  
 MMSI (if registered Position)

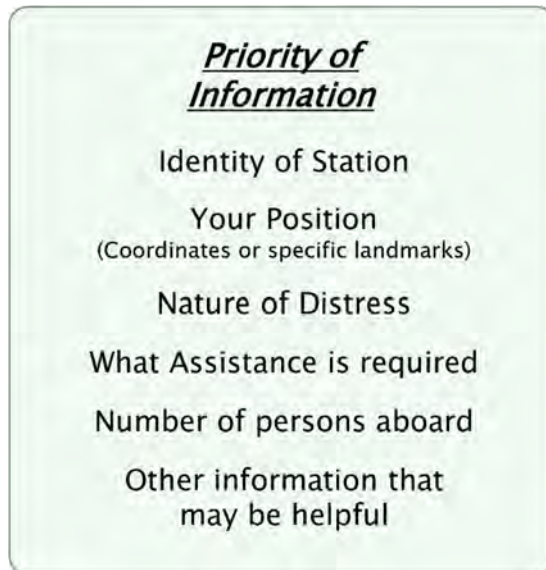
Distress Message sent in error  
 Cancel Distress Alert sent at Time (UT)  
 OUT

## 11.9 Urgency and Safety Messaging

### Urgency Message Protocol

The Procedure words used for an Urgency Message are “PAN-PAN” stated 3 times at the beginning of the message. **FIGURE 12-21** shows the structure of a PAN PAN message:

**FIGURE 11-21 PAN PAN STRUCTURE**



The purpose of an Urgency message is to communicate to all stations in the area that you have a serious problem and require assistance.

It is common for vessels to be unsure if they should send an Urgency message (PAN-PAN) or a Distress message (MAYDAY). The important difference is that a Distress message is defined by “Grave and Imminent Danger requiring immediate assistance”. An Urgency message is anything less than that.

For example, if a vessel has lost all power and is drifting, but is not yet in danger of running aground or colliding with another vessel it would most likely send an Urgency Message. However, if the vessel is drifting toward shore and will run aground shortly, causing severe damage and possibly serious injury to the crew, it would send a Distress message.

Urgency messages are commonly sent to “All Stations” asking for assistance, but it is also common practice to contact a specific station such as the local Coastguard or Search and Rescue service if available.

## Transmitting a DSC Urgency Alert:

If you have a DSC VHF radio, then initiate the Pan Pan message with an Urgency Alert prior to the Urgency message:

- Select the “All Ships” function
- Specify the working channel as 16.
- The Urgency alert will be transmitted on Channel 70 along with your MMSI number
- Wait briefly to allow the other vessels to change to Channel 16 (or specified channel)
- Broadcast your urgency message using standard VHF procedures preceded by the PAN PAN, PAN PAN, PAN PAN prefix.

As in a Distress situation, the Urgency requires cancellation when concluded. The figure below gives an example of an urgency Pan Pan message.

**FIGURE 11-22 EXAMPLE PAN PAN MESSAGE**

**EXAMPLE 1**

**Calling All Stations (CH16) :**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>PAN-PAN X3<br/>All Stations X3<br/>THIS IS<br/>Station Calling X3<br/>MMSI (if registered)<br/>Urgency Message<br/>Additional Information<br/>OVER</p> | <p>PAN-PAN, PAN-PAN, PAN-PAN<br/>All Stations, All Station, All Stations<br/>THIS IS<br/>Cayman Sun, Cayman Sun Cayman Sun<br/>We are 1 mile west of North West Point<br/>We have lost all power and are drifting West<br/>We require a tow back to Georgetown anchorage<br/>10 souls aboard<br/>We are a 50foot flat top vessel with blue canopy<br/>OVER</p> |
|---|--|

## Safety Messages

The Procedure word used for a safety message is “SECURITE” being stated 3 times at the beginning of the message. “SECURITE SECURITE SECURITE”, “Pronounced: SAY\_CURE\_EE\_TAY”

The purpose of a safety message is to communicate urgent information to all stations in the area, typically regarding navigational or meteorological warnings.

These messages are most commonly sent from a shore based station but can also be sent by vessels at sea if there is significant reason to do so.



**FIGURE 11-23 – CAPSIZED VESSEL**

For example, if there is a large submerged object drifting in a heavy traffic area it would be prudent to communicate the sighting with all other vessels in the area to avoid a collision.

### Transmitting a DSC Safety Alert

The Safety signal indicates that a station has an important message to transmit concerning an important navigational aid or a meteorological warning.

To transmit a DSC Safety Alert:

- Select the All Ships function
- Specify a working channel other than 16, such as 06
- The Safety alert will be transmitted on Channel 70
- Wait briefly to allow other vessels to change to the specified channel
- Broadcast your safety message using standard VHF procedures which are preceded as usual by the SECURITE, SECURITE, SECURITE prefix.

The figures below script some samples of SECURITE messages. Follow through each one in turn to ensure you understand the procedure.

FIGURE 11-24 – SAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE

**EXAMPLE 1**

**From a Coast Station (CH16) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SECURITE X3<br>All Stations X3<br>THIS IS<br>Station Calling X3<br>Safety Message<br>OUT | SECURITE, SECURITE, SECURITE<br>All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br>THIS IS<br>Dover Coastguard, Dover Coastguard<br>Dover Coastguard<br>Urgent Weather Warning Listen on<br>Channel 67<br>OUT |
|--|--|

FIGURE 11-25 EXAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE 2

**EXAMPLE 2**

**From a Vessel Sighting a hazard (CH16) :**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| SECURITE X3<br>All Stations X3<br>THIS IS<br>Station Calling X3<br>Safety Message<br>OUT | SECURITE, SECURITE, SECURITE<br>All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br>THIS IS<br>Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky Cayman Sky<br>We have sighted a large submerged tree drifting south<br>from Jackson point terminal<br>OUT |
|--|---|

FIGURE 11-26 EXAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE 3

**EXAMPLE 3**

**From a Vessel operating within narrow waterways (CH09) :**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SECURITE X3<br>All Stations X3<br>THIS IS<br>Station Calling X3<br>Safety Message<br>OUT | SECURITE, SECURITE, SECURITE<br>All Stations, All Stations, All Stations<br>THIS IS<br>Cayman Sky, Cayman Sky Cayman Sky<br>We are Outbound on the new river approaching little<br>Florida, any concerned traffic contact Cayman Sky<br>Standing by on Channel 09<br>OUT |
|--|--|

## 11.10 International Distress Signals

The following signals used or exhibited either together or separately, indicate distress and need of assistance:

- A gun or other explosive signal fired at intervals of about a minute
- A continuous sounding alarm with any fog-signaling apparatus
- Rockets or shells, throwing red stars fired one at a time at short intervals
- A signal made by radiotelegraphy or by any other signaling method consisting of the group . . . - - . . . (SOS) in the Morse code
- A signal sent by radiotelephony consisting of the spoken word “Mayday”
- The International Code Signal of distress indicated by Flags NOVEMBER and CHARLIE.
- A signal consisting of a square flag having above or below it a ball or anything resembling a ball
- Flames on the vessel (as from a burning tar barrel, oil barrel, etc.)
- A rocket parachute flare or a hand flare showing a red light
- A smoke signal giving off orange-colored smoke
- Slowly and repeatedly raising and lowering arms outstretched to each side
- The radiotelegraph alarm signal
- The radiotelephone alarm signal
- Signals transmitted by emergency position-indicating radio beacons
- Approved signals transmitted by radio communication systems, including survival craft radar transponders

The use or exhibition of any of the foregoing signals except for the purpose of indicating distress and need of assistance and the use of other signals which may be confused with any of the above signals is strictly prohibited.

## 11.11 Knowledge Review

1. What triggered the formation of SOLAS?
2. What does GMDSS stand for?
3. Licensing requirements are defined in which document?
4. This IYT SRC course is recognised by which administration?
5. Which Channel is reserved for International Distress, Urgency and Safety?
6. Which Channel is only to be used for digital data transmissions?
7. State the difference between Simplex and Duplex operation.
8. State two types of Vessel categories in regards to GMDSS
9. Name 4 components of GMDSS equipment and briefly explain their purpose.
10. What do the initials EPIRB stand for?
11. Which type of VHF antenna is best suited to a motor boat?
12. Which factors determine the range of a VHF Radio transmission?
13. Describe the correct operation of squelch
14. What does Dual Watch enable the operator to do?
15. Explain the purpose of the DSC Distress button.
16. Explain why having a GPS connected to a DSC is important?
17. Memorize the Phonetic alphabet.
18. Practice by reading out your home address using Phonetic letters and numerals.
19. Prepare a simple radio message containing at least 3 prowords and practice communicating with a friend or colleague.
20. Describe how you can call a specific station using DSC.
21. Define in what circumstances should a MAYDAY message be transmitted.
22. State the two components of a MAYDAY transmission.
23. Prepare a simple MAYDAY message using the MIPDANIO acronym.
24. Describe the advantage of using DSC to initiate a Distress message.
25. Recall 5 of the 10 DSC designations.
26. Prepare a MAYDAY RELAY message for the distress message used in Qu 2 above.
27. Recall what should be done in the event of an accidental distress message transmission.
28. Which message is to be used for Urgent situations that are not yet in grave and imminent danger?
29. Prepare a simple PAN PAN message and practice reading out loud.
30. Describe how a DSC urgency alert would be transmitted.
31. What is the Morse code signal for distress regardless of the means it is sent from?
32. If you have no other means available to raise an alarm other than your person, what could you do?
33. State 5 other international signals of distress.

## Module 12 SMALL POWERBOATS & RIGID INFLATABLE BOATS (RIBs)

### 12.1 Key Objectives



THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO FAMILIARISE THE STUDENT WITH SMALL POWERBOATS AND RIB'S, THE VARIOUS TYPES, ENGINES, GENERAL OPERATING, LAUNCHING, RECOVERY, BEACHING, FAULT FINDING, STABILITY, RECOVERY, TOWING AND CRASH STOPS.

### 12.2 Types – Advantages and Disadvantages

**Small powerboats, sailboats and rigid inflatable boats are commonly called dinghies, but should not be confused with sailing dinghies.** These vessels are designed for short passages between harbours and boats at anchor or taking guests to and from the beach. Designs vary in shape and size.

|                              | ADVANTAGES  | DISADVANTAGES   |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Wood &amp; Fiberglass</b> | Mostly puncture resistant   | When coming alongside another vessel they can scratch the hull. |
| <b>Inflatable</b>            | They will not damage vessels when coming alongside as they are flexible | Can be easily punctured by reefs or sharp objects.              |



FIGURE 12-3 INFLATABLE DINGHY



FIGURE 12-3 RIGID DINGHY



FIGURE 12-3 SMALL POWERBOAT DINGHY

## 12.3 Inboard Motors

Only large dinghies (10 passengers or more) tend to have inboard engines and are very heavy to lift and tend to be expensive to purchase. Due to their weight they are more popular on superyachts which have special “hydraulic cranes” to lift them onto davits on board deck.

## 12.4 Jet Drives

- Jet drive dinghies have the same propulsion system as a jet ski's or personal watercraft. They have no propellers, therefore, they are safer to use around swimmers.
- A disadvantage of jet drives is that they can easily suck in plastic bags, debris or jellyfish which will shut down the motor.



FIGURE 12-4 JET DRIVE

## 12.5 Outboard Motors

The outboard motor is fitted to the transom of the dinghy either by means of a stern bracket and clamps or on larger dinghies by bolts and nuts. There is a tilt mechanism, which may be either manual on small engines or electric on larger ones. This allows the engine to be raised when in shallow water or when launching.

- Most outboard engines are fuelled by petrol/gasoline and may be 2 stroke or 4 stroke. A 2 stroke engine has oil mixed into the petrol/gas tank (newer engines have a separate oil reservoir and pump which mixes the oil and petrol/gas before injection). 4 Stroke engines are petrol/gasoline driven with a separate oil lubrication system.
- 2 stroke engines are generally cheaper than 4 stroke engines. 4 stroke engines generally run smoother, quieter and are more environmentally friendly.



FIGURE 12-5 SINGLE OUTBOARD ENGINE



FIGURE 12-6 MULTIPLE OUTBOARD ENGINES

## 12.6 Steering / Propellers

- Smaller outboards steer the boat by turning the whole motor using the attached tiller, which is fitted with a “twist-grip” type throttle control.
- On RIBs and larger vessels controls, are center console mounted. Steering is normally wheel controlled through hydraulic rams or cables and steers just like a car.



**FIGURE 12-7 STEERING WITH A TILLER**

## 12.7 Ventilation & Cavitation

- If air is drawn onto the blades of a rotating prop it will lose grip, causing a sudden rise in the RPM and loss of speed. This may cause “cavitation”, which is the loss of effective propeller thrust. This phenomenon also has a corrosive effect on the blades. Stainless blades, being sturdier and thinner are less affected.
- One other effect of the propeller is that it produces stern thrust as well as a sideways “paddle-wheel effect” and will swing the bow of the boat to port or starboard depending on the hand of the propeller and whether the boat is moving forwards or astern. This effect is called “prop-walk”. Most single screw motors turn clockwise when viewed from astern.



**FIGURE 12-8 CORRODED PROP DUE TO CAVITATION**

## 12.8 Pre-Launch Procedures

1. Check that the outboard motor is firmly clamped or bolted to the transom and the safety cable/chain is connected to a strong point on board.
2. Stow safety, signaling and PFD equipment, where it will not be in the way but is readily available if needed.
3. Fuel tank should be full and positioned safely to assist in overall stability.

4. Anchor and warp should be checked for utility and ‘bitter end’ for security. (Make sure the end of the anchor line is tied on!)
5. Make sure the drain hole bungs are in place.
6. Take adequate personal supplies of food and water for the duration of the voyage.

### Fueling (see Module 7 – Refueling)

Ensure you know whether you are dealing with a 2 stroke or 4 stroke engine before fueling. There should be no naked flames when fueling, i.e. smoking. Keep a fire extinguisher handy. Avoid overfilling and make sure there is good ventilation.



## 12.9 Engine Starting & Stopping

### Pre-Start Checks:

1. Ensure the fuel tank is full, shake the fuel tank to mix the contents (where applicable).
2. Check fuel lead is connected.
3. Prime the engine by squeezing the primer bulb.
4. Check the engine is firmly secured.
5. Check the tilt mechanism is locked in the ‘run’ position.
6. Ensure the kill cord is connected.
7. Put gear shift into neutral.
8. If the engine is cold, use choke, be careful not to over-choke and flood the engine.

## Starting the Motor

1. Do not start the motor unless you know how to stop it! The stop device is usually a red button that is pushed and held until the motor stops. Can also be a key operated mechanism much like a car ignition or the kill cord. (consult your manual)
2. Check that the motor is securely mounted and water intake is submerged so that cooling water is pumped around the motor.
3. Connect the fuel line, open the breather vent on the fuel tank and pump the bulb to prime the system. (bulb will become firmer)
4. Make sure kill cord/cut out device is in place and gear lever in neutral. Use choke if starting from cold. Gear lever on side has three positions forward, neutral and reverse.
5. With the throttle position on 'start' either pull the starter cord firmly until motor starts or turn ignition key for electronic starting.
6. If motor fails to start after a few pulls open choke and try again. Be careful of back-elbowing an unsuspecting crewmember! As soon as the motor fires, push in the choke and ease the throttle.
7. Check for cooling water circulation. Do not engage gears at high RPM.



**FIGURE 12-9 KILL CORD**



**FIGURE 12-10 PRIMER BULB**



**FIGURE 12-11 THROTTLE CONTROL**

## 12.10 Fault Finding

Sometimes an outboard motor will not start for simple reasons, however, with larger and more modern engines utilizing electronics all but the very simplest problems will need to be dealt with by a qualified mechanic.

Common reasons for an outboard not to start are:

| POSSIBLE CAUSE      | WHAT TO CHECK   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>No Fuel Flow</b> | Check for fuel in the tank  |
|                     | Check fuel line is properly connected and primed. Some tanks have a rubber hand squeeze pump in the fuel line for priming the engine. |
|                     | Clean fuel filter in power head.  |
| <b>Kill Cord</b>    | Make sure is connected  |
|                     | Not turning over?, Check battery, battery switch and all electrical connections.  |
|                     | Check fuses.  |
|                     | Remove and check spark plugs.   |

## 12.11 Dinghy Stability and Handling

- Crew or passengers must take great care when entering or leaving a dinghy and be aware that their weight and position in the vessel affects its stability.
- Before casting off from the yacht or the dock the helmsman should make sure that he is satisfied with the distribution of weight in the dinghy both in the port to starboard plane and also fore and aft as this will affect stability.
- Weight distribution may be changed according to sea conditions and speed, especially if the dinghy is capable of getting up on the 'plane', which may require weight forward to assist.
- Before departure, all passengers should be aware of the location of all lifejackets (if they are not wearing them) and all safety equipment and how to use it.



**FIGURE 12-12 DINGHY STABILITY / ENSURE BALANCE OF PASSENGERS**

- A safety briefing should be conducted for all passengers including what to do in the event of an emergency.
- Once in the dinghy, passengers should sit down and hold on.
- To preserve stability, passengers and any other items should be placed to spread the load evenly, both from side to side and fore and aft. *For example, if there are four passengers and the crewmember in charge of the dinghy, traditionally known as “the helmsman” then they should sit two and two evenly with the helmsman at the stern to operate the outboard and steer.*
- Being low in the water, the visibility for the helmsman is not good and passengers must take care not to obscure his vision.
- If the helmsman is satisfied with the trim, he/she should ensure that all crewmembers or passengers are seated and holding on before casting off.
- Acceleration should be applied smoothly and evenly and the speed adjusted to the conditions and to safety requirements.
- The helmsman should always ensure that proper control of the vessel is maintained at all times. On larger dinghies/RIBs (with fixed equipment) it is advisable to keep one hand on the wheel and the other on the throttle at all times.
- When throttling back to come off the plane this should be done smoothly to ensure that the stability of the dinghy is not compromised.
- The boat should be allowed to slow before going into neutral and should never be taken from full speed ahead to going astern.

## 12.12 Beaching

- If there are big breakers or a deep swell, do not try to beach the vessel. It can be an unnerving and dangerous experience. It is relatively easy in calm seas with little swell or breaking waves near the beach.
- The type of shoreline will also have to be taken into account, smooth sand will present few problems, however, rocky coastlines will need to be treated with respect to avoid puncturing the boat.
- Approach with controlled speed, shift weight aft to raise the bow. Have someone at the bow looking out for rocks/coral heads. When getting close to the beach, tilt your outboard up 1/3 of the way, then kill the engine and coast onto the beach.

- If the approach is wrong and the desired effect is not achieved one of the crew will have to jump in the water to pull the dinghy ashore. Before leaving the beach, pull the dinghy above the water line and tie it to a tree, a rock or anchor it on the beach as shown.
- When launching it will be necessary to carry/drag it down the beach until it is floating. Initially one may have to row or paddle until the water is deep enough to lower the outboard back to its normal operating position and start the motor.



*Approach with controlled speed, someone at bow as lookout, tilt outboard engine up 1/3*



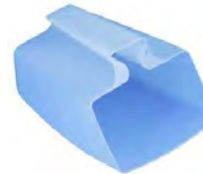
*Kill engine and coast to beach, crewmember to pull line & anchor/boat to beach, secure anchor onto beach.*

**FIGURE 12-13 BEACHING SEQUENCE**

## 12.13 Dinghy Equipment

This is very dependent on the size and intended use of the dinghy, ideally it should have the following:

- Lifejackets
- Flashlight, this will be also used at night as a navigation light. If the dinghy is less than 7m (20') in length it is not required to have the standard navigation lights. (Check local regulations)
- Sufficient oars or paddles, in addition to an outboard motor, if fitted.
- A bailer.
- Compass
- A painter (bowline) of sufficient length.
- Whistle or equivalent sound signal.
- A first aid kit.
- A boat hook.
- A knife or small hatchet.
- A portable fire extinguisher.
- Flares
- Anchor and line.
- VHF radio, most conveniently a hand-held.
- GPS
- Tool box
- Binoculars



## 12.14 Trailer Launch

### Safety/Preparation

- Driving and reversing a trailer should be practiced in a safe and open environment until the operator feels comfortable enough to attempt a slip-launch under the critical gaze of fellow boaters!
- Maneuver the trailer to launch position. How far the trailer is reversed into the water depends on the size/weight of the vessel, the gradient and the availability of helping hands.
- The rear of the boat needs to float so that it can be pushed or driven off the trailer. If possible, keep car wheels out of the water.
- On a shallow gradient lower the trailer jockey wheel and use an extension bar or a length of rope attached between the tow ball and the trailer. This will enable the load to be reversed further into the water. Make sure the winch cable is attached to the boat while carrying out this maneuver. Slippery ramps can cause the towing vehicle to slide into the water!
- To prolong their life, allow time for trailer bearings to cool down before immersing in water.
- Make sure the vessel's bungs are in place and there is no damage to hull during transit.
- Disconnect and remove trailer lights, boat cover etc. If the ramp is steep, the boat may enter the water rapidly, be prepared, and keep control of the hand winch at all times.
- Whether using power or hand winch... launch slowly!
- Painter should be attached to prevent boat floating away when launched. Inspect launch mechanism and winch cable for wear and fraying.
- Protective footwear is recommended; there may well be sharp objects, broken glass, stones etc. on ramp. Expect ramp to be slippery, especially at low tide.
- Ensure that the slipway/launch-point selected is suitable and appropriate to accommodate your trailer and vessel and make sure you have everything you need on board prior to launching. It may be easier to stow prior to launching.



FIGURE 12-14 BUNG PLUG

- Check in advance that there is enough water for launch and recovery at convenient times. Are conditions safe for launching? Strong winds, especially on-shore winds can make launching hazardous.



**FIGURE 12-15 TRAILER WINCH**



**FIGURE 12-16 TRAILER LAUNCH SEQUENCE**

## 12.15 Trailer Recovery

- The preferred method of recovery is to drive the boat on to the pre-positioned trailer. The alternative is to slip over the side of the boat in shallow water and guide the boat gently over the rollers. Hook the cable to the D-ring winch point and crank up.
- On approach, tilt the engine up so as not to ground the propeller. The trailer should be partially submerged to allow the boat to be driven or manually guided and floated on for easy recovery.

- Use fresh water to flush the engine cooling system (see owner’s manual) and wash the boat and trailer especially after use in salt water as corrosion will occur.
- Great care must be taken when around trailers, winches and hitches and ramps. All launch and recovery operations should be carried out slowly, safely and under control. Beware of rapidly spinning winch handles they can break bones!
- Reconnect trailer lights and check function, replace cover and make fast. Remove loose items, which may be lost in transit. Before commencing tow make sure boat is secure in its cradle and the hitch is connected according to manufacturer’s recommendations.

## 12.16 Launching Procedures

- Rigid dinghies are often carried on davits at the stern of the vessel from where they may be lowered to the water.
- If the dinghy has been stowed on deck it may require the use of a halyard to help lift it over the lifelines and down into the water, this should be done before attaching the outboard motor.
- Make sure the dinghy’s painter is attached to the yacht before lowering it over the side. (a bow line on a small dinghy is called the “painter”. Larger yachts will have crane operated launching facilities.
- One crewman should then get in the dinghy and make it secure alongside the yacht, the outboard motor can then be passed down, again, use a halyard to help lift it over the lifelines and down into the dinghy. It can then be located on the transom, the fuel tank passed down and connected to the motor.
- Fuel for outboard engines should be treated with extreme care on a yacht, store the dinghy fuel on deck or in a separate vented locker.



**FIGURE 12-17 CRANE LAUNCH**



**FIGURE 12-18 HALYARD LAUNCH**



**FIGURE 12-19 STERN LAUNCH**

## 12.17 Emergency / Crash Stops

A crash stop should only be used in an emergency such as a man overboard situation. Always warn the crew prior to performing a crash stop.

**There are two methods:**

1. Throttle back to neutral and turn the boat to either port or starboard and present the beam of the boat to the wake.
2. Throttle back to neutral while watching the stern carefully, throttle ahead as the wake arrives.

## 12.18 Towing

- Picking up a tow requires care and communication. Picking up the tow is usually best achieved by crossing ahead of the vessel to be towed depending on what proves most practical. Weather conditions, manpower and maneuverability of the boat will also dictate the manner of the transfer.
- When towing, bear in mind that the tow will have little or no steerage, therefore all turns should be gentle. You can easily turn inside of your tow, colliding with it or picking up the towline in your propeller.
- When bringing the towed craft alongside a rescue vessel, quay wall, etc. remember that the tow cannot give a kick astern to stop, so use wind and tide to best effect.

## Towing Procedure

1. Attach towline to vessel to be towed.
2. Approach 90 degrees or possibly 45 degrees.
3. Tow attached to strong point on tow boat – ideally a bridle.
4. Set scope of towline.
5. In enclosed waters, tow should be kept as short as possible.
6. In open waters tow should be lengthened according to sea conditions.
7. Commence gently taking up the strain.
8. Crewman watches tow at all times.
9. Towed vessel weight should be kept aft and steered if rudder is available.

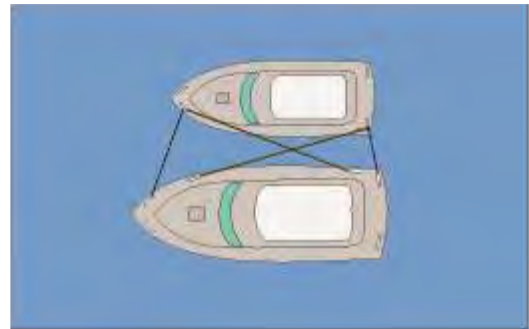
*At night the correct navigation lights should be displayed for towing operations.*

## Towing Alongside

The purpose of a side tow is to maneuver the disabled boat in confined areas.

Pre-rigging the line for the side tow (this is done by a second crewman while the disabled boat is in stern tow).

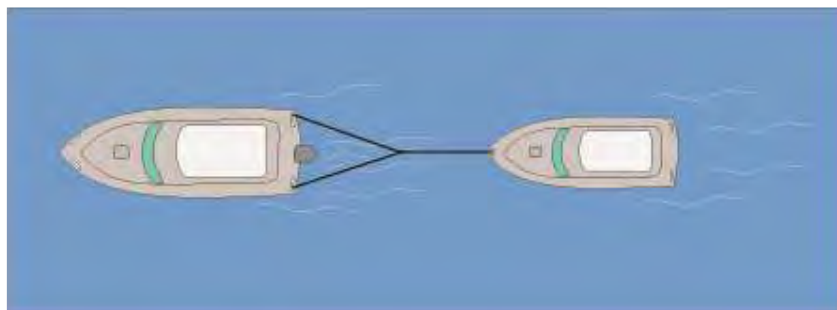
1. Attach bowline to bow and sternline to stern of disabled boat
2. Attach springlines fore and aft to disabled boat
3. Manoeuvre slowly and cautiously to destination.



**FIGURE 12-20 TOWING ALONGSIDE**

## Bridle Towing

In the case of outboard motors, it is always best to rig a “bridle” for towing. This will prevent the towing vessel from being pulled from side to side by the uneven distribution of the weight of the vessel being towed. To rig a bridle, attach a short line from both aft cleats as shown. The towing line is then attached to the center of the bridle thus reducing the probability of catching the towing line in the propeller.



**FIGURE 12-21 BRIDLE TOWING**

## 12.19 Knowledge Review

1. Explain the different types of dinghy and their advantages and disadvantages.
2. Explain the different types of motors and generally how they work.
3. Explain ventilation, cavitation, steering and propellers.
4. Know how to start and stop the engine and all the checks that must be made.
5. Understand stability on a dinghy.
6. Explain how to beach a dinghy.
7. Explain towing procedures and types of towing manoeuvres.
8. Explain how to launch from a trailer and recover using a trailer.
9. Explain how to crash stop.

## Module 13 BOAT HANDLING UNDER POWER

### 13.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO GET THE STUDENT TO UNDERSTAND HOW TO HANDLE A BOAT WHILE UNDERWAY TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE EFFECTS OF WIND, TIDE AND CURRENTS. DEPARTURE FROM A DOCK, AND ARRIVING AT A DOCK.

- ***It is very important to understand the limitations of your vessels maneuvering ability whether under sail or power, so make sure to practice.***
- A sailing vessel under the power of its auxiliary engine behaves fundamentally the same as a single engine power vessel. There are some differences in how the vessel responds due mainly to the effect of the deeper keel on sailing yachts compared to most power vessels.
- Most propellers on yachts are "right hand" that is to say, they turn clockwise when seen from astern. This will have the effect of swinging the stern to starboard and the bow to port when going ahead. When going astern the opposite happens. The stern swings to port and the bow to starboard. Additionally, when going astern the flow of water over the rudder created by the propeller is less efficient and thus will affect the yachts responsiveness to the helm this also means that the vessel will be more susceptible to the "paddle-wheel" or "transverse thrust" effect when going astern.

### 13.2 The Effects of Wind, Tide and Current

- The effects of wind, tide and current will influence power driven vessels. Many cabin cruisers have substantial superstructures, and shallow draughts meaning little lateral resistance under the water.
- Wind pressure on these can act as virtual sails and cause the yacht to be blown off course. The same effect can happen to sailing yachts with their sails completely furled there is still pressure on the rig that can push the yacht off course.
- If going upwind the wind can push on the bow of the vessel and cause it to change direction. Likewise, the flow of the tide and currents will need to be considered when holding a course, both in terms of the leeway caused and also the effect on the vessel's speed through the water.

- Another point to be aware of is that a vessel has no brakes, its momentum can carry it quite a long way. The only way to slow it down is to engage reverse if one is going forward and vice versa.
- When maneuvering a vessel under power particularly in confined spaces we need to keep all of the above in mind. For example, assuming a right hand propeller, it is best to make a right hand turn to maximize the effect of the propeller.

### 13.3 Alongside



FIGURE 13-1 FAIRLEAD & CLEATS

### Deck Equipment & Fittings

**Docking Lines (revision)** - required to secure a vessel properly are:

- Bow line. A line that is lead forward from the bow of the boat.
- Stern line. A line that is lead aft from the stern of the boat.
- Spring lines. One line leads from the bow of the vessel aft of midships to the dock and one from the stern of the vessel lead forward of midships to the dock. These stop the boat moving fore and aft and should be taut.

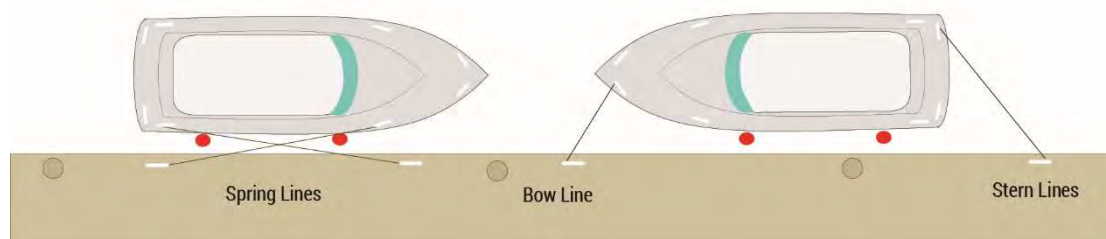
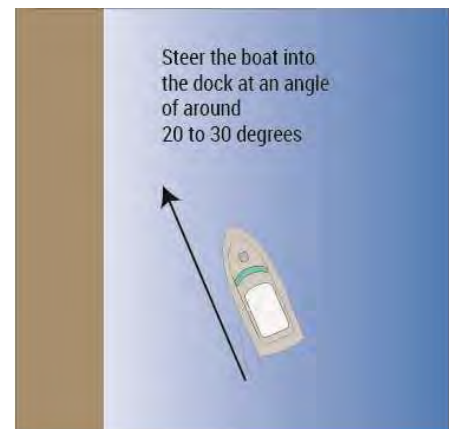


FIGURE 13-2 DOCKING DIAGRAM / CLEATS ON DOCK AND BOAT

## 13.4 Coming Alongside (wharf or dock)

1. Steer the boat into the dock at an angle of around 20 to 30 degrees with just sufficient way on the vessel to have good control.
2. One should approach upwind if possible. Coming in to a moored or anchored boat should be relatively easy as the vessel will probably be lying "head to wind".
3. When the bow is close to the wharf put the engine in neutral and then reverse, as this is done, it will have the twofold effect of stopping the boat and the reverse thrust will tuck the stern in neatly alongside.
4. Have your mooring line prepared in advance and crewmember designated to step ashore and tie up the vessel.
5. Where there are mooring lines attached to the dock it may be easier to have the crewmembers who step on to the dock pass those lines to people on deck.

Small boats are quite susceptible to the effect of wind and current and will generally make a fair amount of leeway, careful course and speed corrections may have to be made by the coxswain to counter leeway effects.



**FIGURE 13-3 COMING ALONGSIDE A DOCK**

## Arrival at a Dock

### Always have lines and fenders prepared.

In situation **A**, the vessel is positioned in the gap by nosing into the space and allowing the wind to push the vessel alongside.

In situation **B**, with the vessel being blown off the dock, approach the dock bow first, attach a bowline and with the rudder/engine to port, gently go astern which will gradually pull the stern into the dock.

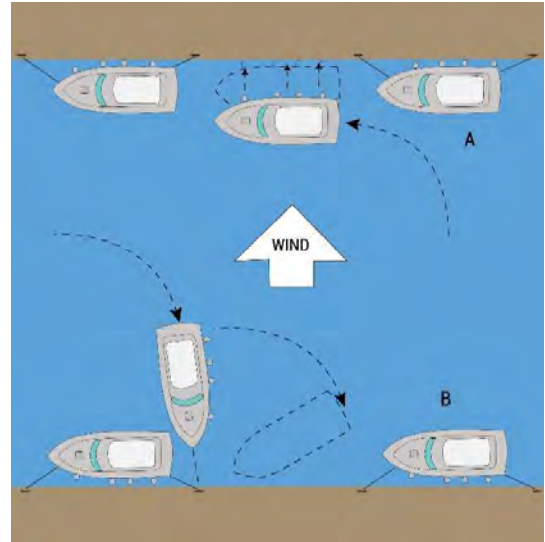


FIGURE 13-4 ARRIVAL AT DOCK

## 13.5 Handling Skills

### Departure from Dock

Before departing a dock make sure the engine is running smoothly. In this instance with a cross wind, the vessel must be given enough power to exit the dock quickly. (Boat A), or else the wind will blow the boat on to the dock (Boat B). Remove the spring lines, slip bow and stern lines together.

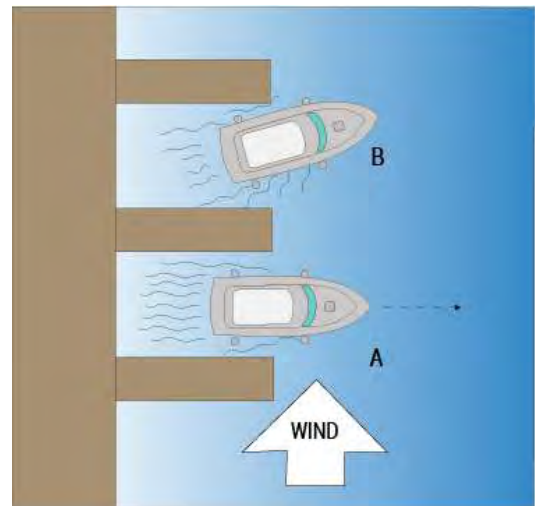


FIGURE 13-5 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH CROSSWIND

With a wind blowing the vessel onto the dock, slip all lines except the forward spring, power gently ahead to kick the stern out. Slip the spring and motor astern into the channel.

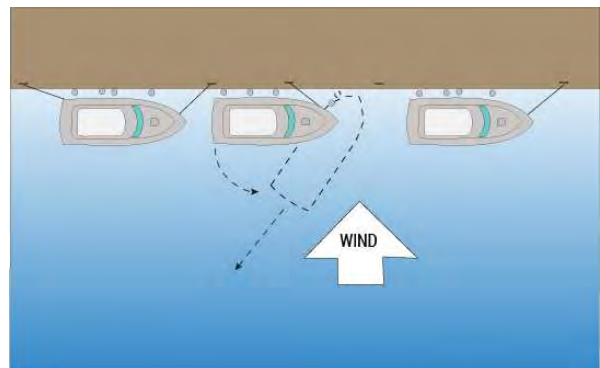
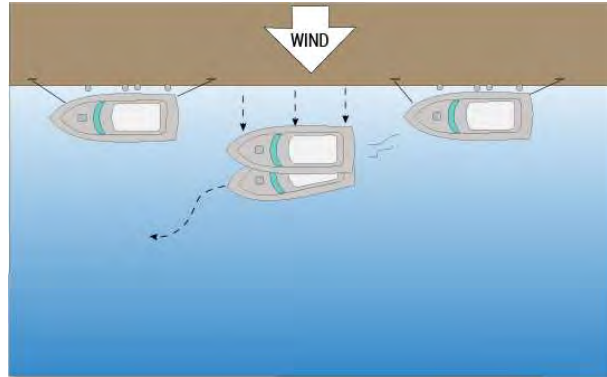


FIGURE 13-6 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH WIND BLOWING ONTO DOCK

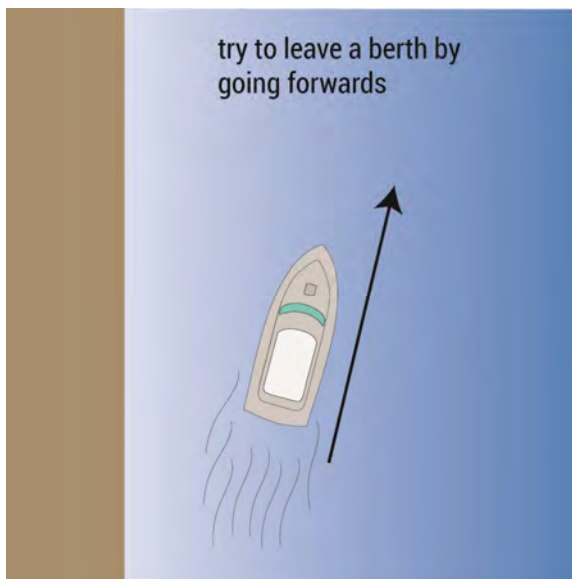
With the wind blowing the vessel off the dock, slip all lines except the stern line. The bow will be blown out into the channel. When clear, the stern line can be slipped.



**FIGURE 13-7 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH WIND BLOWING OFF DOCK**

### 13.6 Clearing (wharf or dock)

- Whenever possible you should try to leave a berth by going forwards though this will always be dependent on the wind and current at the time.
- The order in which you untie your mooring lines is dependent on the wind and current. If the wind is coming from ahead or off the dock hold the yacht on the after spring line to stop her drifting back onto any vessel astern, the wind will take the bow out and once clear you can leave the dock.
- Conversely if the wind or current is astern you will swing out on the bow spring until the stern is clear and then you can go astern to clear the berth.



**FIGURE 13-8 CLEARING A DOCK**

## 13.7 Multiple Engines

- If a boat is fitted with multiple engines one will be less concerned with the “paddle wheel” effect. This is because the propellers will be arranged so they turn in opposite directions. One will not need to use the wheels as much and one can steer the vessel by using the balance between the engines. The vessel can often be turned in its own length by having one engine ahead and the other astern.
- When running under normal operating conditions it is important to ensure that the thrust from the engines is balanced. This will produce a very neutral helm where very little or no rudder angle is required to keep the vessel on course. This has the added benefit of minimizing friction and giving the best fuel consumption. The best way to ensure engine balance is to run the engines at the exact same RPM (revolutions per minute).
- Power vessels are often fitted with “trim tabs”. These flaps on the stern of the boat are designed to help the boat run level. As increasing amounts of power are fed into the vessel the bow will rise. This is necessary so that the vessel will eventually start to plane, that is: to skim on the surface of the water rather than pushing through it. However, the vessel can become unstable with the bow riding high so by applying the trim tabs, the bow will be forced down and the vessel will run flat on the water. The trim tabs can also be adjusted to keep the vessel level in the port / starboard plane as well.
- When slowing a vessel, coming down off the plane, it should be done gradually otherwise the vessels stern wave which can be traveling faster than the boat, will rise up and swamp the stern. If the vessel must be stopped quickly in an emergency, turn the boat through ninety degrees as the power is cut, the motion will be unpleasant but at least the risk of taking on water and being swamped will be minimized.



FIGURE 13-9 TRIM TAB

## 13.8 Vessel Handling Skills

### Traveling at Speed (Planing)

- Always prepare your crew for any rapid changes of speed or direction.
- Make a full appraisal of the surrounding area and be alert for waves and wash generated by other vessels as well as yours.
- Keep a good lookout at all times.



**FIGURE 13-10 PLANING BOAT**

Most of the power output of the engine will be needed to get the boat on “the plane”. This is the most efficient use of hull design. When ‘on the plane’ ease back on the throttle to conserve fuel. Speed must be monitored constantly and adjusted to the proximity of traffic and conditions. A displacement or semi-displacement hull will not be able to plane, as top speed is limited by waterline length and hull design.

- Do not try to plane the boat in rough seas.
- Make good use of ‘trim tabs’ if fitted to achieve efficiency in speed and fuel consumption.
- Do not engage in reckless manoeuvres.
- Keep a good lookout and be mindful of submerged objects.

A small wash may be safely crossed as long as all on board are holding on. A large wash needs some careful consideration. Slow down to a speed that allows for control to raise the bow and cross the wash at an angle of about 45 degrees. Adjust speed through wash to keep bow up. Resume safe operation once through the wash.

### High Speed Turns

- Make sure the crew are aware of your intentions, have plenty of space and good throttle control.
- Look out for wash, traffic and possible submerged obstructions. Do not turn so sharply that the prop starts to ventilate (suck in air) and lose grip.
- Careful throttle management and situational awareness is paramount.

- Trim down before starting to turn to maintain grip on the water.
- Do not exceed design limitations of the hull or motor(s).

## Heavy Weather Operations

- It is important to match your speed to sea conditions; this often means slowing down.
- Generally speaking, waves are generated by wind and tend to come from the same direction. (there are important exceptions to this e.g. wind against tide/current which can make for a 'bumpy' ride)
- Driving upwind/upwave usually means 'trim' down with controlled power, ease throttle at the top of the wave to ensure you do not 'drop off' the wave. Gently accelerate down the back of the wave speeding up sufficiently to raise the bow as the trough is reached. Drive up the wave towards the next crest.
- Meet each wave as it comes, where possible avoid steep and breaking waves.
- Wavelength determines the level of speed and comfort. In short seas, the helmsman has little time to react to adjust the throttle so it may be easier to drive at an angle of 30–45 degrees to the wave front. This method may allow you to increase speed using a zig-zag course towards your destination.
- Large, breaking beam seas can potentially capsize a small boat. Steer a course between breakers and if you are caught on the downwind side of a breaker steer and power over the crest or turn away and try to outrun the breaker.
- Following seas can be most dangerous to small vessels. If a breaking wave catches the stern the confused water will adversely affect the props ability to grip the water. The following wave then will turn the vessel abeam thereby making capsize almost inevitable.
- Match the vessel speed to the waves to avoid being overrun. If the vessel is going too fast down the face of a wave, there is a danger of burying the bow causing the vessel to slow and pivot the vessel abeam causing it to be swamped or to capsize. Sometimes, if surfing down a wave it may be prudent to put the engines in reverse to avoid burying the bow into the oncoming wave.



- Sandbar/Harbour Bar Large following seas at restricted/shallow entrances should be avoided. As the water shoals the waves get higher and confused, breaking more violently.

## 13.9 Engine failure

**Engine failure or multiple engine failure can lead to very hazardous situations at sea. The most common causes are insufficient fuel or contaminated fuel.** If such an event occurs, it is essential to be equipped with a cellphone, VHF or SSB radio (depending on your distance offshore) in order to call for assistance. You should also have your signalling devices ready if you need to attract the attention of other boaters. It is imperative that engines are serviced and maintained regularly to avoid engine failure. Thorough checks of fuel levels, oil levels and filter cleanliness are essential. A comprehensive toolbox should be carried at all times to repair any faults should they arise.

## 13.10 Single engine handling

It is important that boats fitted with a single engine are regularly serviced and maintained to avoid engine failure. Vessels with one engine do not have the same handling characteristics of multi-engines so due care and attention should be taken when docking or berthing.

## 13.11 Picking up mooring buoy

Mooring is tying up to an object in the water, such as a mooring buoy.

Approach mooring buoy slowly and if possible, into the wind, waves or current, whichever is strongest, when close, select reverse gently to stall forward momentum. Select neutral, pick up mooring painter and secure to the deck. When leaving, use reverse to back off the buoy to keep propeller away from the line. REMEMBER that a boat has no brakes. Many authorities strongly discourage the use of anchors for environmental reasons and will provide 'mooring fields' for use by small craft.



## 13.12 Knowledge Review

1. Describe how tide and current affect a vessel when docking?
2. Describe the procedure for coming alongside a dock or wharf
3. Describe the procedure for departing a dock or wharf
4. Describe how you would dock – with the wind
5. Describe how you would dock – against the wind
6. Describe the affect that multiple engines have on a vessel
7. What are “trim tabs?”
8. Describe how to get a vessel “up on a plane”
9. What precautions would you take during high speed turns?
10. Describe 6 conditions to take into considerations during heavy weather preparations.
11. What would you do in the event of engine failure?
12. Describe the procedure for picking up a mooring ball

## Module 14 BASIC METEOROLOGY

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO UNDERSTAND WEATHER PATTERNS, SEA AND LAND BREEZES, KATABATIC AND ANABATIC WINDS, THE BEAUFORT SCALE, CLOUD TYPES, TROPICAL REVOLVING STORMS, LIGHTENING, THUNDERSTORMS AND WHAT TO DO IN THE EVENT OF ADVERSE WEATHER.

### 14.1 Key Objectives

Meteorology is the study of weather, which is caused by the movement or transfer of energy occurring with the movement of air in the atmosphere. Meteorology is a vast and very complex subject; it is worth bearing in mind that some of the most powerful computers in the world are the ones designed to assist in the forecasting of weather, such is the complexity and difficulty involved.

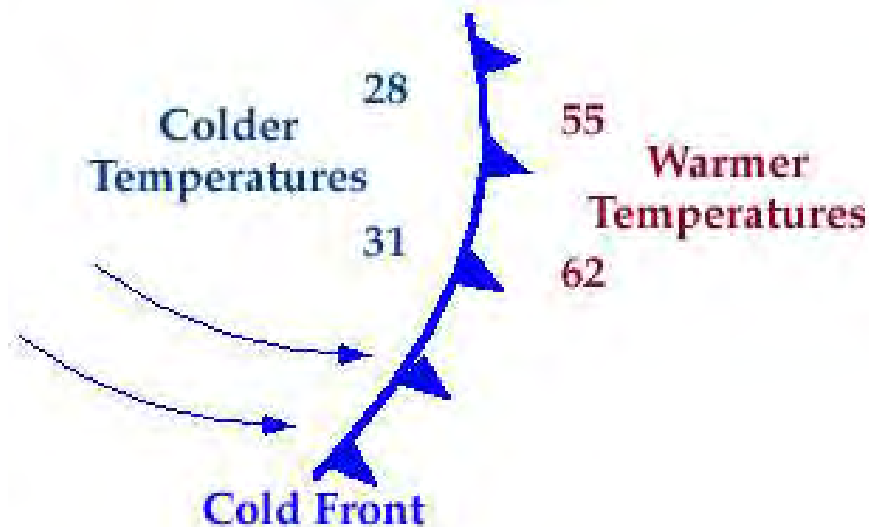


FIGURE 14-1 COLD FRONT DIAGRAM -FAHRENHEIT

**It is of great importance to all who venture out on the water to obtain a weather forecast for the duration of the proposed trip.** This information you need is important: wind speed, direction and strength, visibility, heavy rain, fog, smoke, mist, wave height, temperature and sun strength are just a few.

## 14.2 Sources of Weather Information

- Meteorologists obtain information from a wide range of different sources including dedicated weather satellites, weather balloons, ocean weather ships, aeroplanes, commercial shipping, weather buoys, manned and unmanned weather stations, radar installations, and so on.
- Yachtsmen and women are interested principally in wind strength and wind direction as these are usually the two single factors which have the most effect on anyone taking a small boat to sea, both from the point of view of safety and of enjoyment.
- There are many sources of weather information available to the mariner, the most useful sources for mariners will be those from maritime organisations, for example the Coastguard or a Port Authority or directly from the government meteorological office.
- Once the forecast has been received the decision to go or not will have to be made. If in doubt error on the side of caution and postpone the trip.
- Having decided to make the passage, updates can be received over the radio from Coastguard offices or Marine radio offices or via weather fax. You should plan to receive these updates on a regular basis throughout the passage, and at least twice daily.
- One of the most important aspects of weather is your personal observation based on your geographic position and the conditions that apply on the day. It is important to visually monitor local weather systems on a constant basis.

## 14.3 Weather Patterns

### Air Masses

- Our weather is formed mainly in the layer of the atmosphere that is called the troposphere, the first 11 miles.
- It is driven by the energy of the sun and the rotation of the Earth. The sun heats up the surface at different rates causing the warmer air to rise above its cooler counterparts.
- As this air rises, it is pushed outward by more air rising beneath it. Generally, these air masses will rise in the equatorial regions and drift towards the poles.

- The rotation of the Earth creates what is called the Coriolis Effect, this is what causes the circular movement in weather systems. As the Earth rotates on its axis, the surface will be moving at different rates.

Due to the earth's rotation, low pressure systems in the Northern Hemisphere rotate in a counter clockwise direction and in a clockwise direction in the Southern Hemisphere. Similarly, high pressure systems in the Northern Hemisphere rotate in a clockwise direction and in a counter clockwise direction in the Southern Hemisphere.

## 14.4 Meteorology Information Sources

- When we use the term 'weather' we mean the atmospheric conditions existing at a specific place over a relatively short period of time. The conditions of general interest to us normally are whether it is warm or cold, raining or dry, sunny or cloudy, foggy or clear, windy or calm and so on
- When cruising away from coastal waters (crossing an Ocean or such) a Single Side Band (SSB) MF/ HF radio receiver is required but sometimes it can be difficult to catch all the forecast information so a small handheld voice recorder is a great help to replay the forecast if needed.

There are many sources of weather information available to the mariner. Some are very general and may not give the information that is important when at sea. The list below is not complete and depending on your location, other sources may be available.

- Internet
- Radio
- Newspapers
- Television
- Marina Offices
- Port Authority Offices
- Coastguard Organisations
- Telephone Company recorded forecasts
- Weather fax
- Meteorological Office

## 14.5 Monitoring the Forecast

It is very important to monitor the weather forecast on a regular basis because if bad weather is forthcoming, it may be necessary to alter your trip and seek shelter in a safe anchorage or marina. Forecasts should be monitored throughout the trip and most importantly, constant personal observation of the weather signs must be made to determine whether an alternative

plan needs to be initiated. Signs of change include changes in cloud formation, shift in wind direction and speed, sudden change of atmospheric pressure, changes in visibility etc. Always listen out for small craft warnings on the VHF radio.

### 14.6 Fronts

A front is the term used to describe the dividing line between two air masses. An approaching front will often signal its arrival with a variety of discernable signs, the most visible of these will be a change in cloud formations. Other signs will be changing wind direction / strength, visibility and temperature changes. Air pressure is measured differently in various countries. However, meteorologists use millibars so it is important to become familiar with this system.

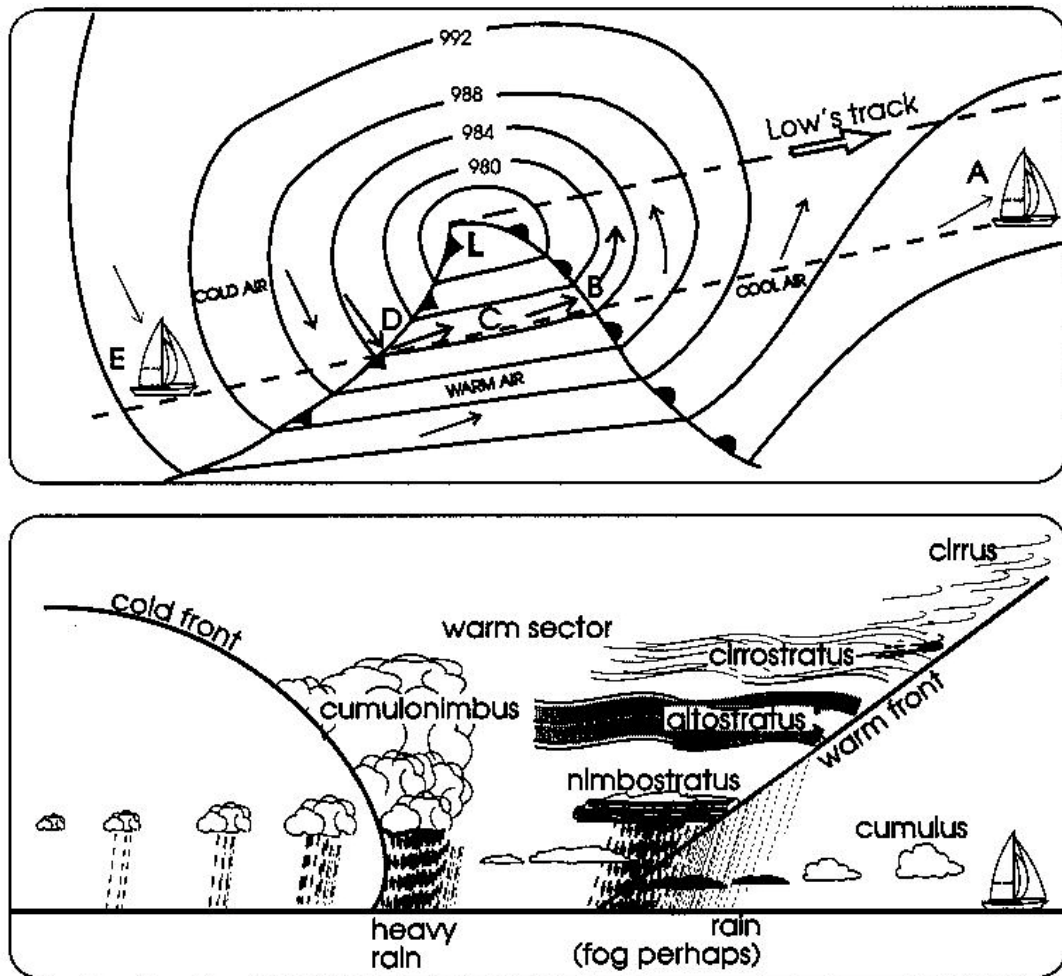
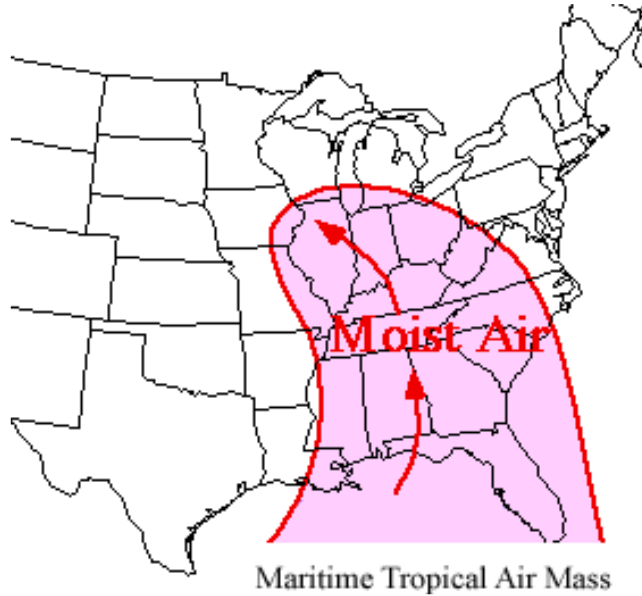


FIGURE 14-2 FRONTS COLLIDING

### Warm Front

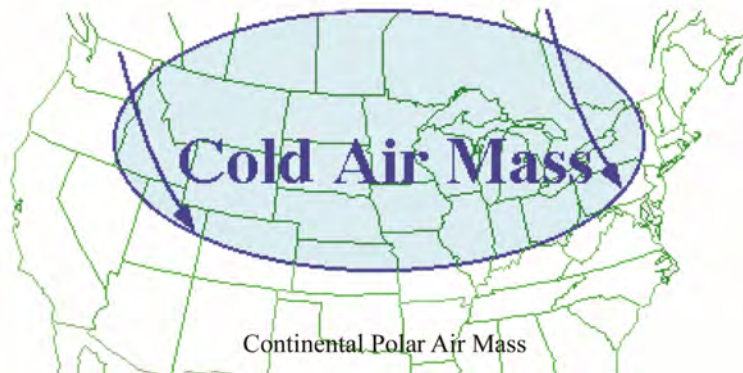
A warm front will tend to rise over the colder more dense air. As the warm air rises, the moisture it contains condenses into clouds, rain and drizzle. At high altitudes the leading edge of this front may extend as much as 600 miles ahead of the front at ground level. As the warm front approaches the cloud layer becomes thicker and just ahead of it there will often be fog along with poor visibility and rain.



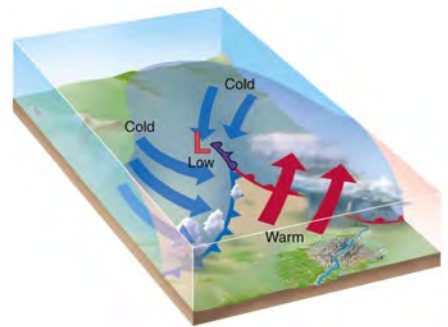
Maritime Tropical Air Mass  
**FIGURE 14-3 MARITIME TROPICAL AIR MASS**

### Cold Front

A cold front is the leading edge of a cold air mass and as the cold air is denser it will slide under the warmer air mass like a wedge. This will cause the warm air to rise, in some cases vertically, consequently, rapidly cooling the warm air. This results in heavy rain and squally conditions as the swiftly rising air sheds its moisture and heat energy.



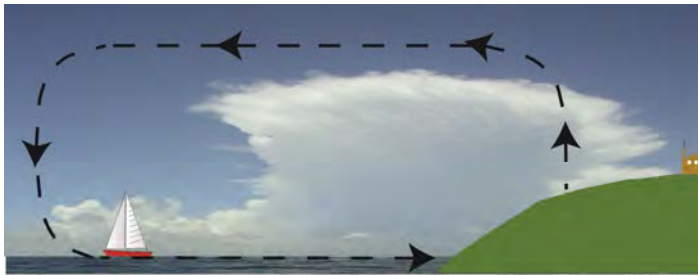
Continental Polar Air Mass  
**FIGURE 14-4 CONTINENTAL POLAR AIR MASS**



## 14.7 Sea Breeze

A sea breeze is a wind which blows locally from the sea towards the land during the daytime. If the land becomes heated by the sun during the day, the air in contact with the land is heated and rises upwards. Cool air flows in from the sea to replace the air rising off the land and so a circulation system is set up (often referred to as an “onshore” breeze).

Usually, sea breezes begin about half a mile offshore around about 10.00 to 11.00 hours. They reach their strongest by 14.00 and have usually stopped by 20.00.



How a sea breeze is generated during the day

**FIGURE 14-5 SEA BREEZE**

Sea breezes are common during weather associated with high-pressure systems. A sea breeze will modify the wind direction and strength of the gradient wind (that is, the wind associated with the isobars of the prevailing weather system). Sea breezes can be as strong as force 4 and if this combines with an onshore gradient wind the overall wind will be strong.

A sea breeze will not develop if the gradient wind is 25 knots or more. If the sea breeze and the gradient wind are in opposition, one may cancel out the other, giving calm conditions. Sea breezes seldom extend more than 10 miles offshore and are strongest near the coast.

## 14.8 Land Breeze

At night, the land cools and the air in contact with it is cooled and flows down and out to sea. Contact with the sea, which is relatively warm, heats the air which rises up and flows back towards the land where it is cooled and a circulation continues. A land breeze starts at the land and works its way out to sea. Land breezes are not as strong as sea breezes and they are not felt as far out to sea as a sea breeze might be.



How a land breeze is generated at night

**FIGURE 14-6 LAND BREEZE**

## 14.9 Katabatic Winds

Katabatic winds are found in many areas of the world and are usually cold winds that flow from high elevations to the valleys and planes below. A good example of this phenomenon is the 'Mistral' which blows down the Rhone Valley in S. France and out into the Mediterranean. As it funnels down the valley it can become a very strong wind and reach speeds of 80 mph or more. Katabatic winds can cause you to drag anchor if anchored in a bay with high mountains surrounding it.

## 14.10 Anabatic Winds

Anabatic winds occur locally when air warmed by the sun rises and flows up mountain slopes and valleys. It is probably more useful for hang-gliders than sailors!

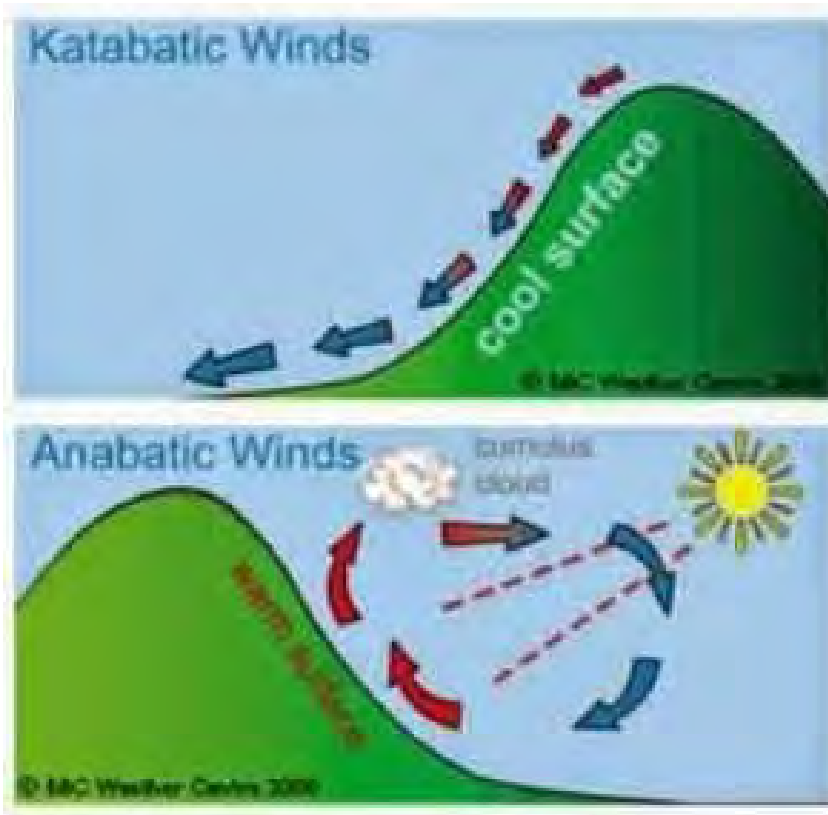


FIGURE 14-7 KATABATIC & ANABATIC WINDS

## 14.11 The Beaufort Wind Scale

The Beaufort wind scale is a measurement of wind speed to observed conditions at sea or on land. Marine forecasts will refer to the Beaufort scale when issuing a forecast, it is important to become familiar with it.

| BEAUFORT FORCE | GENERAL DESCRIPTION | SEA STATE  | WIND SPEED | WAVE HEIGHT |
|----------------|---------------------|--|------------|-------------|
| 0              | Calm                | Sea like a mirror  | 0 - 1 kn   |             |
| 1              | Light air           | Small ripples without foam crests  | 1 - 3 kn   |             |
| 2              | Light breeze        | Small wavelets, short but more pronounced, crests glassy but do not break                        | 4 - 6 kn   | 1/2 foot    |
| 3              | Gentle breeze       | Large wavelets, crests start to break, scattered white   | 7 - 10 kn  | 2 feet      |
| 4              | Moderate breeze     | Small waves becoming longer, fairly frequent white horses  | 11 - 16 kn | 3 1/2 ft    |
| 5              | Fresh breeze        | Moderate waves, becoming longer. Many white horses some spray                                    | 17 - 21 kn | 6 ft        |
| 6              | Strong breeze       | Large waves, extensive white foam crests and spray   | 22 - 27 kn | 9 1/2 ft    |
| 7              | Near gale           | Sea heaps up, white foam streaks blown in wind direction   | 28 - 33 kn | 13 1/2 ft   |
| 8              | Gale                | Moderately high waves, crests break off, visibility affected                                     | 34 - 40 kn | 18 ft       |
| 9              | Strong gale         | High breaking waves, dense streaks of foam   | 41 - 47 kn | 23 ft       |
| 10             | Storm               | Very high tumbling waves, sea looks white with large patches of foam, visibility badly affected. | 48 - 55 kn | 29 ft       |
| 11             | Violent Storm       | Exceptionally high waves, foam patches cover sea, visibility very reduced                        | 56 - 63 kn | 30 - 45 ft  |
| 12             | Hurricane           | Air filled with foam, sea completely white with driving spray, visibility greatly reduced        | 64 + kn    | over 45 ft  |

FIGURE 14-8 BEAUFORT FORCE SEA STATE/WIND SCALE



Force 0 — Wind speed less than 1 kn (Sea like a mirror)

*(Photograph - M.C. Horne, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*



Force 1 — Wind speed 1-3 kn; mean, 2 kn  
(Ripples with the appearance of scales are formed, but without foam crests)

**FIGURE 14-9 BEAUFORT FORCE 0 & 1 PHOTO**



Force 2 — Wind speed 4-6 kn; mean, 5 kn  
(Small wavelets, still short but more pronounced — crests have a glassy appearance and do not break)

*(Photograph - G.J. Simpson, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*



Force 3 — Wind speed 7-10 kn; mean, 9 kn  
(Large wavelets. Crest begin to break. Foam of glassy appearance. Perhaps scattered horses)

*(Photograph - F.G. MacNeil, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*

**FIGURE 14-10 BEAUFORT FORCE 2 & 3 PHOTOS**



Force 4 — Wind speed 11–16 kn; mean, 13 kn  
(Small waves, becoming longer; fairly frequent white horses)

*(Photograph – I G MacNeil, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*



Force 5 — Wind speed 17–21 kn; mean, 19 kn  
(Moderate waves, taking a more pronounced long form; many white horses are formed (Chance of some spray))

*(Photograph – I G MacNeil, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*

**FIGURE 14-11 BEAUFORT FORCE 4 & 5 PHOTOS**



Force 6 — Wind speed 22–27 kn; mean, 24 kn  
(Large waves begin to form; the white foam crests are more extensive everywhere (Probably some spray))

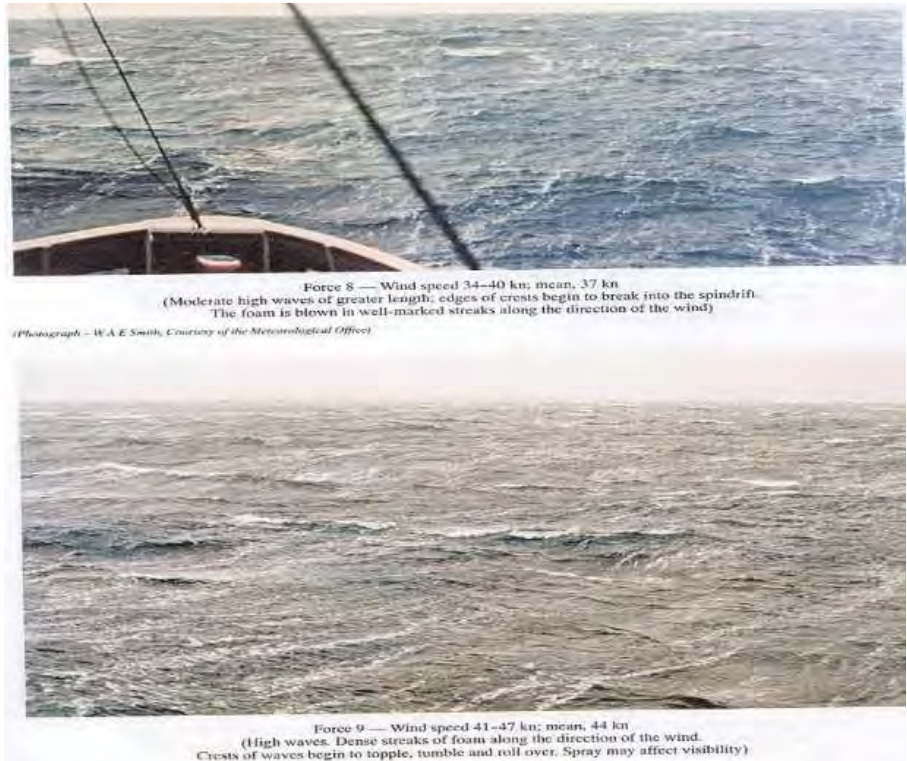
*(Photograph – I G MacNeil, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*



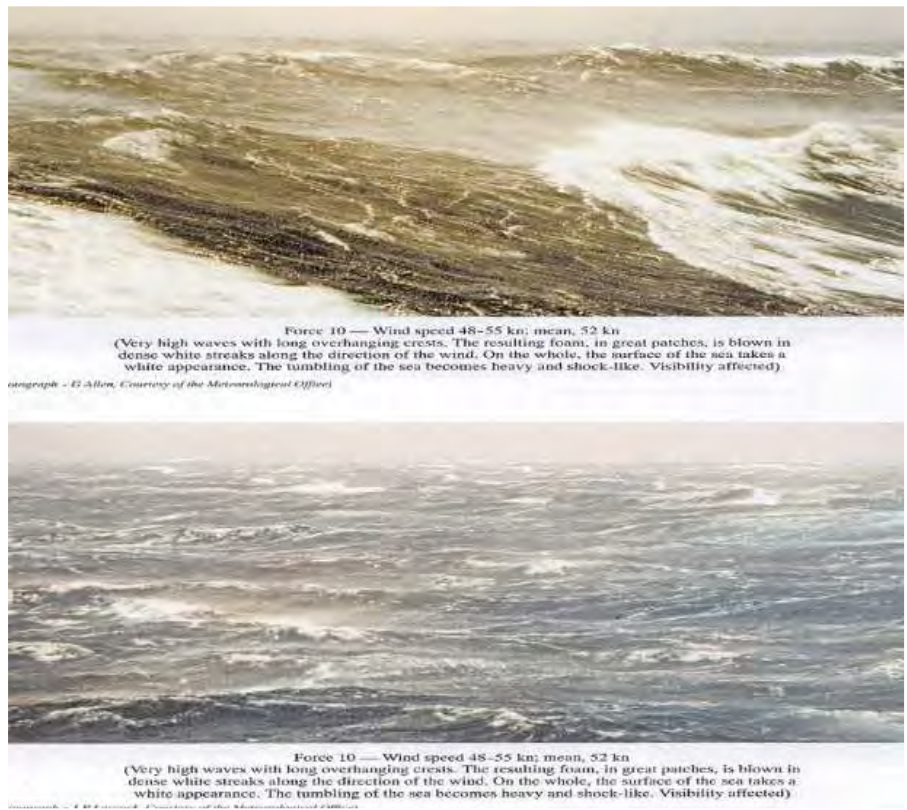
Force 7 — Wind speed 28–33 kn; mean, 30 kn  
(Sea heaps up and white foam from breaking waves begins to be blown in streaks along the direction of the wind)

*(Photograph – G J Simpson, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)*

**FIGURE 14-12 BEAUFORT FORCE 6 & 7 PHOTO**



**FIGURE 14-13 BEAUFORT FORCE 8 & 9 PHOTO**



**FIGURE 14-14 BEAUFORT FORCE 10 PHOTOS**



**Force 11 — Wind speed 56-63 kn; mean, 60 kn**  
 (Exceptionally high waves. (Small and medium-sized ships might be for a time lost to view behind the waves)  
 The sea is completely covered with long white patches of foam lying along the direction of the wind.  
 Everywhere the edge of the wave crests are blown into froth. Visibility affected)  
 (Photograph - Crown Copyright, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)



**Force 11 — Wind speed 56-63 kn; mean, 60 kn**  
 (Exceptionally high waves. (Small and medium-sized ships might be for a time lost to view behind the waves)  
 The sea is completely covered with long white patches of foam lying along the direction of the wind.  
 Everywhere the edge of the wave crests are blown into froth. Visibility affected)

**FIGURE 14-15 BEAUFORT FORCE 11 PHOTOS**



**Force 12 — Wind speed greater than 63 kn**  
 (The air is filled with foam and spray. Sea completely white with driving spray; visibility very seriously affected)  
 (Photograph - J.F. Thompson, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)



**Force 12 — Wind speed greater than 63 kn**  
 (The air is filled with foam and spray. Sea completely white with driving spray; visibility very seriously affected)  
 (Photograph - J.F. Thompson, Courtesy of the Meteorological Office)

**FIGURE 14-16 BEAUFORT FORCE 12 PHOTOS**

## 14.12 Clouds

- Clouds are rising columns of warm, moist air or parcels of saturated air, which has reached its dew point.
- The warmer the air is the more moisture it can carry, so as warm air rises it carries moisture that it has collected from the sea surface through evaporation. This rising air begins to cool, this occurs because the higher the elevation the lower the air pressure and lower the temperature.
- This drop in pressure causes the air to expand, this expansion in turn causes the air temperature to fall. This phenomenon is called adiabatic cooling. Eventually, the air cools to a degree at which it can no longer retain all the moisture that it carries and at this point the excess moisture is condensed in the form of water vapor or clouds.

**It is important for the mariner to understand the types of weather associated with the various types of clouds.**

### Basic Cloud Types

There are three basic cloud types--cirrus, cumulus, and stratus.

1. **Cirrus** – These are the most common of the “high cloud” group of clouds (5,000-13,000m). They are composed of ice and are long thin wispy clouds. They are usually white and predict fair weather.



**FIGURE 14-17 CIRRUS CLOUDS**

2. **Cumulus** - Flat-based, billowing clouds with vertical doming. The tops of the cumulus clouds will often have a “cauliflower-like” appearance. Cumulus clouds are most prominent during the summer months and can be associated with good or bad weather and generally contain showers.



**FIGURE 14-18 CUMULUS CLOUDS**

3. **Stratus** – These are low clouds (up to 2,000m), grey in color and cover most of the sky and can sometimes look like fog that does not reach the ground. Mist or drizzle are associated with this formation.

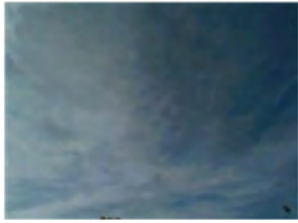


FIGURE 14-19 STRATUS CLOUDS

### Other Common Cloud Types

There are seven variations of these basic cloud types:

1. **Cirrostratus** – these clouds belong to the “high cloud” group (5,000-1,3000m). They are “sheet-like” thin clouds that usually cover the entire sky and usually appear 12-24 hours before a rain or snowstorm.
2. **Cirrocumulus** – these clouds also belong to the “high cloud” group and look like small rounded puffs that appear in long rows and is often called a “mackerel sky”. They are usually seen in the wintertime and indicate fair but cold weather.
3. **Altostratus** – these belong to the “middle cloud” group (2,000-7,000m) are blue-gray or whitish in color and often cover large portions of the sky. Altostratus clouds usually form ahead of storms with continuous rain or snow.
4. **Alto cumulus** - These belong to the “middle cloud” group (2,000-7,000m). They often have a “cotton ball-like” appearance with gray undersides. If they occur on a warm humid morning, it is a sign to expect thunderstorms by late afternoon.
5. **Nimbostratus** – these belong to the “low cloud” group, they are often associated with steady rain or snow and occur in thick, continuous layers. They are often dark gray in color.
6. **Stratocumulus** – these belong to the “low cloud” group (up to 2,000m) Often cover the sky in dark heavy masses. They are long and grey and often form in bands across the sky. They are associated with light drizzle or rain.
7. **Cumulonimbus** – these are tall, towering versions of cumulus clouds. They can have heights of two to five miles. Cumulonimbus clouds are associated with hail, rain and snow.



**FIGURE 14-25**  
**CIRROSTRATUS**



**FIGURE 14-24**  
**CIRROCUMULUS**



**FIGURE 14-23**  
**ALTOSTRATUS**



**FIGURE 14-22**  
**ALTOCUMULUS**



**FIGURE 14-26** **NIMBOSTRATUS**



**FIGURE 14-21** **STRATOCUMULUS**



**FIGURE 14-20** **CUMULONIMBUS**

### 14.13 Hurricanes, Typhoons & Cyclones

A tropical cyclone is a rapidly rotating storm system characterized by a low-pressure center, strong winds, and a spiral arrangement of thunderstorms that produce heavy rain. Depending on its location and strength, a tropical cyclone is referred to by names such as hurricane, typhoon, tropical storm, cyclonic storm, tropical depression, and simply cyclone.

Tropical cyclones typically form over large bodies of relatively warm water. They derive their energy through the evaporation of water from the ocean surface, which ultimately recondenses into clouds and rain when moist air rises and cools to saturation. They dissipate when they pass over land.

A **tropical depression** is an organized system of clouds and thunderstorms with a defined, closed surface circulation and maximum sustained winds of less than 34 knots (63 km/h). It has no eye and does not typically have the organization or the spiral shape of more powerful storms. However, it is already a low-pressure system, hence the name "depression".

A **tropical storm** is an organized system of strong thunderstorms with a defined surface circulation and maximum sustained winds between 34 knots (63 km/h) and 64 knots (119 km/h). At this point, the distinctive cyclonic shape starts to develop, although an eye is not usually present.

A **hurricane or typhoon** (sometimes simply referred to as a tropical cyclone, as opposed to a depression or storm) is a system with sustained winds of at least 34 metres per second (66 kn) or 74 miles per hour (119 km/h). A cyclone of this intensity tends to develop an eye, an area of relative calm (and lowest atmospheric pressure) at the center of circulation. The eye is often visible in satellite images as a small, circular, cloud-free spot. Surrounding the eye is the eyewall, an area about 16 kilometres (9.9 mi) to 80 kilometres (50 mi) wide in which the strongest thunderstorms and winds circulate around the storm's center. Maximum sustained winds in the strongest tropical cyclones have been estimated at about 85 metres per second (165 kn) or 314 kilometres per hour (195 mph).

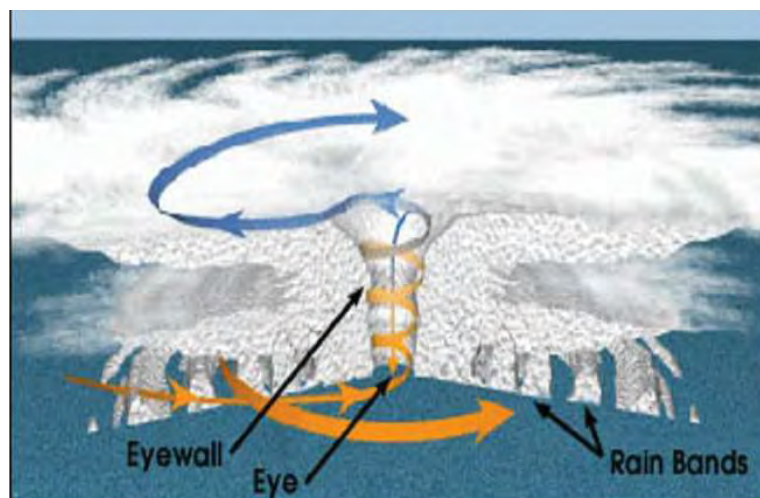


FIGURE 14-27 HURRICANE DYNAMICS

## 14.14 Precipitation

When cloud particles become too heavy to remain suspended in the air, they will fall as precipitation, which can manifest as rain, snow, hail or sleet. Obviously, precipitation will affect any passage in terms of visibility etc. and the prudent skipper will make appropriate allowances.

## 14.15 Fog

Fog is basically a cloud that occurs at ground level; it is usually caused by either cold air blowing over a body of warm water or by a warm moist air-mass being pushed over a cold surface area.

Fog is defined by meteorologists as <1 kilometer of visibility. Fog is composed of droplets of water, formed when air is cooled to its dew point,



FIGURE 14-28 FOG - SAN FRANCISCO BAY

### Types of fog

- **Advection fog, or sea fog**, occurs when warm moist air flows over a cold sea surface. This condition is more likely to arise in the late spring, or early summer before the sea has warmed fully.
- **Radiation fog** is a land based fog which occurs during cold clear nights when the land radiates the heat it absorbed during the day. The cold land cools the air in contact with it causing dew to develop. If there is a breeze it will spread the cooling effect through a greater depth of air and fog may form.
- **Frontal fog** may occur where two air masses of different temperatures meet. If both air masses have a high moisture content fog will form at the front between them. Frontal fog will usually be less than 50 miles in width.
- Fogs which develop on land can drift out to sea. Radiation fog is most likely to occur during anticyclones in the winter months; industrial areas are especially prone to radiation fog due to the higher concentration of dust particles in the air.
- **Arctic smoke** is the name given to fog caused by extremely cold air passing over warm water.

## How fog is dissipated

- If the sun warms the air enough, the water droplets will be reabsorbed as water vapour and the fog will disappear. During winter months the sun may not generate sufficient heat to clear the fog and it may remain for some days.
- Wind can clear fog by mixing the layers of air.
- Fog should clear with a change of wind direction bringing air from a different source, such as occurs at the passage of a front.

**During fog or restricted visibility, it is best to seek shelter in an anchorage or marina and wait for the fog to dissipate. Navigating thru fog can be a dangerous and frightening experience. It is easy to lose your “sense of direction” and become disorientated so make sure to check your compass heading and stay on course. If fog is forecast, head for shelter or a safe haven immediately.**

## 14.16 Thunderstorms

Thunderstorms are an extremely dangerous type of weather phenomena. They form when moist air rises into cold air and the water vapour condenses forming cumulonimbus clouds. There are two types, ordinary and severe.

- Ordinary thunderstorms last about an hour and are typical during the summer.
- Severe thunderstorms are very dangerous as they are capable of producing tennis- ball size hail, strong winds, flash floods, squall lines, strong gust fronts, and microbursts.
  - The squall lines that thunderstorms can produce can cause a rapid build-up of wave conditions which can swamp a boat if precautions are not taken.
  - If a thunderstorm is imminent, and lightening is likely to accompany it, head to shore and seek a safe anchorage or marina.

## 14.17 Lightening

Lightening is an electric current and for lightening to exist, you first need clouds. During a thunderstorm, particles of ice collide into each other and create friction in the form of an electrical charge. When a cloud fills up with electrical charges, lighter, positively charged particles form at the top of the cloud and heavy charges sink to the bottom of the cloud. When the positive and negative charges grow large enough, a giant spark (lightening) occurs between the two charges.

If positive charges build up on the ground beneath, this can cause a spark that is attracted to the negative charge in the bottom of the cloud. The ground's positive charges center around anything that “stick up” such as a tree, people, lightning conductor or the mast of a sailboat.

## Lightning at Sea

- A lightning storm at sea is a frightening thing to encounter, especially on a sailboat. If a mast is struck, it will generally “fry” all of the electronics on board a vessel such as radio, GPS, radar, chart plotters etc. It is important to carry a hand held VHF and GPS as we discussed for the “abandon ship” bag in the safety equipment chapter. As in the case of thunderstorms, head to shore and seek a safe anchorage or marina as soon as the weather predicts.

## 14.18 After A Storm

When a storm has passed, there will often be calm weather but it is important to understand that a large and sudden rainfall can cause debris, tree branches and vegetation to flood down rivers and into estuaries which can be a hazard to navigation and a danger to your vessel.

Creeks can rise quite dramatically and the water will become muddy and murky and if someone were to fall overboard without a lifejacket, it might be impossible to see them. The rate of water flow down rivers and creeks will also increase dramatically and navigating upriver is best left until the flood has died down.

Make sure to steer clear of any rapids as the rate of water flow in currents will increase significantly. As with other adverse weather conditions, head to shore and seek a safe anchorage or marina as soon as possible.

## 14.19 Knowledge Review

1. What sort of information is contained in a marine weather forecast?
2. Name 8 different sources for obtaining a weather forecast.
3. What is the Coriolis Effect?
4. Describe what happens when a front passes through
5. Describe the differences between a warm front and a cold front
6. What is the difference between a sea breeze and a land breeze?
7. What is a katabatic wind?
8. What is an anabatic wind?
9. Describe the Beaufort wind scale, how many “forces” are there on the scale?
10. What are the 3 basic cloud types?
11. Describe how a hurricane is formed and what the effects are.
12. What is the difference between a tropical depression, tropical storm and a hurricane?
13. Name 3 types of fog
14. What precautions should be taken if you encounter fog?
15. Describe the effects of thunderstorms and lightening
16. What should you be aware of when a storm has passed?

## Module 15 SHORT PASSAGES – HEAVY WEATHER, RESTRICTED VISIBILITY & NEGOTIATING HARBOUR ENTRANCES

### 15.1 Key Objectives



THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO GIVE THE STUDENT THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO PREPARE FOR HEAVY WEATHER TACTICS FOR SHORT PASSAGES AND ACTION IN RESTRICTED VISIBILITY AND NEGOTIATING HARBOUR ENTRANCES.

### 15.2 Heavy weather preparations, line squalls

#### Preparations for Heavy Weather

Preparations for heavy weather should be made well in advance of the incoming weather system. It is important to:

- Close all hatches, put washboards and hatch covers in place
- Close seacocks
- Hoist radar reflector
- Secure all loose items on deck and below
- Make sandwiches or easy to prepare food
- Don heavy weather apparel, safety harnesses and lifejackets
- Appoint lookouts as visibility can be significantly reduced
- Plot position accurately, manoeuvre away from a lee shore
- On sailboats, reduce sail and prepare trysail or heavy weather sails
- Head for a safe haven if heavy weather persists or is likely to continue

## Leeshore

- In rough weather there is always the danger of a leeshore on to which the wind is blowing, and the seas breaking.
- A boat will be safer offshore in deeper water.
- Often, what appears to be a safe harbour requires an approach to a leeshore. This can result in large rolling waves at the entrance to the harbour which can cause a boat to “surf” down the waves out of control.
- Under such circumstances it may be wise to stay offshore until the weather calms down or to find an alternative harbour or safe refuge.

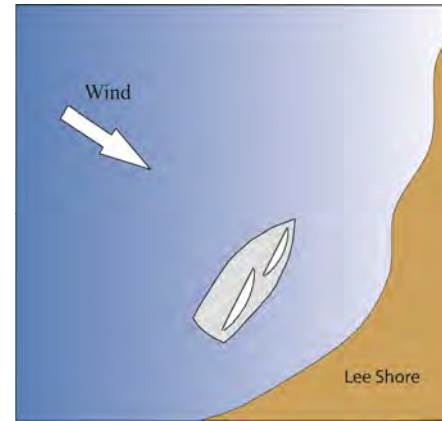


FIGURE 15-1 LEESHORE

## Line Squalls

- A line squall during daylight hours is visible as a darkening line across the sky which sometimes contains short bursts of intensive rain and a sudden and dramatic increase in wind speed.
- They are generally short lived but can be severe and sometimes frightening during their short lifespan.
- Preparations for a line squall are the same as for heavy weather and it is always better to err on the side of caution in the event that you encounter one. This is especially important at night time when they may not be as noticeable against a dark sky.

## Heavy Weather Tactics

Be prepared in the event of a strong wind warning, and make sure that your vessel is big enough to handle the tides, waves and weather that is associated with this.

Preparations for heavy weather should be undertaken as listed above. However, when heavy weather is approaching it is always best to head for a safe haven if at all possible.

For sailboats, it is possible to “heave to” during a storm which is probably the most comfortable option. This requires the reduction or reefing of both the mainsail and the headsail and the “backing” of the headsail which effectively leaves the boat dead in the water with little forward leeway.

The procedure is to tack leaving the foresail cleated, when the foresail backs, the helm is brought to leeward and secured. The mainsail should be adjusted according to the size of the

foresail. With the foresail backed, this counteracts the forward drive of the mainsail. The boats motion will be steady and gives the opportunity for a break or rest period. In the hove to position, the helm is lashed to leeward and the foresail sheeted to windward. Your sailing instructor will demonstrate this procedure for you.

## Sea Anchors

Another option for both powerboats and sailboats is the deployment of a sea anchor. This is usually a canvas or web type bag which looks like a small parachute and is deployed off the bow of the boat using the anchor rode to keep the bow into the swell. This is the safest position for small power boats



FIGURE 15-2 SEA ANCHOR

as a heavy beam sea can capsize a boat quite easily. For maximum benefit, a sea anchor should always be deployed with enough rode to reach the crest of the oncoming wave.

When coastal cruising it is important to get regular weather forecasts allowing enough time to reach a safe haven in the event of incoming heavy weather.

## Drogues

During strong following seas, the wave action on the stern of a vessel can cause the vessel to constantly “yaw” which will push the boat from side to side. To prevent this, a **drogue** is dragged behind a vessel (attached to the stern) which will act as a brake and assist in maintaining the boats course. It will however reduce the speed of the vessel but will allow for a greater level of stability and comfort.

Drogues: Also see module on boat safety equipment



FIGURE 15-3 DROGUE EXAMPLE



FIGURE 15-4 DROGUE

## Ice and Ice Accretion

Ice accretion is the process whereby a layer of ice will build up on a vessel when exposed to freezing rain or sea spray or from super cooled fog or cloud droplets. The weight of ice can become quite substantial and must be removed as soon as possible. Failure to do so can result in the vessel becoming top-heavy and likely to turn over in the event of a beam sea. Melting ice packs can flow down rivers during the spring season and become serious hazards to navigation.



**FIGURE 15-5 ICE ACCRETION**

## 15.3 Action in Restricted Visibility

### Fog

Air reaches its “dew point” when it is saturated with water at a certain temperature. When the temperature drops below dew point fog can occur. It usually occurs when the land cools at night and the moisture laden air can drift across coastal regions for several miles offshore. When the sun rises, it usually burns off the fog by raising the dew point. It can also disperse when warm dryer air raises the temperature.

Fog can be very disorientating as visibility can often be reduced to just several yards. It is important to make the following preparations:

- Immediately obtain an accurate position of where you are. The logbook should be updated regularly with positions and courses
- Check your chart and steer a course to keep you clear of any obstructions, navigation hazards, shipping channels or traffic separation schemes.
- Avoid constantly altering course as this makes accurate navigation difficult.
- Monitor your VHF and if in a shipping lane a “securite” should be broadcast giving the vessel's current location.
- Note all other vessels in the area.
- Turn on radar and all available electronic navigation equipment.
- Hoist a radar reflector as high as possible

- Slow your boat speed so you can stop quickly in an emergency or alter course as necessary.
- Appoint a lookout to watch and listen for other shipping.
- Have white flares close to hand.
- Don lifejackets and know the location of your life raft and all safety equipment.
- Maintain silence.
- Sound the fog signal with your boats air horn (one long blast every two minutes).
- If close to a marked channel, stay outside the channel but close to the buoy.

## 15.4 Negotiating a Harbour Entrance

- When approaching any harbour entrance, it is essential to be aware of all other vessels entering and leaving the harbour. Larger vessels may be restricted in their ability to manoeuvre or constrained by draught and it is important to know your light, sound and day shapes as covered in the collision regulations. Be aware of all traffic approaching from behind and make sure to stay on the Starboard side of the channel.
- Prepare your pilotage plan in advance.
- Have ample crew on deck to assist you if required.
- Have your VHF radio switched on and close at hand.
- Prepare dock lines and fenders for arrival at the dock. It is always a good idea to have your anchor ready.
- In the event of an engine failure should you need to anchor to avoid collision or grounding.
- At night time, make sure your navigation lights are on and working.
- Hoist your radar reflector as high as possible.
- If approaching a leeshore, great care must be taken to control the vessel while entering a harbour entrance due to the possibility of large rolling waves at the entrance. In extreme circumstances such as this or when crossing a sandbar at an

entrance, it is best to deploy a sea anchor off the stern of the boat to slow down the boat and avoid surfing.

## 15.5 Collision Regulations on Passage

It is important on all voyages to maintain a proper lookout at all times. Make sure your crew have a basic understanding of the collision regulations and if in doubt always call the skipper. Allow sufficient time for collision avoidance if you feel there may be a problem.

Any action to avoid collision should be made in sufficient good time with due regard for good seamanship. Any alteration of course or speed shall be large enough to be readily apparent to another vessel observing visually or by radar. Avoid a succession of small alterations of course and or speed. Make sure to avoid changing course into the path of another vessel.

## 15.6 Preparing a Short Passage Plan

### Reference Materials/Information for Planning

It is essential to all boat skippers and navigators to understand the importance of preparing a passage plan for any voyage they are about to undertake. An appraisal of information must be made before a detailed plan can be drawn up. This includes:

- Charts containing sufficient detail to show navigation marks, known hazards and any other specific information that is appropriate for each part of the intended voyage.
- Where possible, a Reeds Nautical Almanac (or similar) for the appropriate area and current year should be consulted. This will contain a list of lights and navigation marks, tidal information for the ports in the area, current and tidal atlases, traffic separation schemes, list of appropriate radio signals, harbour radio and other useful information.
- A local cruising guide giving information on locations of fuel, fresh water, pump out stations, supermarkets, hospitals and other information as appropriate to the voyage.
- Vessels intending to go beyond 5 miles from any coastline should carry a minimum level of navigational publications and the operating manuals and maintenance instructions for all navigation aids, engines and equipment on board.

### Passage Plan Headings for Consideration:

- Date: does the timing coincide with adverse tropical weather systems
- Weather: do I have access to local weather information

- Charts: are current small and large scale charts available for the area.
- Distance: what is the length of total passage and of each leg.
- Boat speed: what is a reasonable average boat speed to expect.
- Passage time: how much time should be allowed for the total / each leg.
- Tidal information: what are the tidal restrictions, direction of flow, strong currents, overfalls, time of high and low water at points of departure and arrival.
- Port information: what do I know about berthing, provisioning, medical care, fuel
- Harbours of refuge: shelter from adverse or changing weather, access or tidal restrictions.
- Navigation marks: buoys and light characteristics and sequence.
- Documents: boat registration papers, radio license (if applicable) insurance, passports for all crew, return tickets (if applicable).
- Watch schedules: how will the watch routine be handled during day / night hours.

### Decide What Tactics to Use

In deciding what tactics to use to implement your passage plan, the following factors should be taken into account:

- The number of crew onboard
- The experience and qualifications of the crew
- The reliability and condition of the boats navigation equipment
- Estimated times of arrival at critical points for tidal heights and rates of flow
- Weather conditions especially areas prone to fog
- Daytime or night time passing of danger points
- Traffic conditions especially in busy harbours or thoroughfares

Having considered all of the above, the skipper must decide if any of the conditions introduce an unacceptable hazard to the safety of his vessel and crew or indeed if the passage should

be undertaken given certain prevailing conditions. Consideration should also be given to the requirement of additional deck or engine room personnel if deemed appropriate.

## Selecting an Anchorage

Selecting a suitable anchorage is important for both the safety of the vessel and the comfort of its crew. The factors to be taken into consideration are:

- Wind speed and direction to determine the suitability of the anchorage. Winds generate swells which can be most uncomfortable to anchor in.
- Tide and current information will ascertain if there is too much flow to anchor safely
- Navigational access to the anchorage is important in busy shipping areas and during heavy weather.
- Depth of water will determine the amount of rode required, make sure you have sufficient depth under the boat at low tide to prevent grounding.
- Type of holding (sand, shale, rock, turtle grass or mud) will determine what type of anchor to use.
- Number of boats at anchor will determine if there is sufficient room to anchor and swing without risk of collision.

It is always best to arrive at an anchorage in daylight hours to have sufficient time to thoroughly research the best position to anchor in

## Navigation on Short Passages

- On the chart, draw in the ground tracks from start to finish, avoiding dangers by a safe margin, and taking advantage of navigation marks and lights wherever possible. These tracks are not courses to steer; specific tidal work will usually be done just before the passage starts.
- From the distances and the expected average speed of the boat decide how long the passage will take and how much of the passage will be completed within your daily time schedule. Note harbours or anchorages which may suit for overnight stops.
- Circle clearly any hazards on the chart which are not easily noticed.
- Look for headlands or other areas which may have strong tides or overfalls, these may dictate that you pass at a specific time relative to high, or low, water.

- Note any harbours that may be used as harbours of refuge in an emergency. It may not be possible to enter these harbours under all conditions so note carefully any shelter or tidal restrictions these harbours may have.
- If you are using GPS or Loran, note the latitude and longitude of waypoints you intend to use. Check these carefully as it is only too easy to make mistakes when writing them out.
- Check whether the track passes through traffic separation schemes.
- If there is a tidal consideration, such as lock gates at your destination, it may be necessary to work backwards from this consideration in order to decide the time of departure. There is not much point in arriving 20 minutes after the lock gates have shut.
- Check which harbours have fuel and water available. The fuel consideration is of considerable importance to motor yachts. Always plan so that you have a reasonable amount of fuel in reserve and remember that adverse conditions may increase fuel, consumption dramatically. Check whether fuel, water, etc., is available on the dock.
- When deciding how long you will travel each day take into account the stamina and experience of the crew and the sea-worthiness of the boat. Remember that cruising is supposed to be relaxing and enjoyable, not a test of superhuman endurance.
- If a passage is expected to take longer than about 15 or 16 hours, it is advisable to work out a suitable watch schedule.
- Decide the provisioning of basic food and water supplies.

Most important of all try to maintain a flexible approach to the whole plan as conditions may be adverse on the day; trying to complete a passage against difficult conditions can spoil a holiday and put you and your crew under a lot of pressure.

### Delegation of Responsibilities to Crew

Boating is team work and requires input from all crew members for the safe and enjoyable running of the vessel.

- Each crew member should be fully aware of the location and uses of all safety equipment on board including but not limited to lifejackets, life rafts, fire extinguishers, flares, ditch bag, VHF radio, horseshoe buoy, throw ring, and lifesling.

- It is important on every vessel that crew understand what their duties will be and that they are sufficiently experienced and trained to undertake such duties.
- Crew should also know the safe operational procedures and location for the heads, stove, heater, engine, generator, tool box and other on board equipment.

## 15.7 Knowledge Review

This is a practical subject for which we do not consistently include a Knowledge Review. However, due to the nature of the material covered and its importance it has been included

1. What preparations for heavy weather should be made?
2. Understand leeshore, line squalls and heavy weather tactics.
3. Understand what the Beaufort Wind Scale is and general description, wind speed and wave height for each level.
4. Understand what must be done in fog conditions to navigate safely and keep all crew and passengers safe.
5. Understand how to negotiate a harbour entrance.

## Module 16 COMPASSES AND MAGNETISM

### 16.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS GET THE STUDENT TO UNDERSTAND THE MAGNETIC COMPASS, VARIATION AND DEVIATION AND APPLYING ERROR.

### 16.2 Compass Types and Their Uses

#### The Magnetic Compass

The magnetic compass comprises a magnetic needle mounted on a pivot and a card that is divided into 360° increments, called degrees, 0° and 360° being the same, also labeled north. Most modern compasses have the needle attached to the card and it operates by the needle pointing to magnetic north whilst the compass card indicates the vessels magnetic direction of travel.



FIGURE 16-1 COMPASS

The vessel's compass is mounted on or parallel to the fore and aft centerline of the vessel.

A compass is used to steer a course, that is, the direction in which the vessel wishes to travel, or to take bearings, which is the direction/bearing of an object for charting purposes.

#### Lubber Line

A lubber line is located on the fixed part of the compass and is positioned on the fore and aft line of the vessel, to enable accurate reading of a course or bearing. Most compasses have lubber lines etched on the forward and after part of the compass (to indicate reciprocal direction).

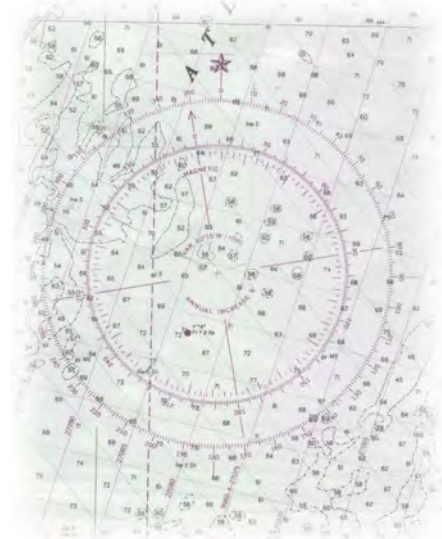
#### Compass Error

Magnetic north and true north are not in the same geographic position, therefore the difference between magnetic north and true north is called compass error. Compass error is therefore the algebraic sum of variation and deviation. Note that there are now three headings for bearings and courses: True, Magnetic and Compass. A bearing or course is useless unless it is followed by (T) or (M), or (C).

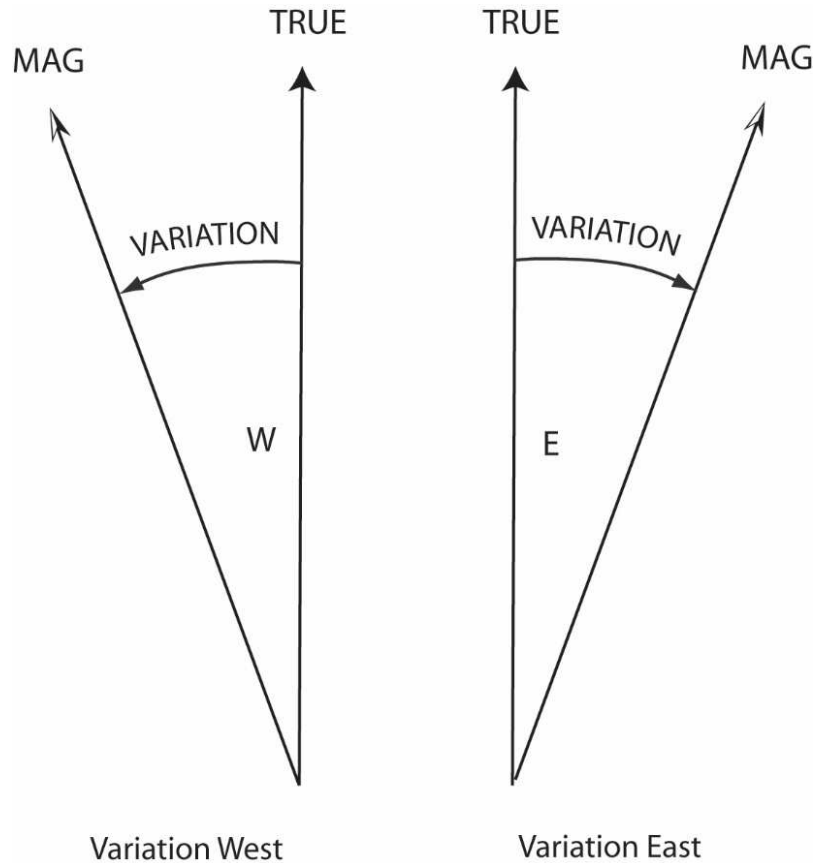
### 16.3 Variation, Deviation and Applying Error

#### Variation

The direction of True North and Magnetic North are both graphically shown on the chart as two compass cards overlaid on each other, known as a compass rose. Variation is the angular difference between the direction of True North, and the direction of Magnetic North. If the compass points east of True North, variation is named east and vice versa. The variation can be found printed in the center of the compass rose and it also notes the annual change.



**FIGURE 16-2 COMPASS ROSE SHOWN ON CHART**



**FIGURE 16-3 VARIATION**

## Deviation

### Causes of deviation

- Deviation is caused by ferrous objects (those containing iron) being close to the compass.
- Engines, iron and steel keels, electric motors and cookers can all cause deviation and small portable objects such as pen knives, can cause deviation if they are close enough to the compass.
- Speakers in radios and VHF transceivers contain powerful magnets and if mounted too close to the ship's compass can cause large values of deviation.
- Steering compasses on steel boats are particularly prone to deviation whereas fiberglass and wooden boats are much less susceptible.
- Hand bearing compasses which are designed to be held close to the face can be effected by steel framed spectacles.

Deviation is not static as it changes as the direction of the boat changes and deviation caused by an iron or steel keel may change as the boat heels. Motor boats often have their compass close to a lot of instruments, many of which create magnetic fields.

The earth's magnetic field will cause the compass to point to Magnetic North, however any magnetic effects on a particular vessel will cause the compass to be deflected east or west from Magnetic North. This is called deviation and is also calculated east or west.

A professional Compass Adjuster can usually eliminate most of the deviation by the use of magnets placed strategically around the compass. Not all deviation will be corrected so a compass adjuster will make up a deviation card for selected compass headings.

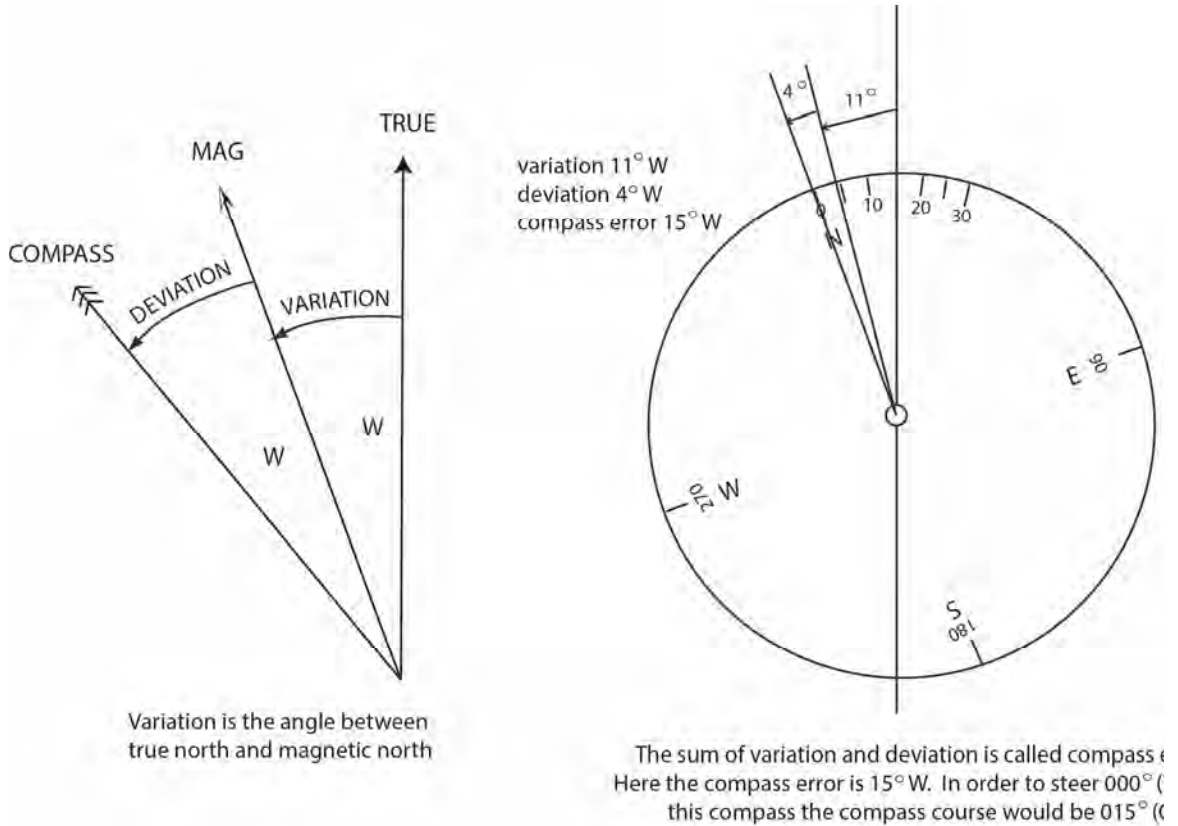


FIGURE 16-4 DEVIATION

**When to check for deviation**

Deviation should be checked (at least) at the start of any passage, at the beginning of the season and whenever any new equipment has been fitted which might cause deviation. Deviation should also be checked on a new, chartered, or borrowed boat.

## Navigation Has Three Compass Bearings:

### 1. True (T)

The true compass rose and Parallels of Latitude & Meridians of Longitude on the chart all refer to true north as a datum.

### 2. Magnetic (M)

Takes into account or is affected by Variation only, for example Hand-bearing compass gives readouts in magnetic when used at a location on the vessel which is unaffected by deviation.

### 3. Compass (C)

Uses magnetic north as its datum and takes into account or is affected by both variation and deviation.

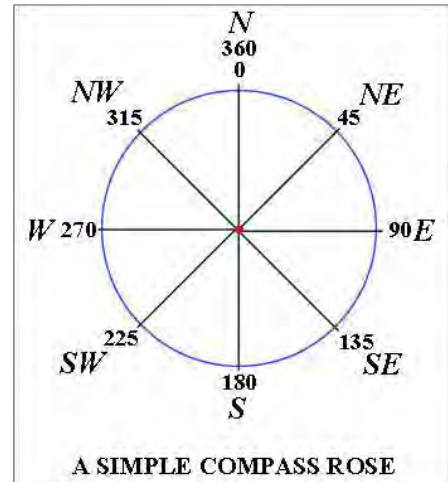


FIGURE 16-5 SIMPLE COMPASS ROSE

Everything is converted to “True” for plotting on the chart.

Everything is converted to “Compass” for instructions and work on deck.

## True North

True North is the North Pole, the point at the top of the globe where all the meridians of longitude meet.

## Courses, True, Magnetic

**True north** - The direction to the geographic North Pole.

**Magnetic north** - The direction to the ‘magnetic’ North Pole.

**Variation** - The angle between the direction of true north and magnetic north.

**Deviation** - The angle between the direction of magnetic north and the direction towards which the compass actually points. Deviation is caused by metallic influences onboard a vessel, such as a radio or toolbox.

**True Course** - The angle between a yacht’s centerline and the direction of true north.

**Magnetic course** - The angle between a yacht’s centerline and the direction of magnetic north.

**Compass course** - The course to steer allowing for variation and deviation.

## Magnetic North

Magnetic North is not at the same place as True North. The north magnetic pole is situated in the vicinity of Bathurst Island in northern Canada, about 1600 km (about 1000 miles) from the North Pole (and it is constantly moving). This means that from almost everywhere on the earth's surface True North will vary from Magnetic North. The direction of Magnetic North is shown on the compass rose on the chart, as is the annual change.

## True Virtue Makes Dull Companions

The corrections for variation and deviation must be carried out in the correct sequence:

- from true to compass = True ~ Magnetic ~ Compass,
- from compass to true = Compass ~ Magnetic ~ True.

The mnemonic **True Virtue Makes Dull Companions** might help in remembering the sequence. If you have any difficulty working compass error problems, use the mnemonic by making boxes as shown. Then fill in the figures you know and the values in the remaining blank space(s) should become obvious.

## Applying Variation

In order to apply the correct variation, it is necessary to 'work-up' the up-to-date variation figure. This is done by finding the nearest compass rose on the chart, reading the variation and year and applying the annual increase or decrease. Remember, all work on charts is True, whilst all information used to steer or plot courses is Magnetic.

Therefore, to correct:

True to magnetic add west and subtract east variation (Add on).

Magnetic to true subtract west and add east variation (Subtract).

A good mnemonic is:

"Error west compass best (Add on).

"Error east compass least (Subtract)

| True | Var  | Mag  | Dev  | Compass |
|------|------|------|------|---------|
| 079° | 11°W | 090° | 4° E | 086°    |

## Magnetic Anomalies

There are certain places in the world where “magnetic anomalies” occur. This is where magnetic magma is encrusted in the earth below the ocean and when you sail over this magma, the compass needle will continually spin around inside the compass. This will only happen for a few miles and will be marked on the nautical chart as an anomaly.

## Hand Bearing Compass

A hand bearing compass is used to take the bearings from two different objects and then transform those angles onto a nautical chart. Where the two bearings intersect is your boat's position.



**FIGURE 16-6 HAND BEARING COMPASS (IMAGE COURTESY OF WEST MARINE)**

## 16.4 Knowledge Review

1. What is a magnetic compass and how does it work?
2. How many degrees are there on a compass?
3. What is a compass used for?
4. What is variation, deviation, cause of deviation and when to check for it?
5. What is the difference between true north and magnetic north?
6. Understand “applying variation”
7. What is a magnetic anomaly?

## Module 17 CHARTS, CHARTWORK & BASIC NAVIGATION

### 17.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO FAMILIARISE THE STUDENT WITH CHARTWORK INSTRUMENTS, CHART INFORMATION AND SYMBOLS, LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE, NAVIGATION TECHNIQUES, PLOTTING TECHNIQUES, TIDES, CURRENTS, AND COURSE TO STEER.

The cautious navigator takes every opportunity that presents itself to find his position and plot it on a nautical chart. Even with the advent of modern electronic navigation aids, a regular check by traditional methods should be made. Obviously weather conditions will dictate how regular these fixes should be; fog, low visibility and bad weather are some examples when the time between fixes should be reduced.

### 17.2 Charts

- Charts are essentially maps of sea areas showing coastlines and their prominent features,
- Depths, objects in on and under the water, hazards to navigation, aids to navigation, channels, anchorage areas, harbours, tides, water levels, magnetic variation and information on currents.
- They are intended primarily for use by mariners to assist in route planning, pilotage and navigation
- In addition to charts there are a number of other publications required by the navigator.



FIGURE 17-1 NAUTICAL CHART

## 17.3 Chart Publications

### British Admiralty Charts (BA)

BA charts are published by the Hydrographic Office of the British Ministry of Defence and are available from approved chart agents. BA chart agents will also supply, free of charge the 'Home Waters Catalogue' (NP 109) which is a catalog of BA north European charts from Denmark to Bordeaux on the Atlantic coast of France. NP109 also lists other useful BA publications such as tidal stream atlases, pilot books, etc. for the area covered.

A full catalog of all BA charts called 'Catalogue of Admiralty Charts and other Hydrographic Publications' (NP 131) is also available for viewing at every BA chart agent. Both are published annually.

### Canadian Hydrographic Service Charts

The Canadian Hydrographic Service (CHS) charts are published in Ottawa and provide nautical charts for all of Canada's coastlines and large navigable internal lakes, rivers and waterways. With increased commercial shipping, fishing, recreational boating and research vessels the CHS plays an important role in keeping these 946 charts up to date and available to all mariners. The CHS also provides digital charts and nautical publications for the safety of life at sea.

## National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Charts

U.S. charts are published in Washington, D.C., by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) by the Department of Commerce.

- Nautical Chart Catalog 1 - the Atlantic and Gulf Coasts including Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.
- Nautical Chart Catalog 2 - the Pacific Coast including Hawaii, Guam and Samoa Islands.
- Nautical Chart Catalog 3 - Alaska including the Aleutian Islands
- Nautical Chart Catalog 4 - the U.S. Great Lakes and Adjacent waterways.

These catalogs show, in pictorial form, the small craft charts, harbour charts, coast charts, general charts and sailing charts available for the area covered together with their respective chart numbers. Written details are also given of the title and scale of each chart.

## Small Craft Charts

- 1) Charts intended specifically for use aboard small craft, often called 'yachtsmen's charts' are produced by various chart publishers. For example, International Sailing Supply of Punta Gorda (Florida) publish their chart #62 of New York Harbour which is a reproduction of portions of NOAA chart #12327.
- 2) Yachting charts are generally made to fold into a convenient size and have discarded information which the publishers do not consider of use to the small boat navigator.
- 3) These charts may also use different colors to indicate land, sea, drying areas and so on. Many of these charts are produced on waterproof and tear proof paper which has obvious advantages but erasing pencil lines can be a problem.
- 4) Yachting charts often include very useful "chartlets" of harbours and anchorages together with their approaches. (chartlets are expanded views of certain sections of the charts). Some may have also have useful information such as pilotage/buoyage notes printed on the reverse side.
- 5) Be sure to check your marine chart for local hazards that may impede the operation of a vessel.

## Suppliers

Charts are available from chart agents and nautical book stores worldwide; most chandlers can also supply a limited number of local charts for the immediate area.

## 17.4 Chartwork Instruments and Information

The practical navigator does not require expensive equipment to work effectively. The basic needs are as follows:

**Pencils** - 2B pencils should be used for chartwork to avoid scoring the surface of a chart and to allow navigational marks to be easily erased... Mechanical pencils work well as they do not require sharpening.

**Parallel Rules** - Used to measure courses, bearings, lines of position etc. by reference to a compass rose printed on a chart. Worked by walking or rolling (depending on type) the rule across the chart to/from compass rose. These are not very accurate in a rolling sea or in bad weather – **(not recommended)**



FIGURE 17-2 PARALLEL RULES

**Dividers** - Used to measure distances (in nautical miles from the latitude scale.). A classroom school type is adequate, but the single-handed brass type makes life easier.



FIGURE 17-3 DIVIDERS

**Breton Type Plotter** - **(preferred instrument)** this comprises a circular protractor mounted on a rectangular base, all made of plastic. The protractor is marked in degrees and incorporates a grid for easy alignment. The rectangular part acts as the ruler.

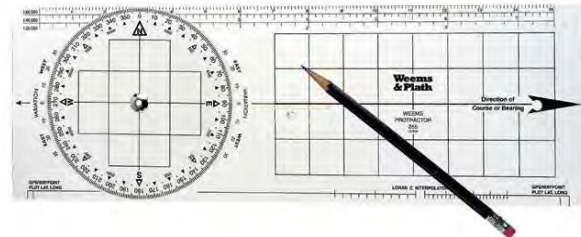


FIGURE 17-4 BRETON PLOTTER





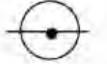

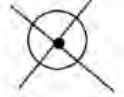













**This type of plotter eliminates the need for the compass rose on the chart, can be used on rough surfaces, and on any size vessel. This is the most accurate of plotters having a correction factor of 1°.**

Using a chart, parallel rules or plotter/protractor and dividers, the most basic navigational problems can be solved. It is possible to determine the position (latitude and longitude) of a given point on the chart, plot a position on the chart whose latitude and longitude are known, plot a course from one point to another, plot bearings and lines of position and measure and mark off distances.

Other useful items include a notebook, pencil sharpener and eraser.

### Chart Work Symbols

Symbols used in chart work convey meanings of themselves. Different symbols are used for the U.S. than the rest of the world.

|                                 | U.S.  | International   |
|---------------------------------|---|---|
| dead reckoning                  |    |    |
| estimated position              |    |    |
| fix                             |    |    |
| fix by position lines           |    |    |
| range (distance)                |    |    |
| transferred position line       |    |    |
| Course to steer and water track |  |  |
| ground track                    |  |  |
| current vector                  |  |  |
| electronic fix                  |  |  |
| Lat. and Long.                  | 36°55.5'N<br>75°38.2'W  | 36°55'.5N<br>75°38'.2W  |

### Scale

The scale to which the chart is drawn is important as it indicates how much detail is included. Large-scale charts are used when more detail is required, for example harbour charts which show a small area in great detail. Smaller scale charts are used when detail is less important and show a larger area in less detail. As the scale of the chart increases, a smaller area is shown with more detail. **It is best to use the largest scale of chart available.**

Distances are measured using the latitude scale of the chart, with one minute of latitude being equal to one nautical mile.

Great care must be taken when moving from one chart to another, **be aware that the “new” chart may have a different scale.** It is a common mistake to mark off the wrong distance because of a change in scale between two charts.

## Heights and Depths

Soundings (or depths) will be shown in either feet, fathoms or meters, where 1 fathom = 6 feet. In the USA, the standard of measurement will be imperial rather than metric. The measurement will be marked on the title block and on the upper/lower margins, “SOUNDINGS IN FATHOMS” or SOUNDINGS IN FEET” European and some other charts are likely to be metric - these will be marked on the title block and on the upper/lower margins, “SOUNDINGS IN METERS”.

## “Special Notes, Cautions and Warnings”

These will list certain features, dangers and other information in the area covered by the chart and which the navigator must make him/herself aware for safe passage making.

## North/Compass Rose

True North is always at the top of the chart and South is always at the bottom. This may vary however with strip charts and chart books. The compass rose is printed in several locations on the chart and the outer ring shows true degrees from 000° to 359° whilst the inner ring shows magnetic degrees from 000° to 359°.

The difference between the two is the variation (at the time printing). In the center of the rose the variation is noted along with the annual change. (this will be covered in more detail on the practical course).

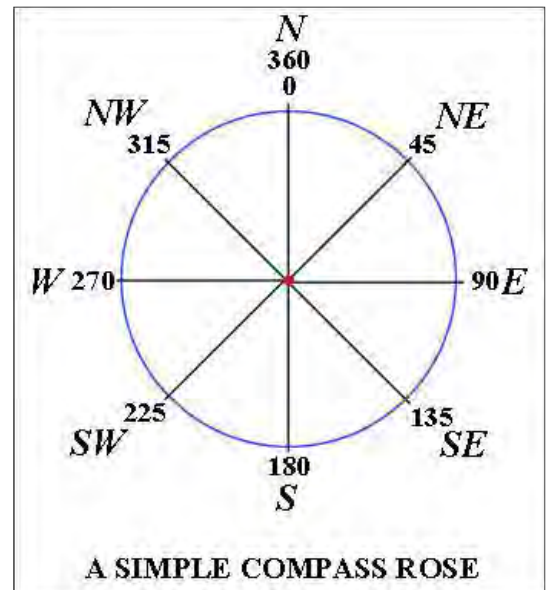


FIGURE 17-5 SIMPLE COMPASS ROSE

### Tidal Diamonds

Tidal Diamonds are symbols on British Admiralty Charts that indicate the direction and speed of tidal streams.

The symbols consist of a letter of the Roman alphabet in a rhombus, printed in purple ink. On any particular chart each tidal diamond will have a unique letter starting from "A" and continuing alphabetically.  
(more on this later)

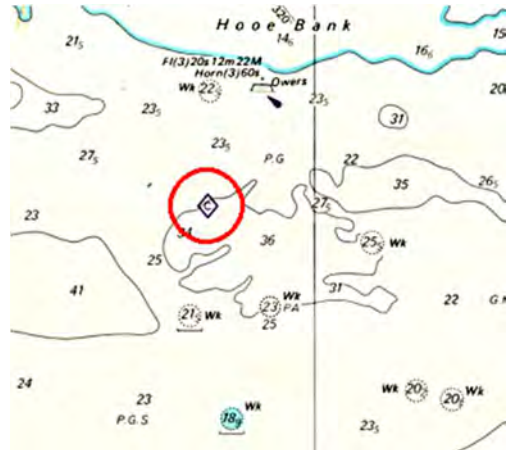


FIGURE 17-6 TIDAL DIAMOND

### Chart Symbols and Abbreviations

Chart symbols and abbreviations can be found in booklets issued by various hydrographic offices in the U.K. it is NP 5011 (UK) or Chart No 1(Canada and USA) This publication illustrates all the symbols and abbreviations in use on most nautical charts.

(Where possible the symbols used are common sense. E.g. the symbols for a church ....looks like a church...!)



### Chart Information

Title & Number - Charts are titled and numbered according to the area they cover, such as Vancouver Harbour-Falmouth to Plymouth - English Channel - New York Harbour - Port Everglades.

Anything colored yellow is dry land and its height is measured from mean high water springs (MHWS).

Anything colored green is land, which covers and uncovers with the tides. Drying heights (underlined) are measured from C.D. (chart datum) or L.A.T. (Lowest astronomical tide) up to MHWS.

Anything blue or white shows the soundings below low water.

(With Tidal height there will nearly always be more depth than charted)

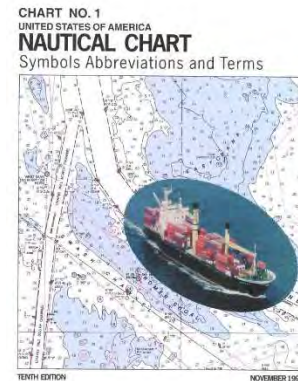


FIGURE 17-7 CHART NO. 1 (U.S.A.)



**FIGURE 17-8 CHART INFORMATION EXAMPLE**

## Soundings

Fathoms, feet, or metric. Generally noted below the name of the chart.

## Cautions

Cautions draw the attention of the user to navigational instructions, hazards and dangers.

Such as:

Traffic separation scheme.

Restricted area.

Firing ranges.

Historic wrecks.

Radio reporting points etc.

**ALWAYS READ THE CAUTIONS BEFORE USING THE CHART**



**FIGURE 17-9 TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME**

### Colors and Levels

Charts are laid out in the form of a grid, much like land maps, and these co-ordinates enable the navigator to identify a position anywhere on the earth's surface.

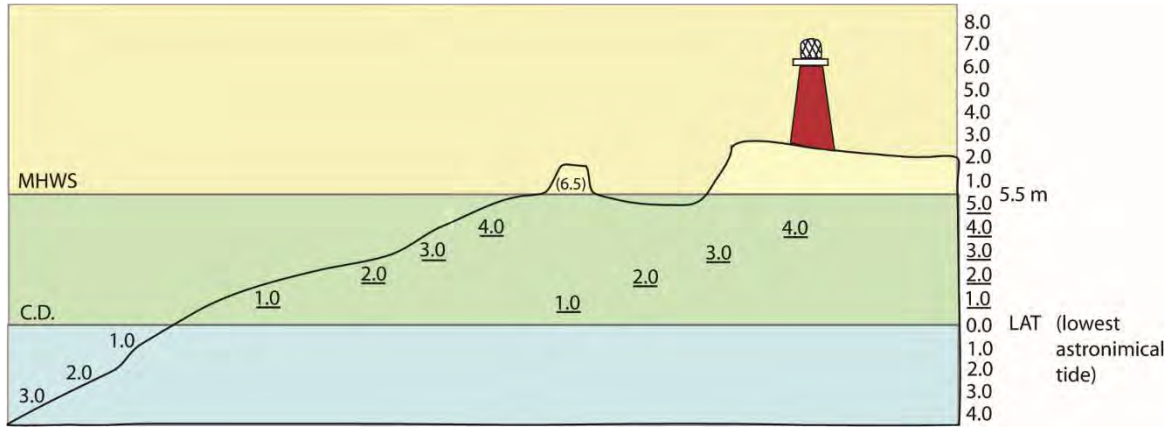


FIGURE 17-10 COLORS & LEVELS

### Latitude

The imaginary lines which run East / West on the earth's surface are called Parallels of Latitude and are graduated from zero degrees at the equator to 90 degrees at the North Pole and 90 degrees at the South Pole.

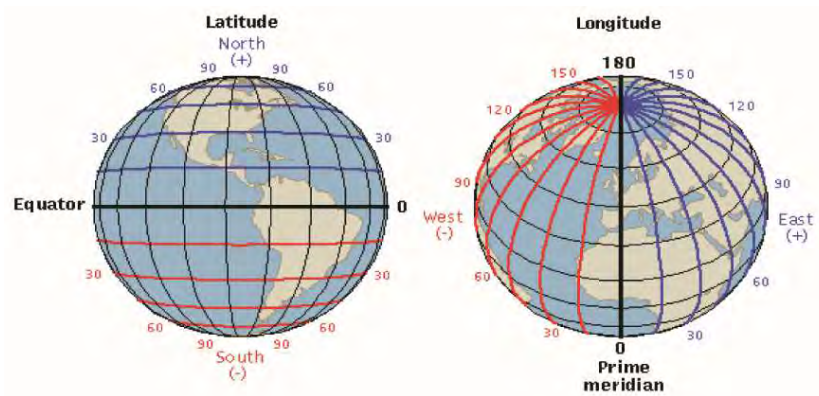


FIGURE 17-11 LATITUDE & LONGITUDE

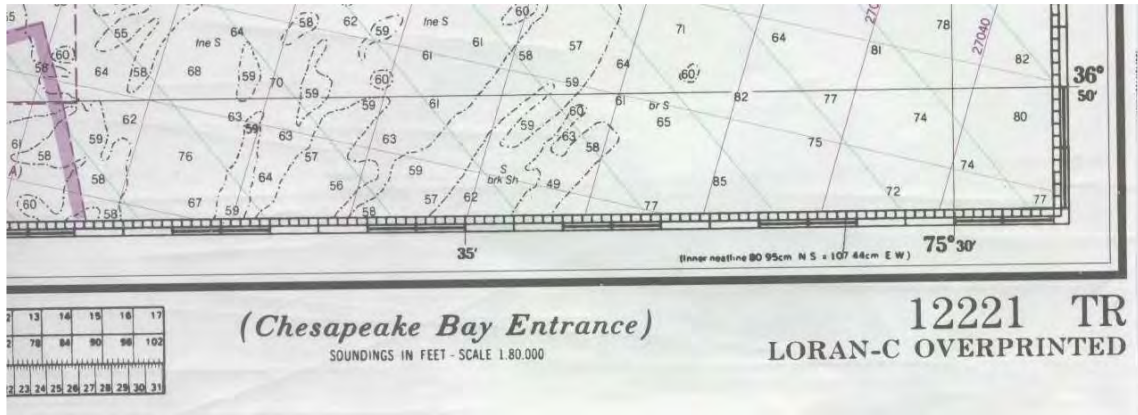
Never use the longitude scale at the top or bottom of charts to measure distance.

### Longitude

The lines, which run North/South from the poles, are called Meridians of Longitude. Longitude is measured East /West (0° - 180°) from the Internationally agreed 0° or "Prime

Meridian” which runs through the Old Royal Observatory building in Greenwich, London, England. Positions are given in either “east” or “west” of Greenwich

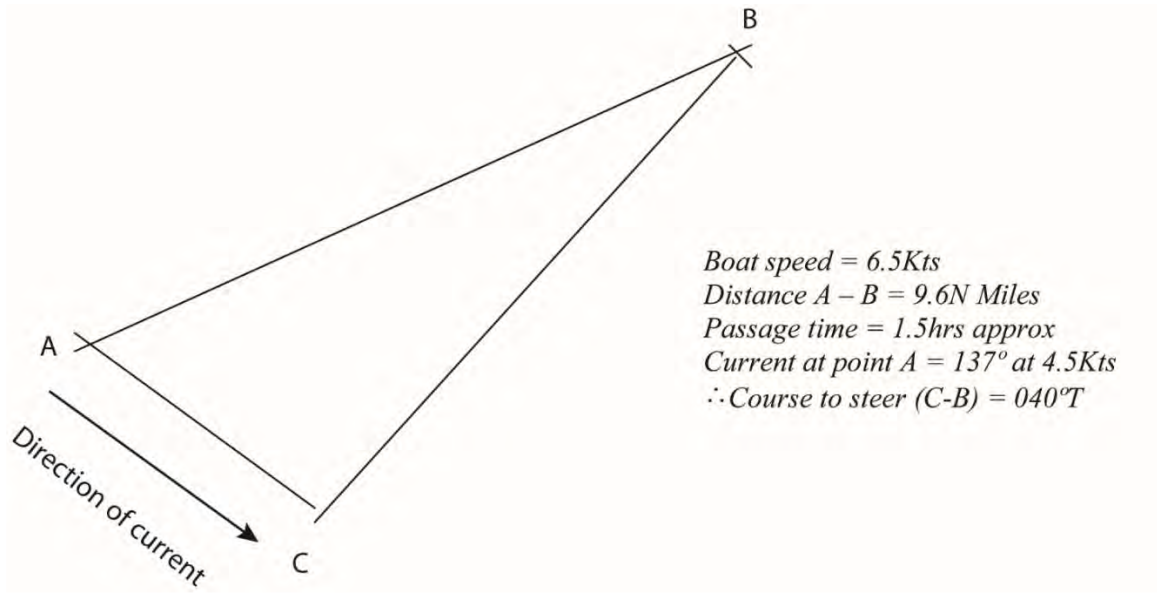
Measuring the angular distance between two points on the surface and a point at the center of the earth derives both latitude and longitude.



### Course Distance

#### Direction

The navigator needs to be able to express (in the appropriate terms) the direction to shape a CTS (course to steer) in order to get a vessel from one location to another as well as obtaining a bearing from the vessel to a specific object. Direction is measured as an angle starting at 000° (True North) and continuing clockwise (through East, South, West and back to North) to



**FIGURE 17-12 DETERMINING COURSE TO STEER**

360° or 000°. The position of a vessel can be described in relation to a feature on the chart by establishing the distance and bearing from that feature. For example, if you were approaching Port Everglades, Ft Lauderdale from due east you could describe your position as being 090° from Port Everglades entrance. (more on this later)

### Time

Time is always expressed using the 24 hour clock format and not “am/pm”. Confusion is avoided in this way. The day starts at 0000 hours (midnight) and progresses through the day to 2400 hours (midnight again).

E.g. 1.00 am is expressed as “Oh one hundred”, 5.20 am as “Oh five twenty”, 1.00 pm as “Thirteen hundred” and 5.20 pm as “Seventeen twenty”. The use of the word ‘hours’ after the numbers is incorrect, e.g. say “fifteen twenty” not “fifteen twenty hours”.



FIGURE 17-13 TWENTY FOUR HOUR

### Speed

In nautical terminology speed is expressed in knots, where 1 knot is one nautical mile per hour. Remember, one knot equals one nautical mile per hour, therefore you would say that the speed of an object is “one knot” it is never expressed as “one knot per hour”. One nautical mile = 1.1 statute mile.

## 17.5 Terminology / Definitions

### Course to Steer (CTS)

The direction to be maintained to a destination point. A course line is drawn on the chart indicating the intended direction of travel; this is the Course to Steer abbreviated to CTS.

### Leeway

Leeway is the amount by which the boat is pushed off her intended track by the wind and may be significant, particularly in a sailboat going to windward.

### Heading

The heading is the direction in which the vessel is pointing as indicated by the ship’s compass. Ideally this should be the same as the course. The heading may be different from the course due to leeway, and due to counteracting tide or current.

## Speed (S)

The speed of the boat through the water. This may be different from speed over the ground.

## Set (SET)

The direction in which the current or tide is affecting the vessel.

## Drift (DFT)

The speed of the current or tide.

## Course Over Ground (COG)

The actual direction in which the boat is moving over the sea-bed, i.e. the ground track. This may differ from the Course through the Water because of the effect of current and leeway.

## Speed Over Ground (SOG)

The actual speed of the boat over the ground. This may differ from the speed of the boat through the water because of the effect of current and leeway.

## Tides

- The cautious navigator requires a detailed knowledge of tides in order to make safe and comfortable passages.
- Tides are the vertical rise and fall in the sea level brought about by the movement of the earth, moon and sun and the effect of the gravitational attraction between these bodies.
- In effect, the combined gravitational pull of the sun and moon causes a “tidal wave” to revolve around the earth.
- Tides originate in the open waters of the earth’s seas and oceans, but are only noticeable and significant close to shore.

**Tidal currents are the horizontal flow of water that result from the “tidal wave” meeting landmasses and shallow areas and are easily observed along beaches, bays, sounds and up rivers.**

## Currents

Currents are the horizontal movements of water from any cause, such as tidal phenomena, prolonged wind activity or river flow. A boat moving through still water where there is no current will be traveling at the same speed and direction over the bottom. When this same boat moves into a body of water that is affected by a current, its speed and direction of travel over the bottom will change.

## Effects of Wind, Tide & Current

Generally, the strongest element affecting a power boat (due to a shallow draft) is wind but close attention will have to be paid to the effect of tide or current on the vessel.

Tides or currents will also have an effect. Pointing upstream will allow greater control but will slow the approach. Conversely, motoring downstream will increase speed over the bottom but may have a detrimental effect on steerageway. Adequate allowances will have to be made once the combination of stream and wind are evaluated.

## 17.6 Navigational Techniques

### Dead Reckoning Position (DR)

- It is not always possible to fix the boat's position at regular intervals, because suitable objects from which to take bearings may not be available.
- In this case the navigator will keep a log of courses steered and distances traveled to enable an approximate position to be maintained however the result will not be as accurate as a fix.
- **When "course steered" and "distance traveled" are taken into account, the position arrived at by this method is called a Dead Reckoning Position (DR)** from deduced reckoning. It is shown on the chart by a dot on the course line with a half circle around it, alongside which is written the time and the log reading in brackets.
- To "work up" a DR position, the plot must be started from a known position. The course steered, converted to true, is plotted and the distance traveled is marked on the line.
- The accuracy of any DR position is only good if there is no current, tide or wind setting the vessel off course, the distance log is accurate and the course steered is accurate.

## Compass Bearings

The main source of position lines is by a compass bearing of a known object ashore or fixed navigational mark. These are usually obtained with the use of a hand-bearing compass, used away from any magnetic influence on the vessel. Write down the bearings as they are taken, and the time and the distance shown on the ship's log. The bearings must then be converted to true before they can be plotted on a chart using the true compass rose and parallel ruler or a plotter.

Bearings can be taken of anything or object that is conspicuous and marked on the chart, such as lighthouses, buoys, beacons, TV antennae, chimneys, water towers, conspicuous buildings and also islands, hills and headlands that are easily identified.

## Line of Position (LOP)

A position line is a line (drawn on the chart) somewhere on which the vessel's position lies. On its own, a single LOP cannot give the vessel's exact position, other information is required, but a single LOP, when plotted on a chart, can confirm that you are/are not close to a point of danger.

## Fixes

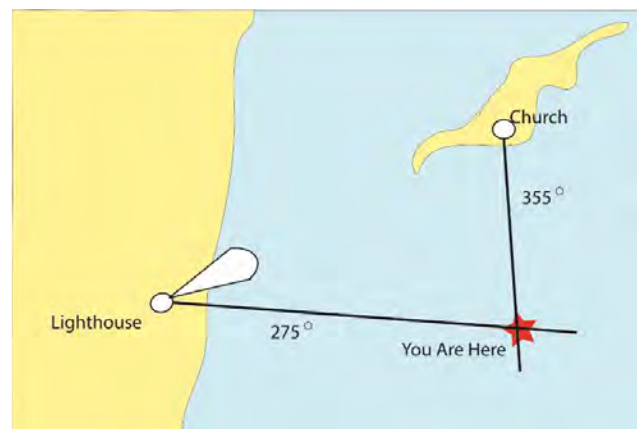
A fix is a reasonably accurate determination of a vessel's position. It requires two or more LOPs, derived from simultaneous compass bearings, crossing each other to establish the position of the vessel fairly accurately. However, a fix that uses only two position lines is not as accurate as one that uses three. It is preferable always to take compass bearings of three different objects when possible.

275 280 285



Take a bearing of a light house using a hand bearing compass. In the picture the bearing to the light house from your position on the boat is  $280^{\circ}$  (C).

**FIGURE 17-14 TAKING A BEARING**



**FIGURE 17-15 BASIC FIX**

### Two Point Fix

The point of intersection of two simultaneous bearings of two charted objects (LOPs) gives a reasonable fix of the position of the vessel.

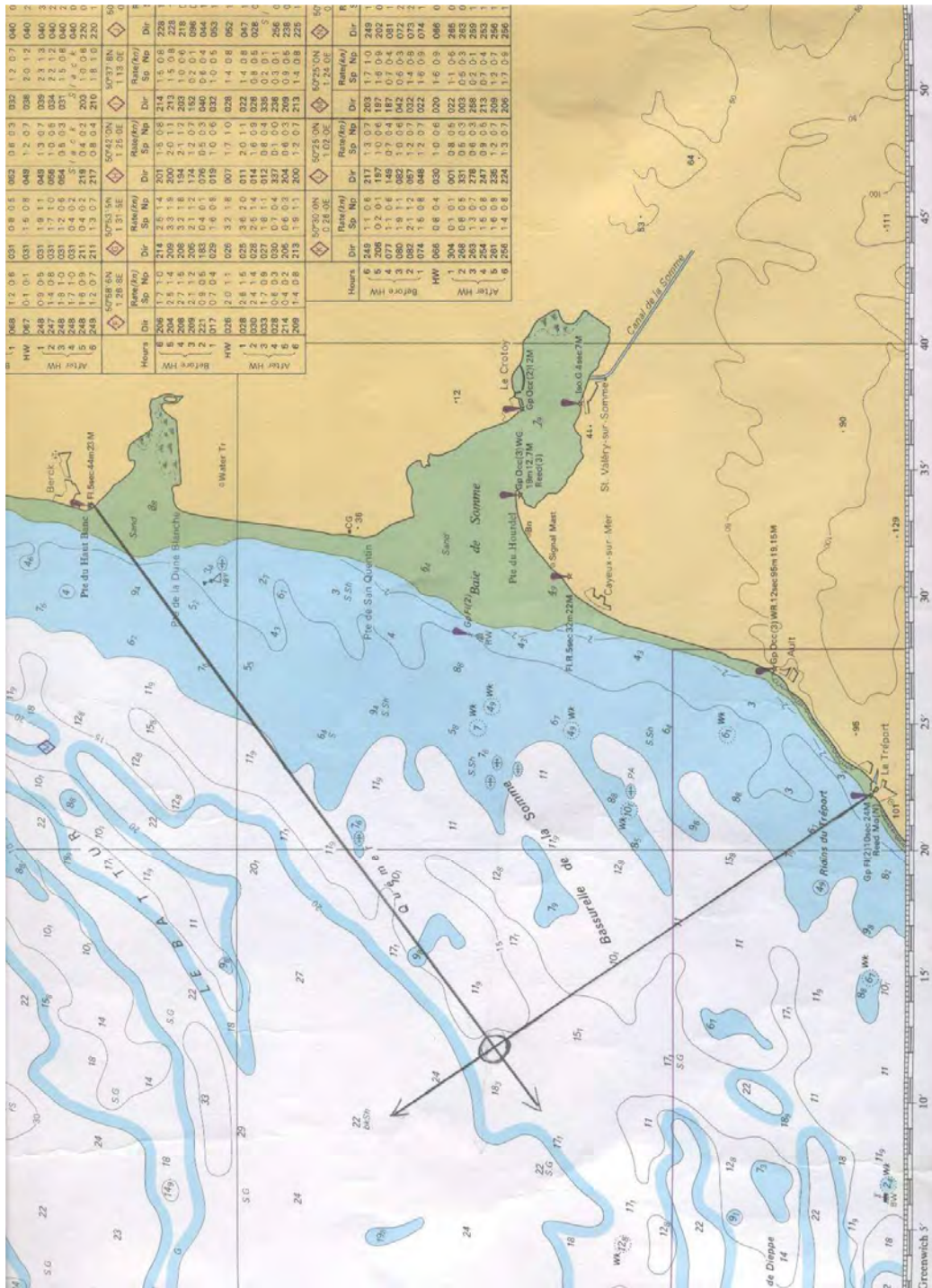


FIGURE 17-16 TWO POINT FIX

### Three Point Fix

Better than a two-point fix for reliability, the third LOP gives greater accuracy or highlights an error in one or both of the other LOPs. If the three LOPs coincide closely it indicates a reasonably accurate fix.

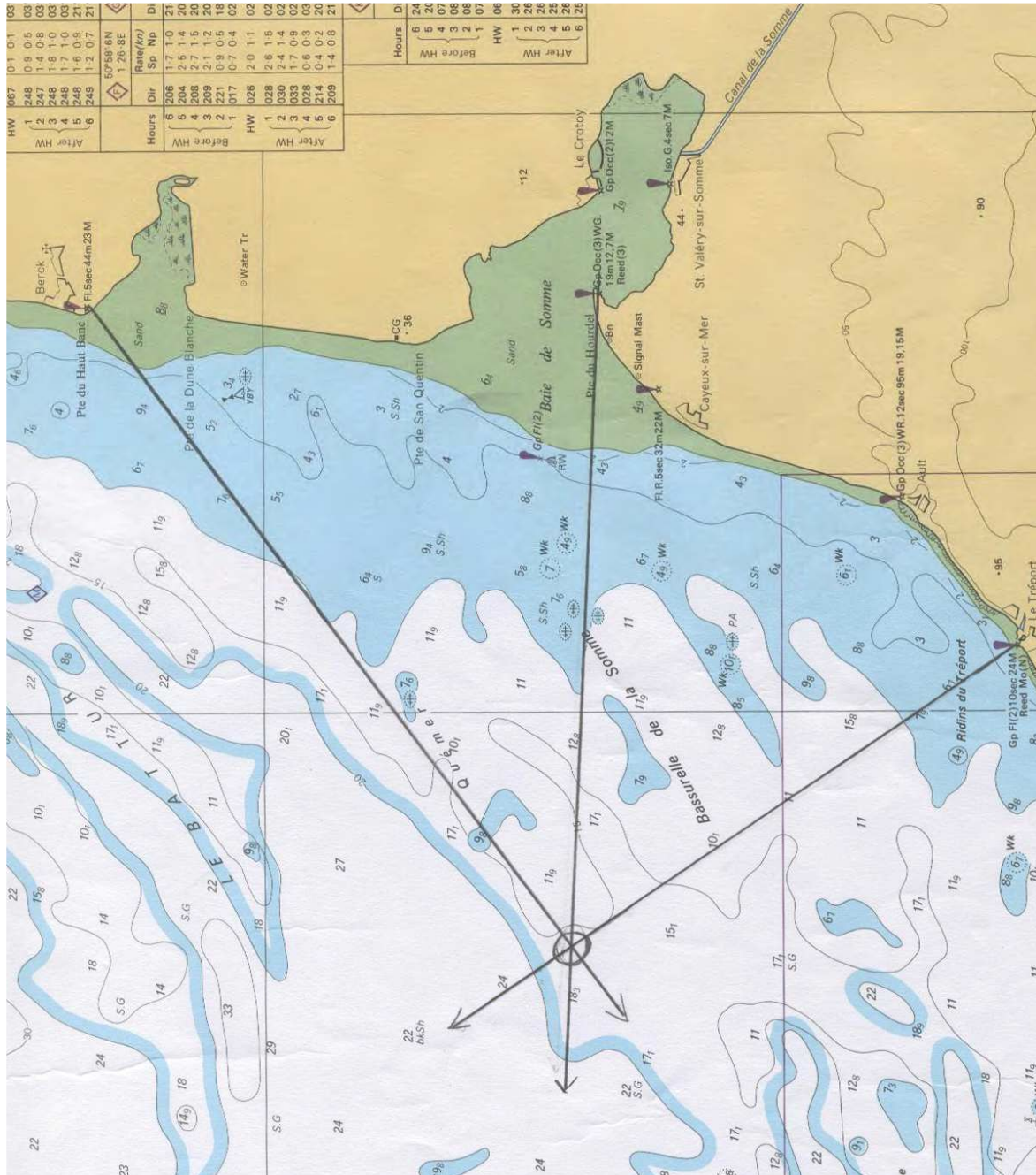


FIGURE 17-17 THREE POINT FIX

## Cocked Hat

When a three-bearing fix is plotted the result will often be a triangle. In the event that the cocked hat, as it is known, is small, it is customary to take the position at the center point of the triangle. When the cocked hat is large, good navigation practice dictates that the navigator should assume his position to be that which is closest to the point of danger. If it is a very large cocked hat the bearings should be re-taken if possible.

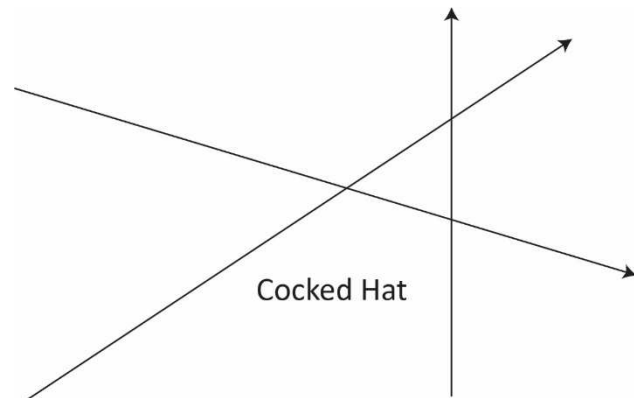


FIGURE 17-18 COCKED HAT

Except in the most favorable conditions, a cocked hat is most likely to be the result due to one or more LOPs not being accurate or as a vessel continues its movement forward, the LOP will change.

## Planning a Fix

Identify all objects on the charts and then identify those same objects on the land.

Make sure that the object you are looking at is the object you plan to use on the chart.

Write down the bearings as they are taken.

Take the bearings as quickly as possible. The bearings on the beam should be taken last because their angle will change more rapidly. The angle between bearings should be at least  $40^\circ$  and less than  $120^\circ$ ; the best angle of cut is about  $90^\circ$  for a two-point fix and about  $60^\circ$  for a three-point fix.

## Running Fix

- A running fix is used when only one object for a fix is visible.
- It is obtained from two separate bearings taken of the same object, combined with the direction and distance traveled by the vessel.
- It is only as accurate as the information that goes into plotting it - in particular, the vessel's course and speed.



FIGURE 17-19 TAKING BEARING WITH HANDHELD COMPASS

- If there is a large amount of current and leeway present, then the running fix's accuracy is greatly reduced, although allowance for both can be made.

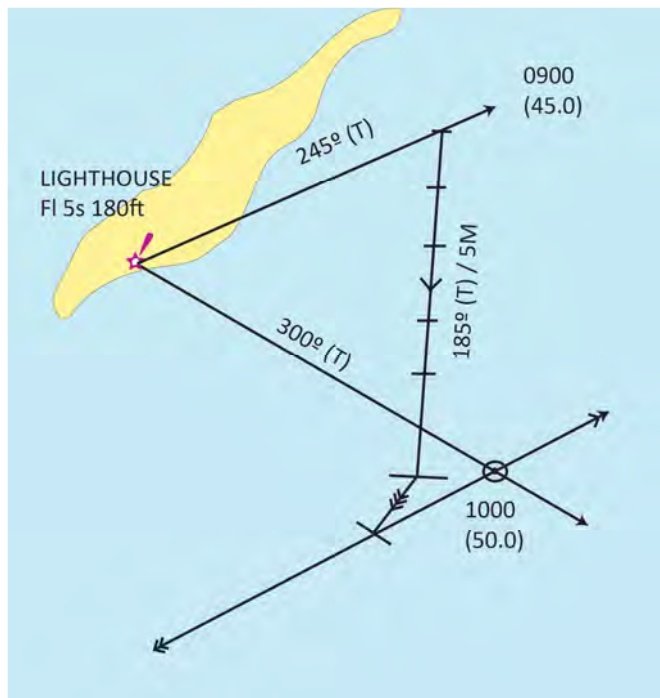
### Procedure for a Running Fix

A position fix can be obtained from only one fixed charted object provided that the boat is moving. The principle is as follows:

- Take a bearing of the object with a hand bearing compass and record the bearing, distance log reading and the time.
- Maintain as steady a course as is possible, until the bearing to the object has changed significantly.
- Take a second bearing of the same object and record the bearing, distance log reading, average course steered and the time.

The running fix is then plotted as follows:

1. Plot the first position line through the object.
2. Plot the second position line through the object. (Your position must lie somewhere along this second position line.)
3. From anywhere on the first position line draw a vector representing the boat's course and the distance the boat travelled between the times of the first and second position lines.
4. From the end of the course/distance vector plot a vector representing the current set and drift, if any, for the time involved.
5. From the end of the current vector draw a line parallel to the first position line. (This line is called a 'transferred position' line and should have two arrowheads drawn at each end)
6. The boat's position is where the transferred position line and the second position line intersect.



**POSITION AT 1000 FROM A RUNNING FIX**

| Time | Log | Course (T) | Remarks   |
|------|-----|------------|---|
| 0900 | 45  |            | Lighthouse. 245° (T)                                  |
| 1000 | 50  | 185°       | Lighthouse 300°(T), current 0900 - 1000 + 215° /1 knt |

1. Plot the first position line, 245° (T) to the light house.
2. Plot the second position line, 300° (T) to the light house.
3. From anywhere on the first position line plot the course steered and the distance travelled from 0900 to 1000: 185° (T) / 5 Miles.
4. Plot the current vector: 215° (T) / 1 Mile. (Assumed current for this example)
5. Draw a line through the end of the current vector, parallel to the first position line; this is called the transferred position line. Mark each end with two arrow heads, or write R FIX, beside the transferred position

The boat's position lies where the transferred position line cuts the second position line. Write the time and log reading beside the fix. To avoid clutter only the time and log reading at the time of the position fix would normally be written on the chart.

## Other Sources of Position Lines

### Transit lines

A range or transit where two identifiable objects on the chart line up, the vessel must be positioned on this line, and this may be crossed with one or more other LOPs to give a fix.



FIGURE 17-21 TRANSIT (AS SEEN FROM BOAT)

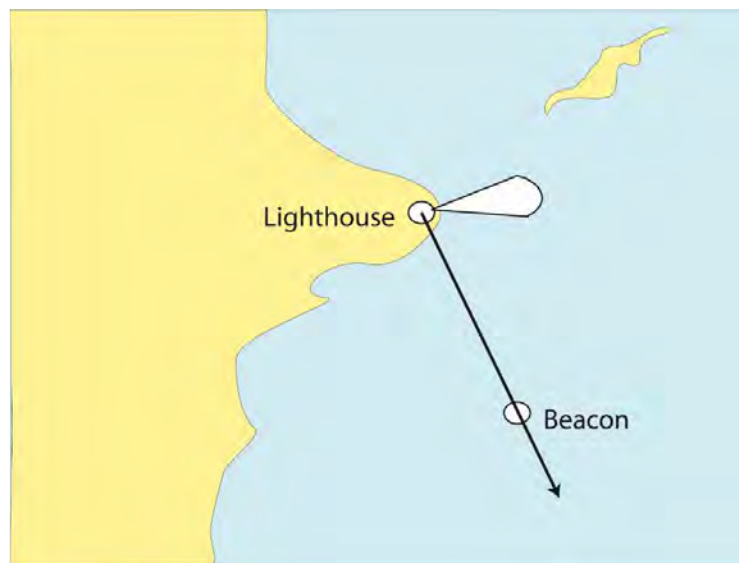


FIGURE 17-20 TRANSIT (AS PLOTTED ON THE CHART)

### .Leading Lines/Marks

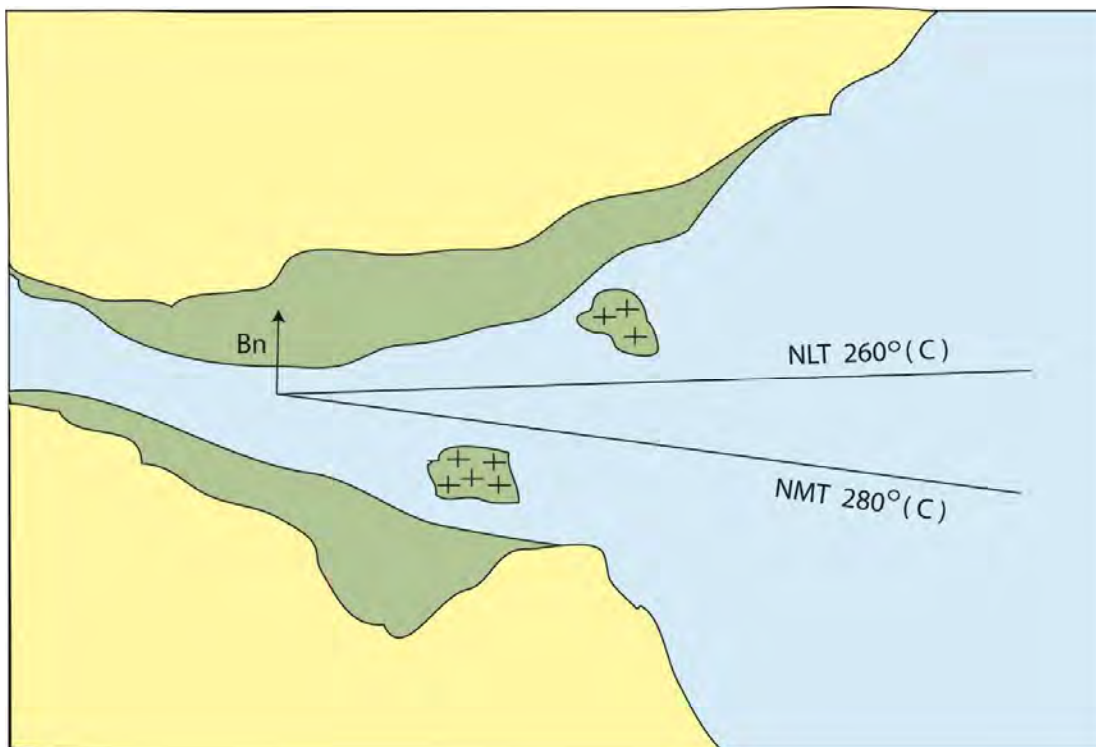
Ideally the leading mark should be a range/transit; however, if one is not available select a compass bearing on an object either directly ahead of (easier to steer on) or astern of (known as a back bearing) the planned course on the chart. If the bearing changes, the vessel is being set off track and will need to alter course to regain track.

### Clearing Lines

When piloting a vessel through a narrow passage or when avoiding a shoal or other hazard it is good practice to use a lead mark or, if not available, a clearing bearing is drawn on the chart and used to steer to ensure safe passage. These lines are bearings that pass a certain distance off a known danger. Ideally they should be as close to parallel to the course steered as possible.

Should either of these be more or less than the bearing specified on the clearing bearing, the vessel will be standing into danger.

When rounding points of land or shoals, allow plenty of room. Cutting corners is dangerous.



**FIGURE 17-22 CLEARING LINE  
(NOT LESS THAN 260 DEGREES (C), NOT MORE THAN 280 DEGREES (C))**

## 17.7 Estimated Position

### Estimated Position (EP)

- In order to improve on the results obtained by a DR plot, further information can be applied as known or estimated.
- By estimating the sideways drift, caused by the wind (leeway), and the effects of the tidal stream or current and applying these to the DR position, the more accurate position arrived at is called an Estimated Position (EP).
- This is shown on the chart by a dot with a square around it. An estimated position is more accurate than a dead reckoning position but not as good as a fix.
- To work up an EP, the plot must be started from a known position. The course steered, converted must be to true and with leeway applied away from the direction the wind is blowing (the boat will have been blown sideways downwind), the water track is then drawn.
- The distance traveled is marked on the line and from the end of the water track a line representing the direction and speed of the current is drawn (set and drift).
- If the tidal stream is from ahead or astern, only the boat's speed over the ground will be affected. If the tidal stream is acting across the course of the boat she will be set sideways at a rate dependent on the set (direction) and rate (speed) of the stream.

**It is important to update regularly the DR/EP, because it shows at a glance, the vessel's approximate position (for emergency purposes). It also allows the navigator to make important decisions as to the proper action to be taken in event of fog, bad weather, equipment failure etc. and, most importantly, it shows the intended course does not place the vessel close to or on a navigational hazard.**

### Depth Contour Navigating

May be used to assist the navigator in determining position by knowing the depth of water under the boat which will coincide with the depth on the chart. Basically the navigator will follow the depth contours of the water and maintain the same depth of water beneath the vessel at all times.

## Log Book

There is an established process and format for chart work and for keeping a record of events and navigational information. All information is recorded in the vessels navigation logbook. This logbook makes up the navigational record of the vessel and is the point of reference for working up DR, EP and fixes. It will contain information concerning weather, sea state, engine hours, barometric pressure and also sometimes a narrative of the voyage. Different navigators have different requirements for what is required and will often design their own. It is possible to buy proprietary brands in boating stores, the use of which is a matter of preference. A typical logbook will have at least the following minimum:

- Time
- Log reading
- Course steered
- Barometric pressure
- Wind speed and direction
- Position in Lat. & Long
- Skipper's name
- Helmsman
- Comments
- Skippers name
- Helmsman
- Comments

IYT produces a Maritime & Coastguard Agency (MCA) approved personal seetime logbook which is a record of an individual's career at sea. It lists the names of the vessels they have worked on, ownership, gross tonnage, length overall, port of registry, distances travelled, ports visited, hours on night watch and position on board the vessel (helmsman, Mate, skipper etc.) This logbook is available on [www.IYTworld.com](http://www.IYTworld.com)



FIGURE 17-23 YACHT (SHIP) LOG



## 17.8 Knowledge Review

1. Who is responsible for producing nautical charts in the U.K., Canada and the U.S.A.?
2. What are “small craft” charts?
3. Name some chart work instruments you would use.
4. Why is the Bretton Plotter the preferred navigational instrument?
5. What are the 3 measurements of depth that you might find on a nautical chart?
6. Name 10 items that a nautical chart contains?
7. What are “special notes, cautions and warnings”?
8. What is a compass rose?
9. What is a tidal diamond?
10. What is listed in “chart symbols and abbreviations”?
11. Describe the difference between large and small scale charts
12. What is the difference between latitude and longitude?
13. On which scale do you measure distance on a nautical chart?
14. Describe what is meant by the 24 hour clock?
15. What is Greenwich England renowned for ?
16. Describe the following: CTS, leeway, heading, speed, set, draft, smg, sog, tides, currents, DR, EP, 2 point fix, 3 point fix, cocked hat, running fix, transit lines.
17. What is the “yacht log book” and what information is to be logged in?
18. What are tides and currents and how do they affect plotting a course?

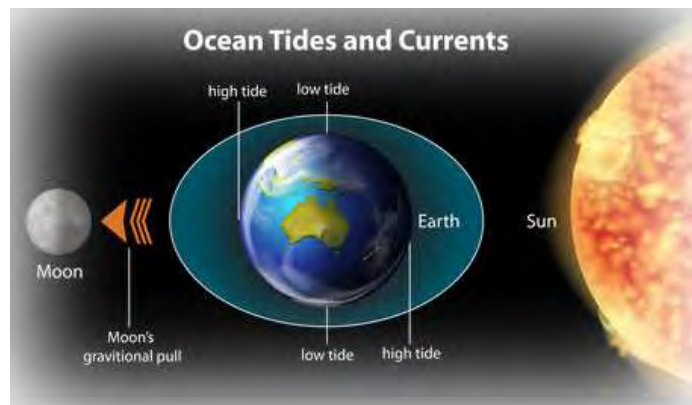
## Module 18 TIDES & CURRENTS

### 18.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO GIVE THE STUDENT AN UNDERSTANDING OF TIDES AND CURRENTS AND THE CAUSES OF THESE. IT ALSO COVERS TIDAL DEFINITIONS, TIDAL HEIGHTS AND DEFINITIONS OF TERMS.

### 18.2 Tides

- The navigator requires a detailed knowledge and understanding of tides in order that they may be used to help in making a safe and secure passage.
- Tides have two significant effects for the navigator, and these change constantly. They are depth of water and the speed of horizontal flow.
- In most places there are two tidal cycles every day, comprising two high tides and two low tides, and this phenomenon is known as a semi diurnal tide. A few places have only a single tidal cycle each day, this is known as a diurnal tide. Still fewer places have a combination known as mixed tides.
- Tides are the vertical rise and fall in the sea level brought about by the movement of the earth, moon and sun and the effect of the gravitational attraction between these bodies.
- In effect the combined gravitational pull of the sun and moon causes a “tidal wave” to revolve around the earth. Tides originate in the open waters of the earth’s seas and oceans, but are only noticeable and significant close to shore.

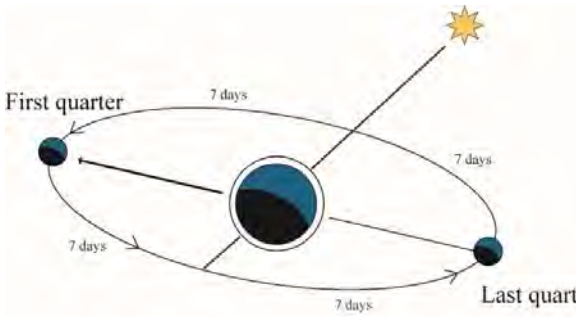


- Tidal currents are the horizontal flow of water that result from the “tidal wave” meeting landmasses and shallow areas and are easily observed along beaches, bays, sounds and rivers.

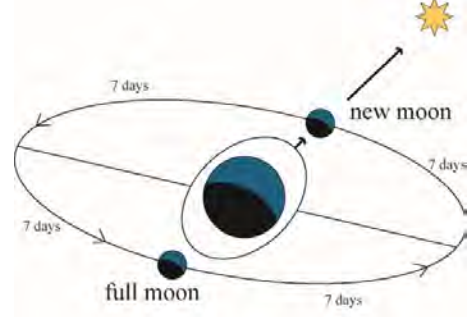
### Cause of tides and currents

- Tides result from the differences between centrifugal forces and gravitational forces of mainly the moon and earth. (However to a lesser extent the sun also exerts gravitational pull).
- Although the mass of the moon is only a tiny fraction of that of the sun, it is much closer to the earth and its pull is about twice as powerful. As a result, tides are mainly lunar.
- This gravitational pull from the moon “pulls” the surface of the sea towards it causing a “bulge”. As the moon rotates around the earth the gravitational pull causes the water to bulge, the resulting wave is then carried around the earth. On the opposite side of the earth the moon’s gravitational pull is diminished, which allows the water to move away from the earth causing a second bulge.
- Tidal rhythm therefore is generally in tune with the rotation of the moon around the earth. Since this “lunar day” is 24 hours and 50 minutes, the two high and two low waters each day occur about 50 minutes later than the corresponding tides of the previous day.
- In the course of any one lunar month, the sun, moon and earth are lined up twice, technically, in conjunction. The new moon is when the order is sun, moon, earth and full when the order is sun, earth, moon. In both cases, the suns gravitational pull lines up with that of the moon, which results in higher tidal ranges called “spring tides”.
- Similarly, twice during the course of a lunar month, the relative positions of the moon and sun are at 90° to each other. In this instance the sun counteracts to some extent the pull of the moon, which results in lower tidal ranges called neap tides.

Spring tides produce higher high water and lower low water, whilst neap tides produce lower high water and higher low water. Because of the greater volume of water moving between high and low water, the rate of flow of the current is much greater during a spring tide. Calculating this rate of flow will be dealt with in later modules.



Neap Tides  
**FIGURE 18-1 NEAP TIDES**

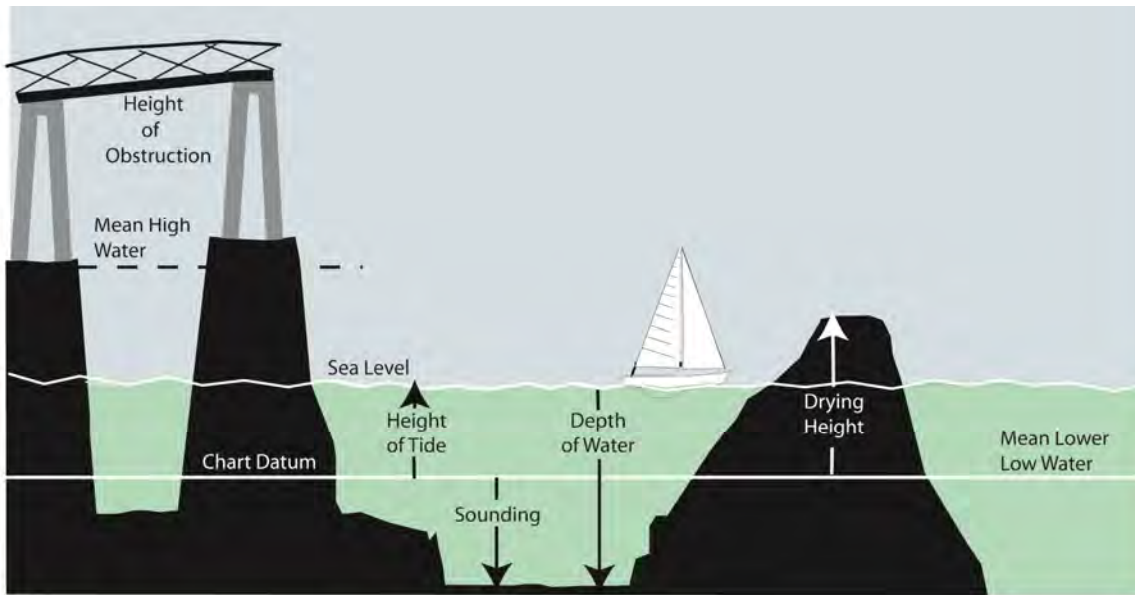


Spring Tides  
**FIGURE 18-2 SPRING TIDES**

### 18.3 Tidal Definitions and Tidal Heights

#### Chart Datum

Chart Datum is the reference point from which all depths and drying heights or lowest level of tide are measured on a nautical chart. British Admiralty metric charts use Lowest Astronomical Tide (LAT). American charts commonly use Mean Lower Low Water (MLLW).



Tidal Height Definitions  
**FIGURE 18-3 TIDAL HEIGHT DEFINITIONS**

**Charted Depth**

The distance below chart datum of a feature is referred to as “soundings”.

**Drying Height**

This is the height of an object or feature above chart datum; these features such as rocks or submerged objects may be uncovered at low water.

**Duration**

This is the interval of time between successive high and low tide.

**Height of Tide**

This is the height of water above Chart datum and is found by using the tide tables to find high or low water and then applying the corrections derived from the appropriate tables.

**High Water**

The time at which a tide reaches its maximum height. The tide tables predict the times that high and low water are expected to occur as well as the heights expected. (These predictions assume normal weather conditions)

**Low Water**

The time at which a tide reaches its minimum height.

**Lowest Astronomical Tide (LAT)**

LAT is the lowest tide level that can be predicted to occur under normal meteorological conditions and so using this datum there will rarely be less water than is shown on the chart.

**Mean High Water (MHW)**

This is the average height of high waters for a particular place: this average is worked out over a 19 year period. This is the point from which the height of structure such as bridges and lighthouses are measured.

**Mean Lower Low Water (MLLW)**

The average of the lower low waters of each tidal day over a 19 year period. Used as Chart Datum on US charts. Using this datum, there will often be less water than is shown on the chart.

**Spring Tides**

A spring tide has a “higher high water” and a “lower low water” than the average tide for the area, therefore, a spring tide has a big range. Two spring tides occur every lunar month, just after the full and new moons. The spring tide features the “higher high water” and the “lower low water” and therefore much faster tidal flows.

**Neap Tide**

Neap tides occur about a week after spring tides and feature smaller ranges therefore slower flows.

**Range**

The difference between the height of successive high and low waters, this is found by subtracting the height of low water from the height of high water.

**Primary Ports**

These are usually larger ports that have their own tide tables published which contain complete tidal information with the time and height of every tide.

**Secondary Ports**

These are places that do not have their own tide tables so the information has to be calculated by using the Tide Differences Table.

**Rule of twelfths**

In most places where the tide has a regular cycle there is a simple way to estimate the height of the tide. It is important to note that this is a very rough approximation and will only work where the rise and fall are uniform over a six hour period. The rule of twelfths works on the basis that the rate of rise or fall is slow at the beginning and end of the cycle but reach a maximum at mid tide.

To reflect this, we take the range and divide it into twelfths, then say that in the first hour the tide will be as follows:

|          |                   |                               |
|----------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st hour | 1/12 of the range | 1/12 cumulative rise or fall  |
| 2nd hour | 2/12 of the range | 3/12 cumulative rise or fall  |
| 3rd hour | 3/12 of the range | 6/12 cumulative rise or fall  |
| 4th hour | 3/12 of the range | 9/12 cumulative rise or fall  |
| 5th hour | 2/12 of the range | 11/12 cumulative rise or fall |
| 6th hour | 1/12 of the range | 12/12 cumulative rise or fall |

Examples of tidal height problems

**Height for a time, time for a height**

**Remember that all the problems which involve working with tidal height problems will require that one of two things to be found:**

- **the Height of Tide at a specific time,**  
**OR**
- **the time for a specific Height of Tide**

What is the latest time during the falling tide on the evening of June the 1st that a yacht can pass over an area near Boston shown on the chart as having a drying height of 1 ft.? The yacht has a draft of 4 ft. and an extra clearance of 1 ft. will be allowed for safety.

A quick sketch is usually a help when you are trying to understand the problem. Here, the height of water to allow the boat to pass must be:

- 1 ft. to cover the drying height
- + 1 ft. for the safety clearance
- + 4 ft. for the boat's draft.

The height of tide required to cover in height of 1 ft.

|                                |              |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| Drying height 1 ft.            | 1 ft.        |
| + the draft of 4 ft.           | 4 ft.        |
| + the clearance of 1 ft.       | 1 ft.        |
| <b>Height of tide required</b> | <b>6 ft.</b> |

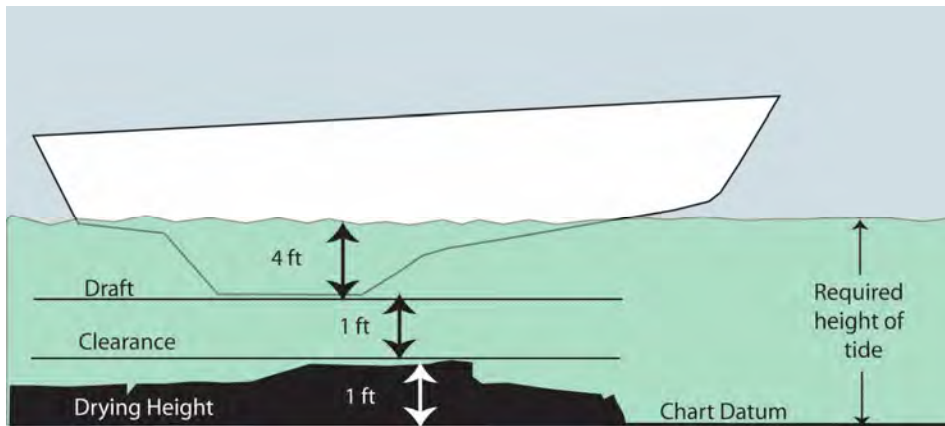


FIGURE 18-4 TIDAL HEIGHT

## 18.4 CURRENTS

Currents are the horizontal movements of water from any cause, such as tidal phenomena, prolonged wind activity or river flow. A boat moving at a speed through still water where there is no current will be traveling at the same speed and direction over the bottom. When this same boat moves into a body of water that is affected by a current, its speed and direction of travel over the bottom will change. Before we look at how to work out the allowances that have to be made for current we need to understand the terms involved.

## Definition of Terms - Currents

### **Flood Stream**

This usually refers to the flow of water associated with an incoming tide.

### **Ebb Stream**

The “falling” or outgoing tide is called the EBB, so a tide may be said to be ebbing or flooding dependent upon whether it is going out or coming in.

### **Slack Water**

Slack is the period between the flood and ebb tides when the movement of the water tails off, sometimes to a complete stop before the tide turns and flows in a new direction.

### **Spring and Neap Rates**

The speed of the currents associated with Spring tides are greater than those of Neaps because of the greater volume of water flowing between high and low water at Springs.

### **Current Tables**

These are published tables containing the data collected by the various organisations. Based on your voyage plan you must obtain information supplied by the U.S. National Ocean Service (NOS), The Canadian Hydrographic Service (CHS), The Australian Hydrographic Service and The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to name a few. REEDS Nautical Almanac publishes tide tables and information for the East Coast of North America.

### **Direction**

The information about direction is always given in degrees true so can be plotted directly on the chart without correction.

### **Rate**

The rate is the speed, given in knots, at which the current is moving. Normally two rates are given, one for springs and one for neaps.

# CHESAPEAKE BAY ENTRANCE

| CURRENT TABLE 2004  |          |           |           | 36°58.80'N 75°59.88'W              |          |           |           |          |      |      |     |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------------------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|------|------|-----|
| Eastern Time (75°W) |          |           |           | Corrected for Daylight Saving Time |          |           |           |          |      |      |     |
| MAY                 |          |           |           | JU                                 |          |           |           |          |      |      |     |
| Slack time          | Max time | Fld knots | Ebb knots | Slack time                         | Max time | Fld knots | Ebb knots |          |      |      |     |
| <b>1</b>            | 0016     |           | 1.1       | <b>16</b>                          | 0153     |           | 1.2       | <b>1</b> | 0136 |      | 1.4 |
| Sa                  | 0330     | 0601      | 0.7       | Su                                 | 0502     | 0709      | 0.6       | Tu       | 0448 | 0657 | 0.8 |
|                     | 0855     | 1237      | 1.3       |                                    | 0959     | 1345      | 1.2       |          | 0937 | 1330 | 1.6 |
|                     | 1558     | 1838      | 0.9       |                                    | 1648     | 1936      | 1.0       |          | 1636 | 1926 | 1.5 |
|                     | 2154     |           |           |                                    | 2314     |           |           |          | 2308 |      |     |
| <b>2</b>            | 0108     |           | 1.2       | <b>17</b>                          | 0241     |           | 1.3       | <b>2</b> | 0230 |      | 1.6 |
| Su                  | 0420     | 0642      | 0.8       | M                                  | 0547     | 0750      | 0.6       | W        | 0538 | 0748 | 0.8 |
|                     | 0937     | 1319      | 1.5       |                                    | 1032     | 1421      | 1.2       | ○        | 1030 | 1423 | 1.7 |
|                     | 1631     | 1915      | 1.2       |                                    | 1721     | 2011      | 1.0       |          | 1723 | 2016 | 1.6 |
|                     | 2243     |           |           |                                    | 2351     |           |           |          | 2358 |      |     |
| <b>3</b>            | 0159     |           | 1.4       | <b>18</b>                          | 0322     |           | 1.3       | <b>3</b> | 0321 |      | 1.7 |
| M                   | 0509     | 0726      | 0.9       | Tu                                 | 0631     | 0833      | 0.5       | Th       | 0629 | 0843 | 0.9 |
|                     | 1019     | 1403      | 1.6       |                                    | 1104     | 1454      | 1.2       | ○        | 1124 | 1516 | 1.7 |
|                     | 1707     | 1956      | 1.4       |                                    | 1754     | 2049      | 1.1       |          | 1813 | 2108 | 1.6 |
|                     | 2329     |           |           |                                    |          |           |           |          |      |      |     |
| <b>4</b>            | 0250     |           | 1.6       | <b>19</b>                          | 0028     | 0358      | 1.2       | <b>4</b> | 0049 | 0411 | 1.7 |
| Tu                  | 0557     | 0815      | 0.9       | W                                  | 0714     | 0915      | 0.5       | F        | 0723 | 0938 | 0.9 |
| ○                   | 1103     | 1449      | 1.7       | ●                                  | 1137     | 1525      | 1.2       |          | 1220 | 1607 | 1.7 |
|                     | 1748     | 2042      | 1.5       |                                    | 1830     | 2126      | 1.0       |          | 1907 | 2201 | 1.6 |
| <b>5</b>            | 0016     | 0338      | 1.7       | <b>20</b>                          | 0104     | 0432      | 1.2       | <b>5</b> | 0142 | 0502 | 1.7 |
|                     | 0648     | 0906      | 0.9       |                                    | 0757     | 0956      | 0.5       |          | 0819 | 1031 | 0.9 |

FIGURE 18-5 CURRENT TABLE EXAMPLE

## Tidal Current Charts

In places where the direction and rate of flow varies in a given area or is too complex to be conveyed purely in figures, a chart is often published, this is called a "Tidal Stream Atlas". This is actually a series of chartlets, each of which represents one hour in the life of the tidal cycle. The direction of the current is shown with arrows, each of which will have a figure showing the associated rate. These have the advantage of showing the navigator a picture of the tide and how it is flowing.



FIGURE 18-6 HARBOUR TIDES EXAMPLE

**Using the Current Tables**

The navigator needs to be able to make allowances for the current so he needs information about these currents. As with the tidal heights this information is found in a nautical almanac like REEDS under the heading of Current tables.

The Current tables give the following information.

- The time of slack water
- The time and rate of the maximum flow of the flood tide.
- The time and rate of the maximum flow of the ebb tide.
- The direction of flow of both the flood and ebb tides in °T.

In the example shown, taken from the current table for The Race, Long Island Sound, we can see the following:

- The current on the flood runs in the direction of 302°T and the current on the ebb runs in the direction of 112°T.

Taking April 1st as an example we see that:

- Slack water will occur at 02.21, 08.48, 14.56 and 21.03.
- The ebb reaches a maximum speed of 3.8 knots at 05.28 and 3.3 knots at 17.54.
- The flood reaches a maximum speed of 3.1 knots at 11.35 and 3.1 knots at 23.57.

**THE RACE, LONG ISLAND SOU**

Flood 302°T Ebb 112°T

Corrected for daylight saving time

|           | Slack<br>time | Max<br>Time | Flood<br>Knots | Ebb<br>Knots |           | Slack<br>Time |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|-----------|---------------|
|           | 0221          | 0528        |                | 3.8          |           | 0244          |
| <b>1</b>  | 0848          | 1135        | 3.1            |              | <b>16</b> | 0916          |
| <b>W</b>  | 1456          | 1754        |                | 3.3          | <b>Th</b> | 1518          |
|           | 2103          | 2357        | 3.1            |              |           | 2122          |
|           | 0318          | 0625        |                | 3.4          |           |               |
| <b>2</b>  | 0947          | 1233        | 2.8            |              | <b>17</b> | 0327          |
| <b>Th</b> | 1557          | 1853        |                | 2.9          | <b>F</b>  | 1003          |
|           | 2205          |             |                |              |           | 1606          |
|           |               |             |                |              |           | 2212          |

*Extract of current table for  
The Race, Long Island Sound.*

**FIGURE 18-7 CURRENT TABLE EXAMPLE LONG ISLAND SOUND**

## Tidal Atlas and Tidal Diamonds

A tidal atlas is used to predict the direction and speed of tidal currents.

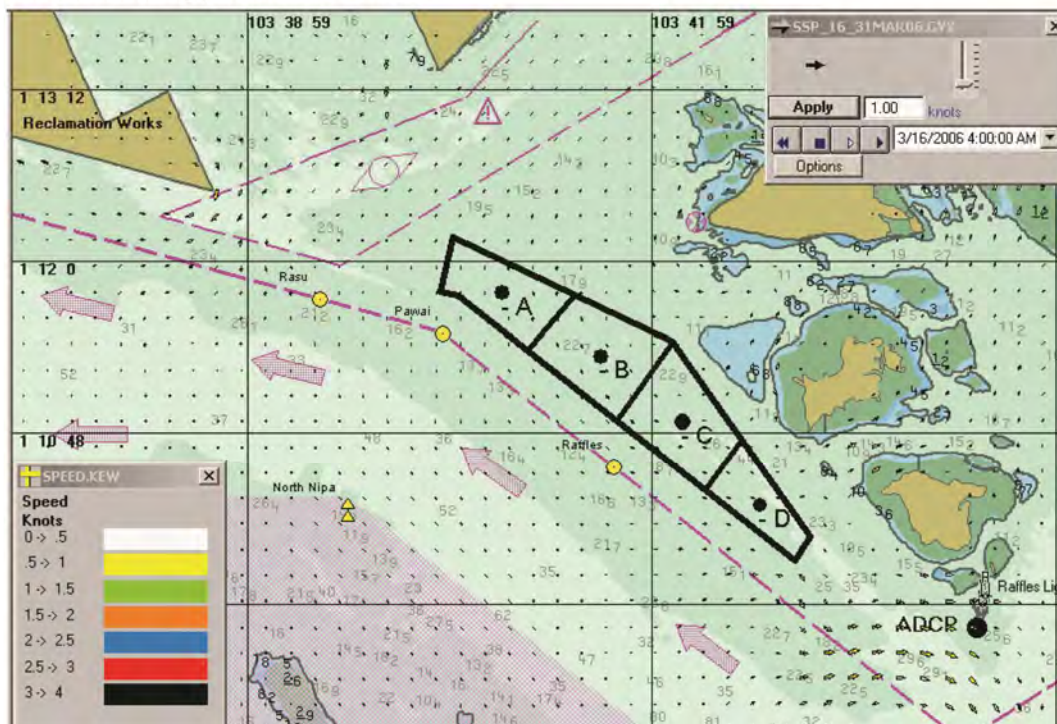
A tidal atlas usually consists of a set of 12 or 13 diagrams, one for each hour of the tidal cycle, for a coastal region. Each diagram uses arrows to indicate the direction of the flow at that time. The speed of the flow may be indicated by numbers on each arrow or by the length of the arrow. Areas of slack water may be indicated by no arrows or the words “slack water”.

View Tidal Atlas at Sudong Anchorage

Please read & understand the methodology of how the tidal current information is derived.

The tidal current information for the selected area is a simulated current only.  
 The model bathymetry is generated based on the seabed information in navigational charts and sounding data.  
 The model is calibrated and validated based on the measured current during a joint survey carried out in 1978 by four countries.  
 The model was further customized and developed for the selected area. The customized model was further validated using a recent Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler (“ADCP”) transect. Any inaccuracy in the measured current may affect the accuracy of the simulated current.  
 The non-tidal current caused by surface wind, temperature and atmospheric pressure included in the simulation is a yearly average value.  
 The actual non-tidal current may vary according to these conditions.  
 The current conditions in the selected area are inherently complex and other factors may affect the accuracy of the simulation.

Tidal Times are in Singapore Time(GMT + 8 hours)



To view tidal atlas for other times on 16/03/2006, please click on the relevant link below.

All links given below are in Singapore Time (GMT+0800 hours) Disclaimer

|      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 0000 | 0030 | 0100 | 0130 | 0200 | 0230 | 0300 | 0330 |
| 0400 | 0430 | 0500 | 0530 | 0600 | 0630 | 0700 | 0730 |
| 0800 | 0830 | 0900 | 0930 | 1000 | 1030 | 1100 | 1130 |
| 1200 | 1230 | 1300 | 1330 | 1400 | 1430 | 1500 | 1530 |
| 1600 | 1630 | 1700 | 1730 | 1800 | 1830 | 1900 | 1930 |
| 2000 | 2030 | 2100 | 2130 | 2200 | 2230 | 2300 | 2330 |

FIGURE 18-8 DIGITAL TIDAL ATLAS EXAMPLE

An alternative to a tidal atlas is a nautical chart that provides tidal diamonds. Tidal Diamonds are symbols on British Admiralty Charts that indicate the direction and speed of tidal streams.

The symbols consist of a letter of the Roman alphabet in a rhombus, printed in purple ink. On any particular chart each tidal diamond will have a unique letter starting from "A" and continuing alphabetically.

Somewhere on the chart, generally on land, will be a Tidal Diamond table. This contains a grid of thirteen rows and three columns for each Diamond. The rows are the hours of the tidal cycle showing the 6 hours from low water to high water, high water itself and the 6 hours from high water to low water. The columns show the bearing of the tidal stream and its speed, in knots, at both spring tide and neap tide. The times on the table are related to the high water of the Standard Port displayed on the table.

**Tidal and current calculations will be covered in greater detail in the IYT Yachtmaster Coastal and IYT Yachtmaster Offshore courses.**

|           |    | <b>A</b> 50 42'.3N<br>0 26'.5E | <b>B</b> 50 53'.0N<br>1 00'.0E | <b>C</b> 51 01'.0N<br>1 10'.0E |         |           |         |
|-----------|----|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|-----------|---------|
| Hours     |    | Dir                            | Sp Np                          | Dir                            | Sp Np   | Dir       | Sp Np   |
| Before HW | 6  | 248                            | 0.8 0.4                        | 213                            | 1.6 0.9 | 224       | 0.9 0.5 |
|           | 5  | 067                            | 0.5 0.3                        | 214                            | 2.1 1.2 | 239       | 1.0 0.6 |
|           | 4  | 068                            | 1.9 1.0                        | 215                            | 1.8 1.1 | 235       | 1.1 0.6 |
|           | 3  | 071                            | 2.6 1.5                        | 213                            | 0.9 0.5 | 242       | 0.6 0.4 |
|           | 2  | 069                            | 2.3 1.3                        | S l a c k                      |         | S l a c k |         |
|           | 1  | 068                            | 1.2 0.6                        | 033                            | 0.8 0.5 | 052       | 0.6 0.3 |
|           | HW | 067                            | 0.1 0.1                        | 032                            | 1.5 0.8 | 049       | 1.2 0.7 |
| After HW  | 1  | 248                            | 0.9 0.5                        | 031                            | 1.9 1.1 | 049       | 1.3 0.7 |
|           | 2  | 247                            | 1.4 0.8                        | 030                            | 1.7 1.0 | 056       | 1.0 0.5 |
|           | 3  | 251                            | 1.8 1.0                        | 031                            | 1.2 0.6 | 054       | 0.5 0.3 |
|           | 4  | 253                            | 1.7 1.0                        | 032                            | 0.4 0.2 | S l a c k |         |
|           | 5  | 250                            | 1.6 0.9                        | 211                            | 0.4 0.2 | 219       | 0.4 0.2 |
|           | 6  | 249                            | 1.2 0.7                        | 212                            | 1.3 0.7 | 217       | 0.8 0.4 |

FIGURE 18-9 TIDAL DIAMOND CHART EXAMPLE

## 18.5 Knowledge Review

1. What influence does the moon have on tides?
2. Describe: chart datum, charted depth, drying height, duration, height of tide, high water, low water, LAT, MHW, MLLW, spring tides, neap tides, range, primary ports, secondary ports, rule of twelfths.
3. Describe the following g terms as they relate to currents: flood stream, ebb stream, slack water, neap and spring rates, current tables, direction, tidal current charts, tidal atlas, tidal diamonds.

## Module 19 BUOYAGE

### 19.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO UNDERSTAND THE IMPORTANCE OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUOYAGE SYSTEM WITH PARTICULAR REFERENCE TO IALA REGIONS A & B AND WHAT THIS MEANS FOR THE NAVIGATOR, & THE USE AND IDENTIFICATION OF CARDINAL MARKS.

The International Association of Lighthouse Authorities (IALA) controls the buoyage system internationally and sets out these rules and regulations.

There are two main systems or regions. So depending on where you are sailing or navigating you must know which system is in use. This is because, unfortunately, the systems are not standardised and, in fact, the systems used in Regions A and Zone B are often opposite.

**IALA Region A - covers Europe and most of the world (except as noted in Zone B below)**

**IALA Region B - covers North and South America, Japan, Korea and the Philippines and the Caribbean.**

The IALA system involves the use of two major buoyage systems, Lateral and Cardinal.

- **Lateral marks** indicate the edges of a channel.
- **Cardinal marks** indicate the direction of safe navigation at a dangerous spot.
- **Safe water marks** indicate the deep water and open end of a channel.
- **Special marks** indicate administrative areas, such as speed restrictions or water skiing areas.
- **Isolated danger marks** indicate a hazard to shipping.
- **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy** is a new buoy introduced in 2006, marking a new wreck. It replaces the double cardinal or lateral marks (IALA Recommendation O-133).

Each type of mark has a distinctive colour, shape and possibly a characteristic light.

## 19.2 Lateral System (IALA regions A & B)

**The lateral system uses coloured buoys and beacons to guide boats through channels and past dangers.**

To help ensure safety and to clearly mark out obstacles and hazards that exist both in and under the water, there exists an internationally agreed sets of marks and lights.

**Region A (IALA A)** covers all of Europe and most of the rest of the world. The most important is that which deals with the **"direction of buoyage" which defines on which side of a channel the Lateral or Channel Buoys or Marks are placed.**

**Under IALA A,** red buoys or marks are on the left hand side of the channel as you enter a port when proceeding in from the sea.

**Under IALA B** red buoys or marks are on the right hand side of the channel when proceeding in from the sea i.e. going into a harbour (red right returning). These Lateral or Channel Marks define the limits of the navigable water across a channel. It is not wise to attempt to pass between a channel mark and the shore behind unless you have local knowledge of the depth of the water and any hazards in the location.



Marks can either be a buoy floating in the water or a pole set into the rocks or sea bed which will be painted in the correct colour and carry the required shape at the top.

### **For IALA A:**

Port Marks are Red in colour, flash a red light at night and are Can Shaped and indicate the left hand (port) side of the channel.

Starboard Marks are Green in colour, flash a green light at night and are Cone Shaped and indicate the right hand (starboard) side of the channel.

### **For IALA B:**

Port Marks are Green in colour, flash a green light at night and are Can Shaped and indicate the left hand (port) side of the channel.



Starboard Marks are Red in colour, flash a red light at night and are Cone Shaped and indicate the right hand (starboard) side of the channel.



**FIGURE 19-1 CAN  
SHAPE MARK**



**FIGURE 19-2  
CONE SHAPE MARK**

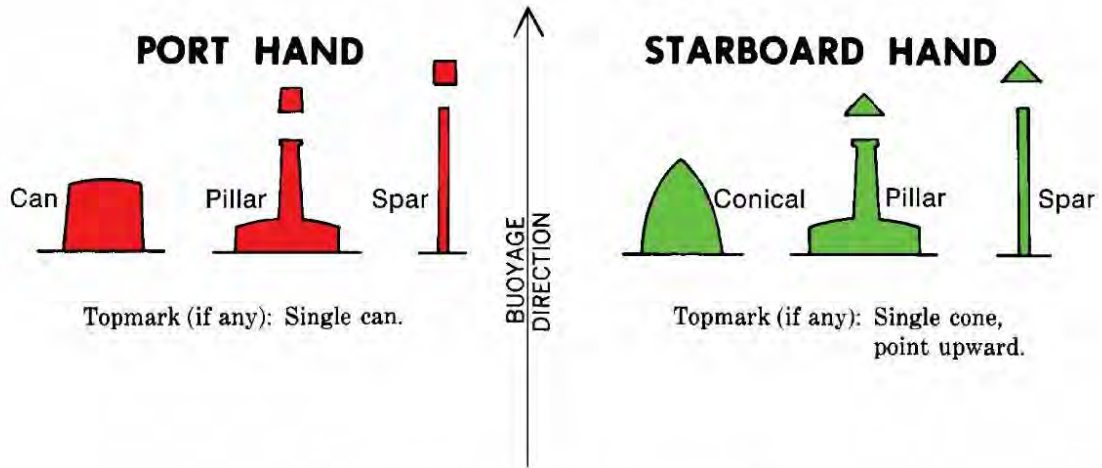
|  |  |
|--|--|
|  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>IALA Zone A</b></p> <p>Port marks are red, can shaped and may have a red flashing light of any rhythm.</p> <p>Starboard marks are green, cone shaped and may have a green flashing light of any rhythm</p> <p style="text-align: center;">"Is there any red port left"</p> |  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>IALA Zone B</b></p> <p>Port marks are green, can shaped and may have a green flashing light of any rhythm.</p> <p>Starboard marks are red, cone shaped and may have a red flashing light of any rhythm</p> <p style="text-align: center;">"Red right returning"</p> |
| <p><b>Both IALA Zone A &amp; Zone B</b></p> <p>Thankfully the mark shapes are consistent for both zones!</p> <p>Port marks are square/can shape or have a can shape topmark</p> <p>Starboard marks are conical or have a conical shaped topmark</p>  |  |

**FIGURE 19-3 LATERAL MARKS**

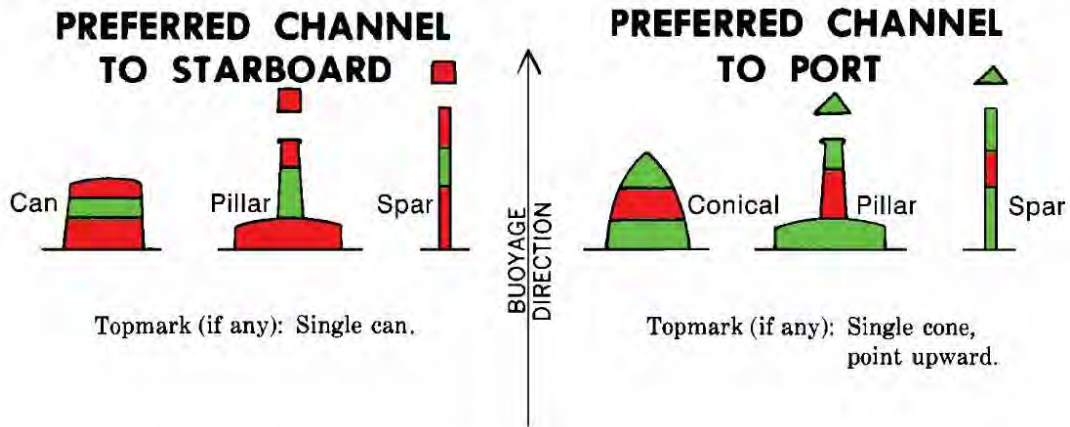
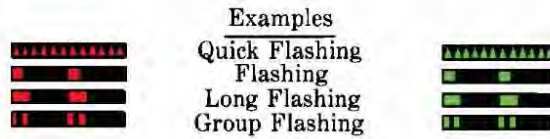


**FIGURE 19-4 IALA A AND B**

# IALA MARITIME BUOYAGE SYSTEM LATERAL MARKS REGION A



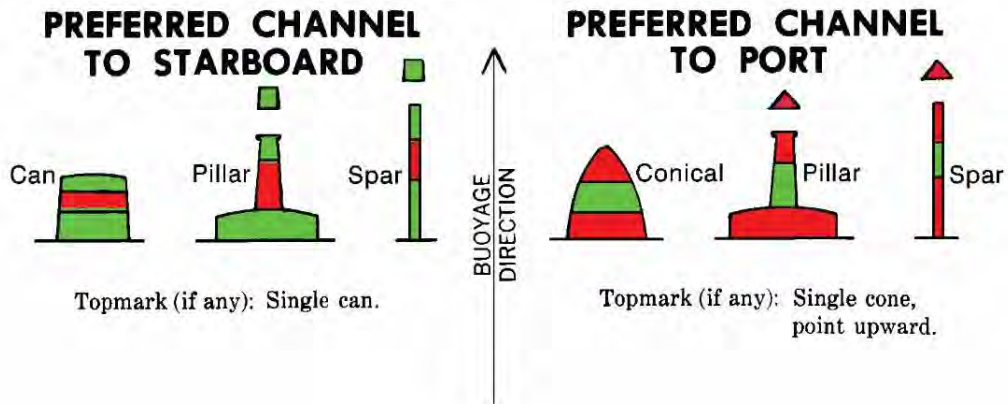
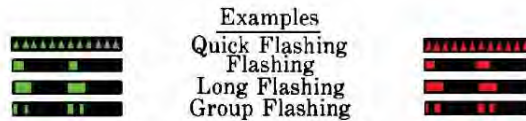
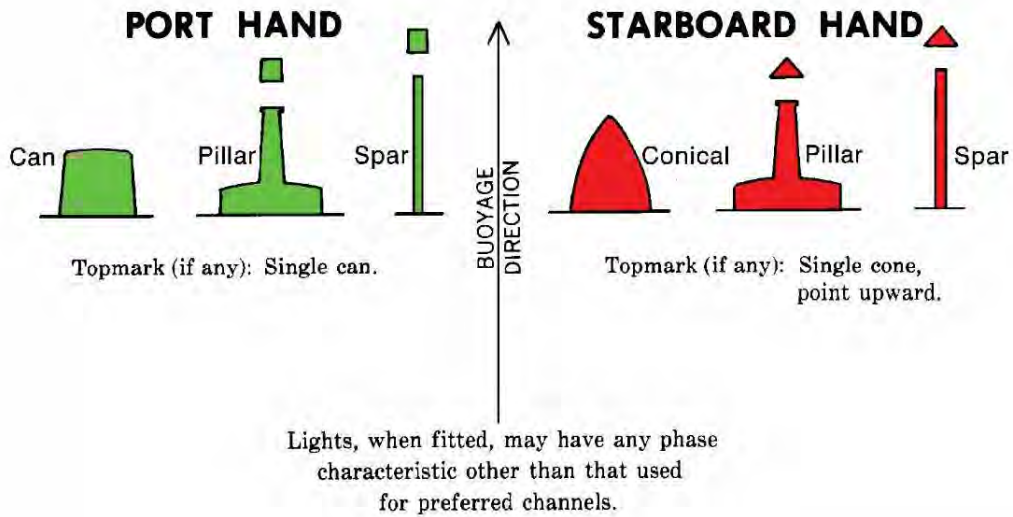
Lights, when fitted, may have any phase characteristic other than that used for preferred channels.



Lights, when fitted, are composite group flashing Fl (2 + 1).



## IALA MARITIME BUOYAGE SYSTEM LATERAL MARKS REGION B



Lights, when fitted, are composite group flashing Fl (2+1).



## 19.3 Marks Common to both IALA Regions A and B

### Isolated Danger Mark

Isolated Danger marks indicate a point of potential hazard, are Red and Black in Colour, have two round black balls at the top and flash a white light in a group.

The light is WHITE and exhibits 2 quick flashes at intervals of 5 seconds.

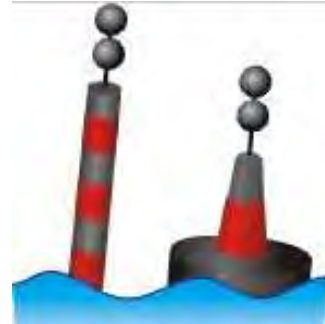


FIGURE 19-5 ISOLATED DANGER MARK

### Safe Water Mark

Safe Water marks are red and white vertical stripes whereas other striped marks have horizontal stripes.

Used to indicate the end/start of a channel, open, deep and safe water lies ahead. It may also be used to indicate the start and end of a buoyed section of a narrow channel, or a line of these buoys can be used to mark a safe route through shallow areas. Sometimes known as a Fairway Buoy, the colour is red and white vertical stripes with a top mark of a red ball.



FIGURE 19-6 SAFE WATER MARK

The light is WHITE and may either flash Morse code "A", occulting, Isophase or long flash every 10 seconds (L Fl 10s) [2].

### Special Mark

Special marks are yellow in color and display a yellow light if lit. They are not intended to assist in navigation but rather to alert the mariner to some special feature such as: spoil areas, Pipelines, Traffic Separation Schemes, jetties or naval exercise areas.

Placed to indicate the boundary of an obstruction, administrative area such as a speed limit, water skiing or mooring area, or to highlight other features such as outfall sewerage pipes. The mark is yellow in colour with a yellow X top-mark.



FIGURE 19-7 SPECIAL MARK

The light is YELLOW and consists of one quick flash with intervals of 5 seconds.

### Wreck Buoy

Used to temporarily indicate a wreck until the wreck is cleared or permanent marks are set up. The colour is blue and yellow indicating that there is a serious danger existing and the mariner must keep clear.

The light is an alternating BLUE AND YELLOW flashing sequence. This may be made even more distinctive when a group of wreck buoys are deployed around a wreck site and the flash characteristics are synchronized to all show the same flash/eclipse cycle at the same time by utilizing an integral timer.

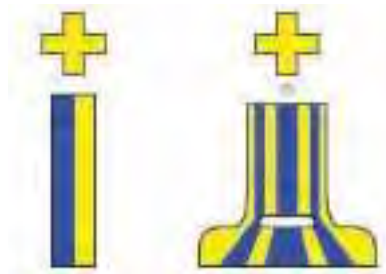


FIGURE 19-8 WRECK BUOY

## 19.4 Cardinal Buoyage System

Cardinal Marks (rare in U.S. waters) indicate the safe side to pass a hazard. E.g. a North Cardinal Mark indicates that a vessel should pass to the north of the marker. Each Cardinal Mark has a unique pattern, color scheme and is defined by a white flashing light.

Buoys or marks used to indicate the position of a hazard and the direction of safe water/ safety as a cardinal/compass direction relative to the hazard by:

- Indicating that the deepest water is an area on the named side of the mark
- Indicating the safe side on which to pass a danger



Each cardinal mark indicates one of the four compass directions by:

- The direction of its two conical top-marks
  - N - both point up,
  - S - both point down,
  - W - towards each other (Wine glass/Waist shape - W)
  - E - away from each other, bases together (Egg shape - E)
- The colour pattern of black and yellow stripes, which follows the orientation of the cones - the black stripe is in the position pointed to by the cones (e.g. at the top for a north cardinal, in the middle for a west cardinal)

- The distinctive WHITE flashing light characteristics, quick or very quick flashes. The pattern indicates the direction of the cardinal point with a number of flashes based on the clock face position which corresponds to the direction of the cardinal point.  
N - continuous flashes  
E - 3 flashes  
S - 6 flashes (plus 1 long flash to help make it easily distinguished from West  
W - 9 flashes



## 19.5 Knowledge Review

1. What does IALA stand for?
2. What countries/regions are covered in IALA regions A & B?
3. What are the fundamental and most important differences between IALA Regions A & B?
4. What is an isolated danger mark, describe its appearance.
5. What is a safe water mark, describe its appearance.
6. What is a special mark, describe its appearance.
7. What is a wreck buoy, describe its appearance.
8. Describe the appearance of North, South, East and West cardinal marks.
9. What are the flashing sequences for each cardinal mark?
10. On which side of a cardinal mark should you keep clear?

## Module 20 COLLISION REGULATIONS

### 20.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO GET THE STUDENT TO UNDERSTAND THE IMPORTANCE OF THE INTERNATIONAL COLLISION REGULATIONS, LIGHTS, SOUNDS AND SHAPES AND SAFE OPERATION IN RESTRICTED VISIBILITY.

The International Regulations for preventing collisions at sea were agreed upon by a conference of the International Maritime Organization (IMO) and are usually referred to as the "COLREGS". It is not necessary to know all of the Rules off by heart but a thorough knowledge of the COLREGS is essential.

### 20.2 Definitions

Here are some important definitions contained in the Colregs. The type of vessel defined will dictate what action should be taken.

The word "**vessel**" includes every description of watercraft, including seaplanes, capable of being used as a means of transportation on water.

The term "**power-driven vessel**" means any vessel propelled by machinery.

The term "**sailing vessel**" means any vessel under sail provided that propelling machinery is not being used.



FIGURE 20-2 POWER DRIVEN VESSEL



FIGURE 20-1 SAILING VESSEL

The term **“vessel engaged in fishing”** means any vessel fishing with nets, lines, trawls or other fishing apparatus which restrict maneuverability, but does not include a vessel fishing with trolling lines or other fishing apparatus which do not restrict maneuverability.

The term **“vessel not under command”** means a vessel which through some exceptional circumstance is unable to maneuver as required by these Rules and is therefore unable to keep out of the way of another vessel.

The term **“vessel restricted in her ability to maneuver”** means a vessel which from the nature of her work is restricted in her ability to maneuver as required by these Rules and is therefore unable to keep out of the way of another vessel. (E.g. dredging, surveying, pipe or cable laying, towing, etc.).

The term **“vessel constrained by her draught”** means a power-driven vessel, which, because of her draught in relation to the available depth and width of navigable water, is severely restricted in her ability to deviate from the course she is following.

The word **“underway”** means that a vessel is not at anchor, or made fast to the shore, or aground.

The term **“restricted visibility”** means any condition, in which visibility is restricted by fog, mist, falling snow, heavy rainstorms, sandstorms or any other similar causes.



**FIGURE 20-3 VESSEL ENGAGED IN FISHING**



**FIGURE 20-4 VESSEL RESTRICTED IN HER ABILITY TO MANEUVER**



**FIGURE 20-5 VESSEL CONSTRAINED BY HER DRAUGHT**



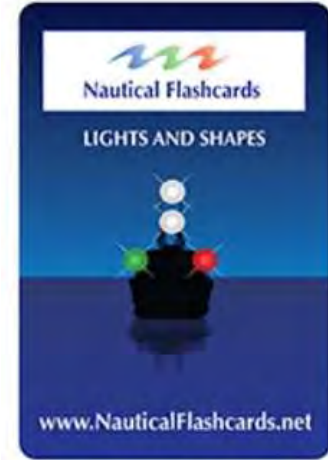
**FIGURE 20-7 VESSEL UNDERWAY**



**FIGURE 20-6 VESSEL / RESTRICTED VISIBILITY**

## 20.3 COLREGS & What You Need to Know

It is not necessary to know all of the Rules off by heart but a thorough knowledge of the COLREGS is essential, it is totally unacceptable to say “I don’t know what it is, or what to do, but I’ll look it up in the Almanac”. This attitude causes accidents and endangers others as well as yourself. The full text of the COLREGS is readily available from many sources and may be downloaded from various web sources at no cost.



Possibly the most difficult to learn is the section which deals with the lights required by vessels operating under different circumstances at night. Computer programs are available to help but perhaps one of the best ways to learn the COLREGS lights is with a set of playing card sized cards which have various combinations of lights in colour on a black background on one side and the description of the vessel (s) the lights represent printed on the back. These cards are readily available from most marine stores.

These rules must be understood and followed just as automobile drivers follow the rules and signal system when navigating on land road and highway systems.

### The 72 COLREGS

The COLREGS consist of 38 rules which are set out in 5 parts, as follows:

- Part A:* General
- Part B:* Steering and Sailing Rules
- Part C:* Lights and Shapes
- Part D:* Sound and Light Signals
- Part E:* Exemptions

## 20.4 Part A, General

Part A defines that the Rules apply to all vessels (regardless of size) on the high seas and to all waters connected to the high seas that are navigable by seagoing vessels.

- The Rules, however, allow appropriate authorities to operate special rules in harbours, rivers, lakes and inland waterways but state that any such special rules should conform as closely as possible to the COLREGS.
- In Europe there is a complete set of regulations for inland waterways, rivers, lakes and canals (CEVNI: Code Europeen Des Voies De Navigation Interieure), while the U.S. has the Inland Navigation Rules which apply on the inland waters of the United States.

The point at which the rules change from International to Inland is marked on U.S. charts by the words 'COLREGS DEMARCATION LINE.'

- The Inland Rules apply on U.S. navigable waters inside the demarcation lines and on the U.S. side of the Great Lakes. These waters are called "inland waters" and are formally defined in Rule 3. The Inland Rules also apply to U.S. vessels operating on the Canadian side of the Great Lakes except for those provisions that conflict with Canadian navigation rules for the Great Lakes. The U.S. and Canadian navigation rule drafters worked together to minimize the differences between the two countries' rules and to help ensure that the Great Lakes mariner would have little difficulty transiting from one side to the other.
- Many of the Inland Rules wherever you sail are in fact identical to the International Rules.

## 20.5 Part B, Steering and Sailing Rules

### Section I – Conduct of Vessels in any condition of visibility

#### **Application “Rule 4”**

Rules in this section apply to any condition of visibility.

#### **Lookout “Rule 5”** (one of the most important of all the rules)

Every vessel shall at all times be responsible for maintaining a proper look-out by sight and hearing as well as by all available means appropriate in the prevailing circumstances and conditions so as to make a full appraisal of the situation and of the risk of collision.”

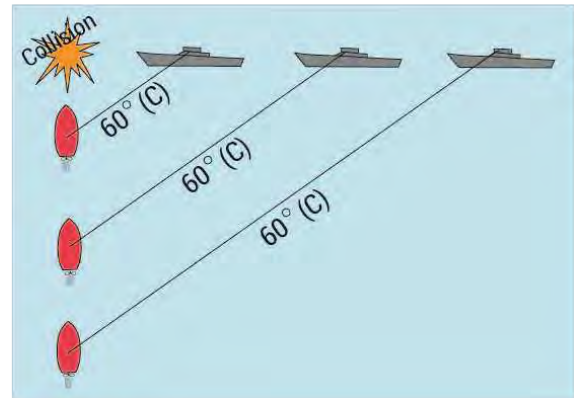
#### **Safe Speed “Rule 6”**

Vessels shall at all times proceed at a safe speed taking into consideration visibility, traffic density, manoeuvrability of the vessel, background lights at night, state of the wind, sea, current, and proximity of navigational hazards.

**Risk of Collision “Rule 7”**

Vessels shall use all available means to determine if risk of collision exists. Risk of collision shall be deemed to exist if the compass bearing of an approaching vessel does not appreciably change; risk of collision may sometimes exist with a large vessel, a tow or a vessel at close range even if the bearing does change appreciably.

If there is any doubt, risk of collision shall be deemed to exist.



**FIGURE 20-8 RISK OF COLLISION - RULE 7**

Assumptions shall not be made on the basis of scanty information, especially scanty radar information.

**Action to Avoid Collision “Rule 8”**

Any action taken to avoid collision shall be positive, made in ample time and with due regard to good seamanship. A change of direction and/or speed shall be large enough to be obvious to the other vessel - avoid small successive changes in speed and/or direction.

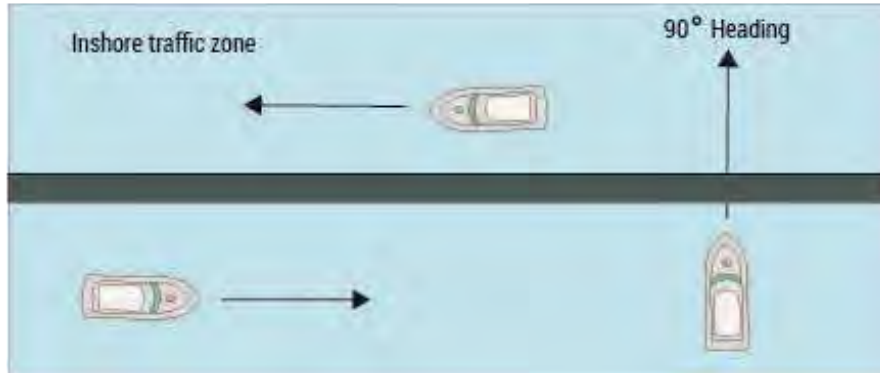
The most important rule for avoiding collision is to **maintain a proper lookout at all times** by watching, listening and all other means possible such as radar or binoculars. It is imperative that when you first encounter another vessel, the question needs to be asked "is there any risk of a collision?". Every vessel is required to travel at a safe speed which means that proper and effective action can be taken to stop the boat within a safe distance or to manoeuvre while maintaining control of the vessel.

**Narrow Channels “Rule 9”**

Vessels should keep as close as practical to the starboard side of a channel or fairway. A vessel less than 20 meters, a sailing vessel or a fishing vessel shall not impede the passage of a vessel that can only safely navigate within a narrow channel or fairway.

### **“Rule 10” - Traffic Separation Schemes (TSS)**

Traffic separation schemes have been set up in area where there is a heavy concentration of shipping. They are designed to act in similar fashion to a divided highway by separating the opposing flows.



**FIGURE 20-9 TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEMES - RULE 10**

Use the TSS and always use correct lane, join at shallow angle, cross at 90° heading.

Do not use inshore zone without local knowledge.

Vessels should:

- proceed in the appropriate traffic lane in the general direction of traffic flow for that lane.
- keep clear of a traffic separation line or separation zone.
- normally join or leave a traffic lane at the termination of the lane, but when joining or leaving from either side shall do so at as small an angle to the general direction of traffic flow as practicable.
- avoid crossing traffic lanes but if obliged to do so shall cross on a heading as nearly as practicable at right angles to the general direction of traffic flow.
- vessels of less than 20 meters in length, sailing vessels and vessels engaged in fishing may use the inshore traffic zone.
- A vessel may use an inshore traffic zone when en route to or from a port, offshore installation or structure, pilot station or any other place situated within the inshore traffic zone, or to avoid immediate danger.
- A vessel shall avoid anchoring in a traffic separation scheme or in areas near its terminations.
- A vessel engaged in fishing shall not impede the passage of any vessel following a traffic lane.

## Section II – Conduct of vessels in sight of one another

### **“Rule 11” - Application – Stand on / Give way**

Rules in this section apply to vessels in sight of one another. (Which vessel shall “stand-on” and which should “give-way”)

**‘Give Way’, ‘Stand On’**

If risk of collision exists between two vessels correct application of the Rules will require one vessel to give way and confer right of way to the other vessel. The vessel required to give way is called the Give Way vessel and the vessel with right of way is called the Stand On vessel; both vessels have specific responsibilities under the Rules.

**Action by Give Way vessel**

The Give Way vessel shall take early and substantial action to keep clear.

**Action by the Stand On vessel**

The stand on vessel must maintain her course and speed. The stand on vessel may, however, take action to avoid collision by her maneuver alone, as soon as it becomes apparent to her that the vessel required to keep out of the way is not taking appropriate action in compliance with these Rules.

When, from any cause, the vessel required to keep her course and speed finds herself so close that collision cannot be avoided by the action of the give-way vessel alone, she shall take such action as will best aid to avoid collision.

**“Rule 12” - Sailing vessels in sight of one another**

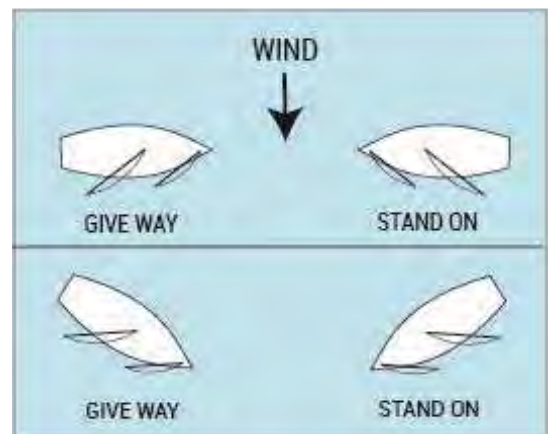
When two sailing vessels are approaching one another, so as to involve risk of collision, one of them shall keep out of the way of the other as follows:

When each has the wind on a different side, the vessel, which has the wind on the portside shall keep out of the way of the other, a boat on port tack gives way to a boat on starboard tack.

When both have the wind on the same side, the vessel, which is to windward, shall keep out of the way of the vessel, which is to leeward.

For the purposes of this Rule the windward side shall be deemed to be the side opposite to that on which the mainsail is carried.

If a vessel with the wind on the port side sees a vessel to windward and cannot determine with certainty whether the other vessel has the wind on the port or on the starboard side, she shall keep out of the way of the other.



**FIGURE 20-10 WIND ON DIFFERENT SIDE - RULE 12**



**FIGURE 20-11 WIND FROM SAME SIDE - RULE 12**

In this diagram the yacht B, on port tack, cannot see which side the mainsail of the other boat, A, is being carried on as it is obscured by the large headsail.

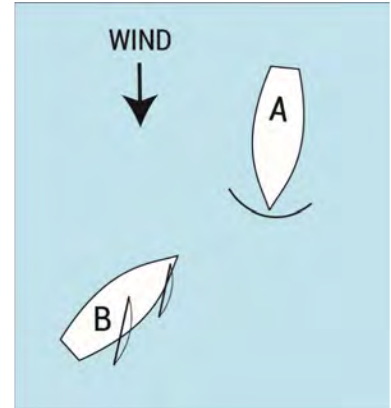


FIGURE 20-12 EXAMPLE DIAGRAM FOR RULE 12

**“Rule 13” - Overtaking**

Any vessel overtaking any other shall keep out of the way of the vessel being overtaken. A vessel shall be deemed to be overtaking when coming up with another vessel from a direction more than 22.5 degrees abaft her beam, that is, in such a position with reference to the vessel she is overtaking, that at night she would be able to see only the stern-light of that vessel but neither of her sidelights. When a vessel is in any doubt as to whether she is overtaking another, she shall assume that this is the case and act accordingly.

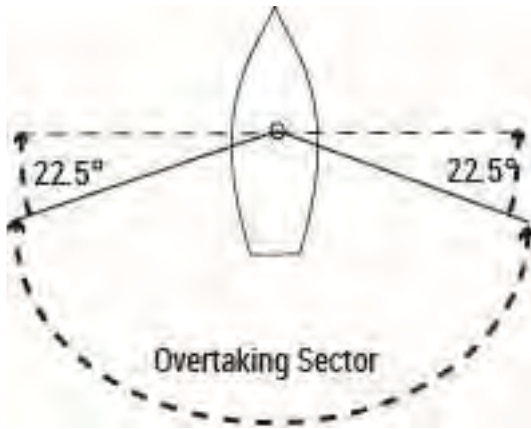


FIGURE 20-13 OVERTAKING SECTOR - RULE 13

Assume overtaking vessel if more than two points abaft the beam, or any doubt. Always keeps clear, until past & clear.

**“Rule 14” Power driven vessels meeting head on**

When two power driven vessels are meeting head on both alter course to starboard.

Both turn to starboard.

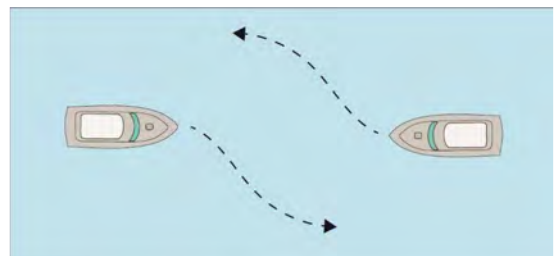


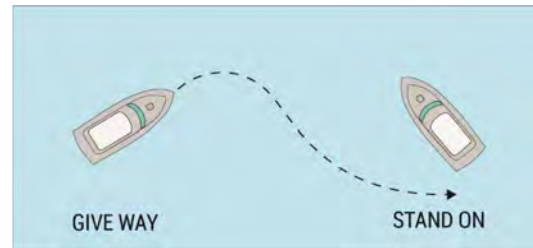
FIGURE 20-14 POWER VESSELS MEET HEAD ON -RULE 14

**“Rule 15” Power driven vessels crossing**

When two power driven vessels are crossing, or converging, and risk of collision exists, the vessel which has the other on her own starboard side must give way.

The give way vessel should avoid crossing ahead of the other vessel if possible.

Give way to vessel on your starboard side, Stand on for vessel on your port side.



**FIGURE 20-15 POWER VESSELS CROSSING –  
RULE 14**

**“Rule 16” - Action by give-way vessel**

The give - way vessel, is required if possible take early and substantial action to keep well clear.

**“Rule 17” – Action by stand-on vessel**

The stand on vessel should maintain course and speed.

The stand on vessel may however take action to avoid collision by her manoeuvre alone, as soon as it becomes apparent to her that the vessel required to keep out of the way is not taking appropriate action in compliance with these Rules. If the vessel required to keep her course and speed finds herself so close that collision cannot be avoided by the action of the give-way vessel alone, she shall take such action as will best aid to avoid collision.

1. FIRST STEP STAND-ON,
2. MAY ALTER (Not to port for a vessel to port), WHEN DOUBT OF OTHER VESSEL KEEPING CLEAR
3. MUST KEEP CLEAR, WHEN ACTION OF GIVE WAY VESSEL’S ACTION ALONE CANNOT AVOID COLLISION.

**“Rule 18” - Responsibilities between Vessels**

A power-driven vessel underway shall keep out of the way of:

- a vessel not under command;
- a vessel restricted in her ability to manoeuvre;
- a vessel engaged in fishing;
- a sailing vessel.

A sailing vessel underway shall keep out of the way of:

- a vessel not under command;
- a vessel restricted in her ability to manoeuvre;
- a vessel engaged in fishing.

A vessel engaged in fishing when underway shall, so far as possible, keep out of the way of:

- a vessel not under command;
- a vessel restricted in her ability to manoeuvre.

Any vessel other than a vessel not under command or a vessel restricted in her ability to manoeuvre shall, if the circumstances of the case admit, avoid impeding the safe passage of a vessel constrained by her draft.

### **“Rule 19” - Conduct of vessels in restricted visibility**

This Rule applies to vessels not in sight of one another when navigating in or near an area of restricted visibility.

- Every vessel shall proceed at a safe speed adapted to the prevailing circumstances and conditions of restricted visibility.
- A power-driven vessel shall have her engines ready for immediate maneuver.
- Every vessel shall have due regard to the prevailing circumstances and conditions of restricted visibility.

A vessel, which detects by radar alone the presence of another vessel shall determine if a close-quarters situation is developing and/or risk of collision exists. If so, she shall take avoiding action in ample time, provided that when such action consists of an alteration of course, so far as possible the following shall be avoided:

- an alteration of course to port for a vessel forward of the beam, other than for a vessel being overtaken;
- an alteration of course towards a vessel abeam or abaft the beam.



Every vessel which hears the fog signal of another vessel forward of her beam (unless it has been determined that risk of collision does not exist) shall:

- reduce speed to minimum
- if necessary take all way off
- navigate with extreme caution until danger of collision is over.

**ALWAYS GO AT A SAFE SPEED, ALL VESSELS KEEP CLEAR – THERE IS NO STAND-ON VESSEL IN RESTRICTED VISIBILITY**

**AVOID ALTERING TOWARDS VESSEL ABEAM OR ABAFT BEAM,**

**AVOID ALTERING TO PORT FOR VESSEL FORWARD OF BEAM**

## 20.6 Part C, Lights & Shapes

Lights using combinations of white, red, green and yellow colors are used at night to convey information regarding a vessel's:

- Direction of movement
- Method of propulsion
- Size

Additional lights are used to indicate if the vessel is:

- Towing
- Fishing
- Not Under Command
- Restricted in Ability to Maneuver
- Constrained by Draft
- Aground
- At anchor

When attempting to decipher the meanings of a vessel's lights try breaking the lights down into sections by identifying the basic lights and then concentrate on the lights that remain.

Usually the most important decision is whether risk of collision exists; if risk of collision does exist it is obviously necessary to work out details of the other vessel before deciding on the correct course of action.

Perhaps the best sequence is to decide the vessels':

1. Aspect (ahead, astern, port, starboard)
2. Propulsion (i.e. under power, under sail, being towed)
3. Length
4. Other information (i.e. towing, fishing, Restricted in Ability to Maneuver, Not Under Command, etc.)

### Side lights and stern light

A sailing vessel underway (not at anchor, or made fast to shore, or aground) shows three basic lights, two sidelights and a stern light:

- a green light on the starboard side
- a red light on the port side
- a white light at the stern

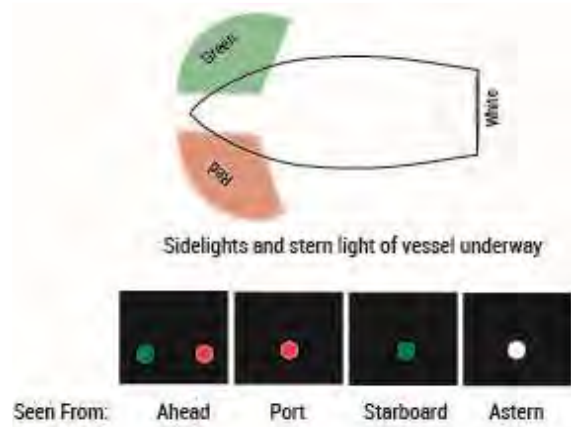


FIGURE 20-16 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS

Or a sailing vessel less than 20 meters (65 ft.) in length may combine side and stern lights in one lantern carried at or near the top of the mast. Note that this combined lantern must not be used when the yacht is using her auxiliary engine.

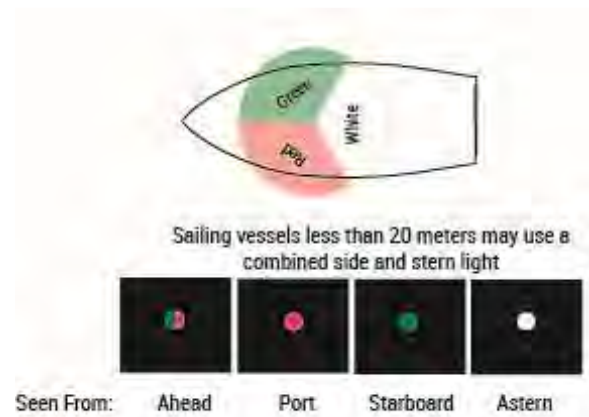


FIGURE 20-17 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS

A power driven vessel underway less than 50 m (164 ft.) in length shows a white masthead light above the sidelights. A masthead light covers the same arc as the sidelights combined. Also a white stern light.

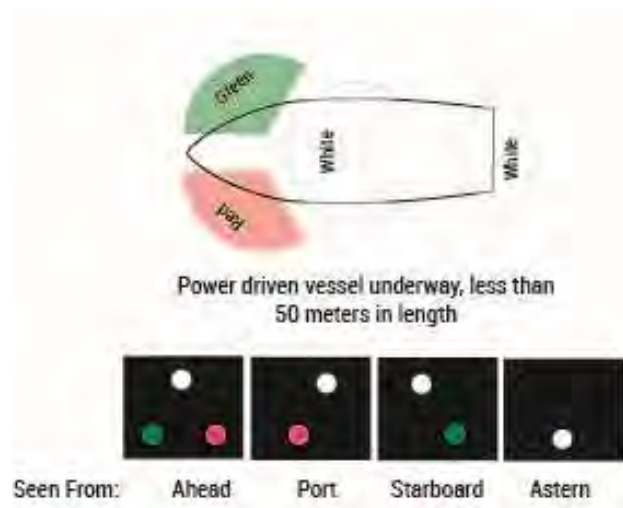


FIGURE 20-18 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS

A power driven vessel underway greater than 50 m in length shows a white masthead light forward and a second masthead light behind and higher than the forward masthead light.

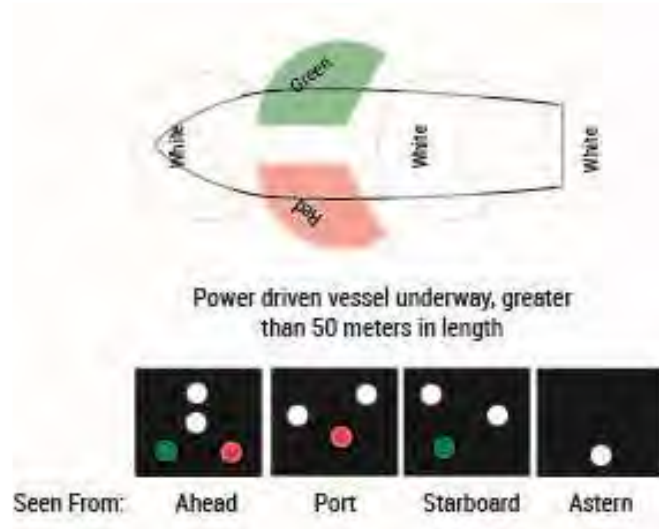


FIGURE 20-19 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS

### Vessels at Anchor

A vessel at anchor, less than 50 m in length, must show an all round white light where it may best be seen.

A vessel at anchor, greater than 50 m in length, must show in the fore part an all round white light and a second all round white light at or near the stern which is lower than the forward light.

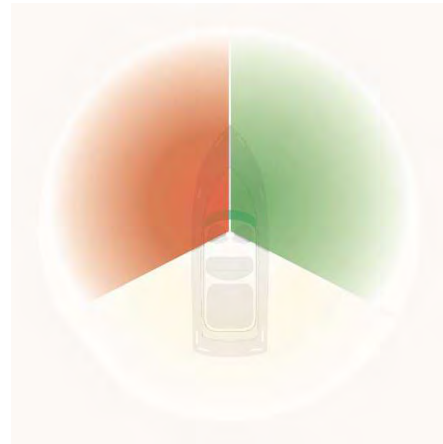
If a vessel at anchor is greater than 100 m in length she shall use available lights to illuminate her deck.



FIGURE 20-20 VESSELS AT ANCHOR LIGHTS

## Safe Operation in Restricted Visibility

It is imperative to take great care when operating a vessel at night or during periods of restricted visibility. Remember to proceed at a safe speed.



Reduced visibility

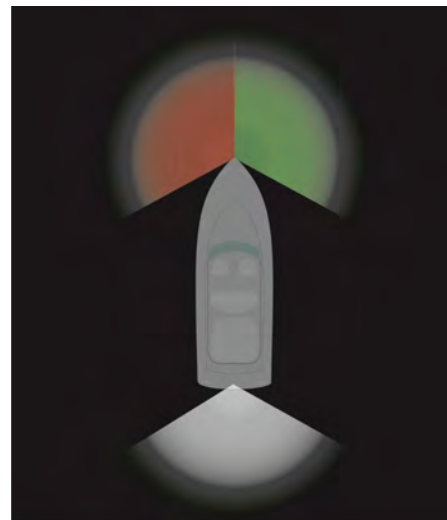
## Navigating at Night

The rules for navigating are the same for night and day, however, at night or in restricted visibility you must determine the speed, position and size of other vessels based on their navigation lights.

The following factors require specific navigation lights:

- The size of the vessel
- If it is power or sail
- If it is underway or at anchor

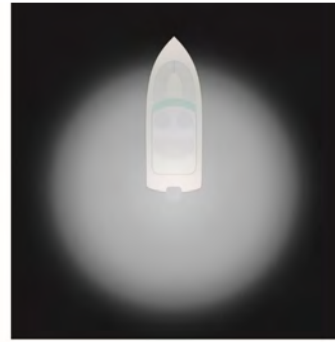
Power vessels over 12 meters must exhibit a forward masthead light, sidelights and a stern light.



Night

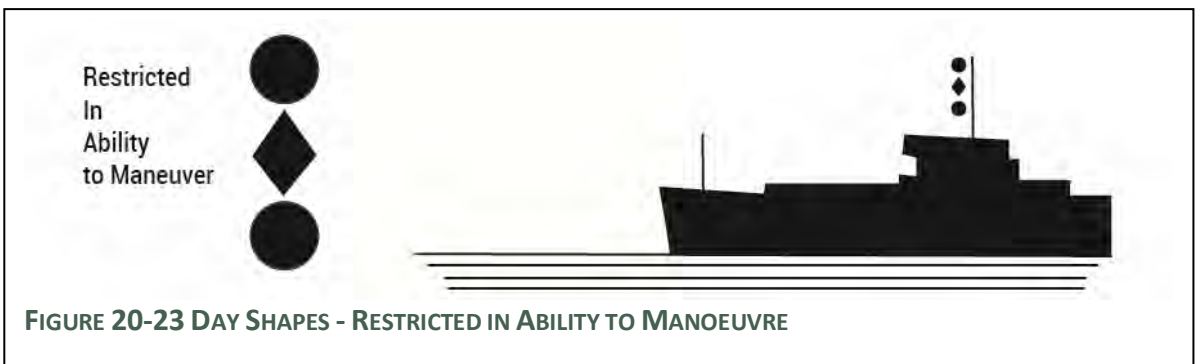
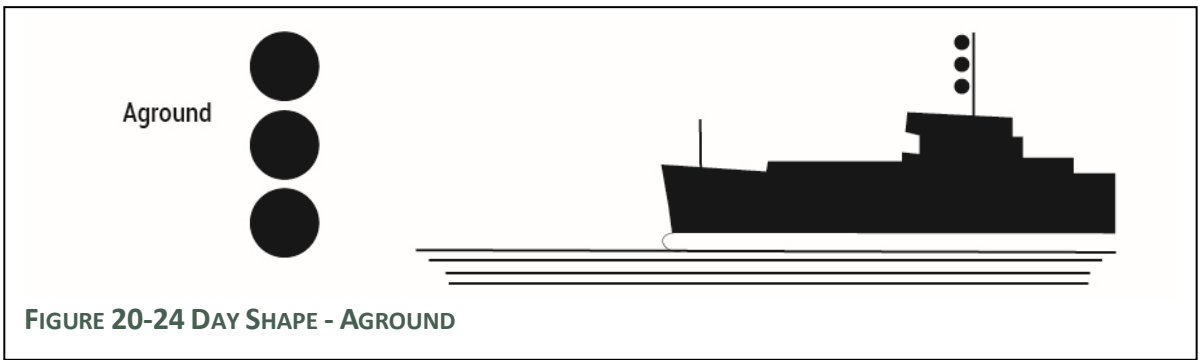
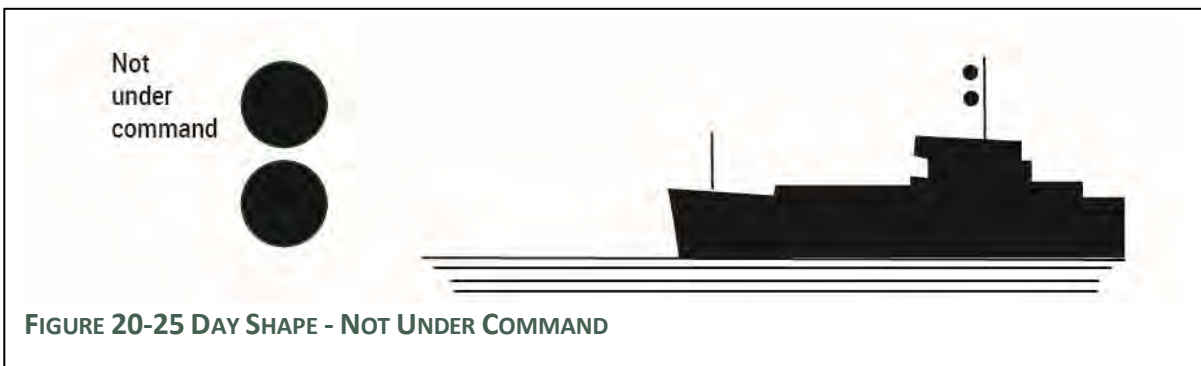
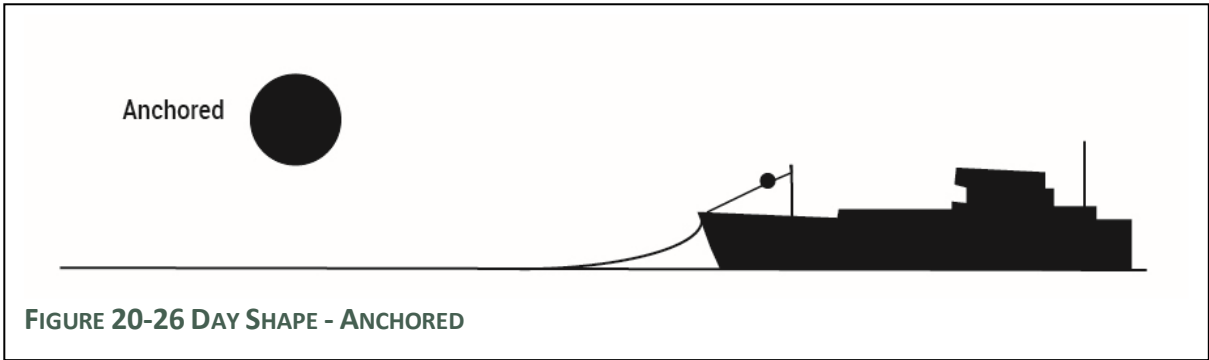
**FIGURE 20-21 NAVIGATION LIGHTS**

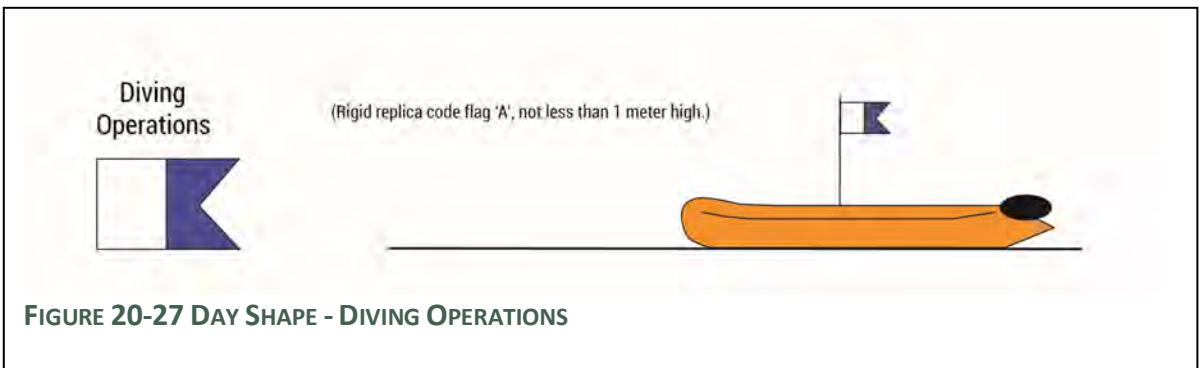
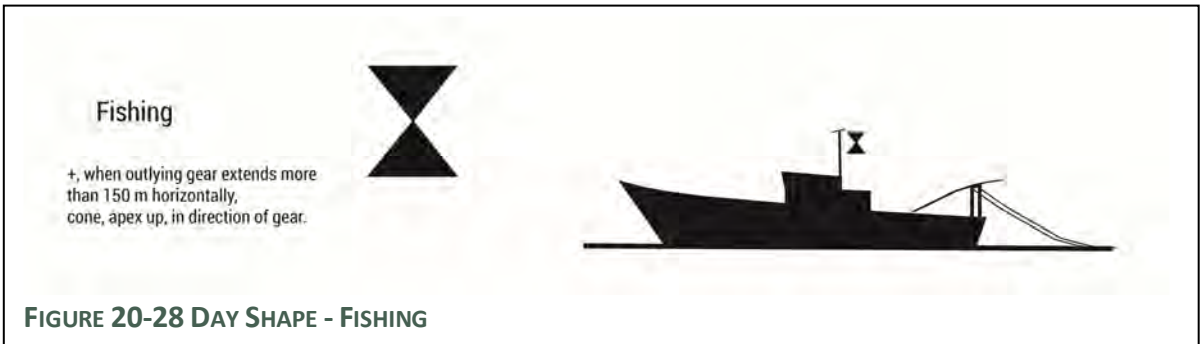
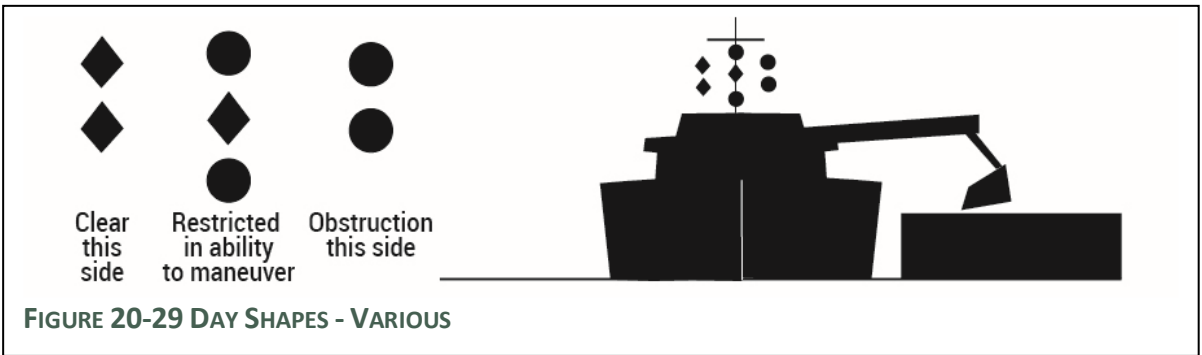
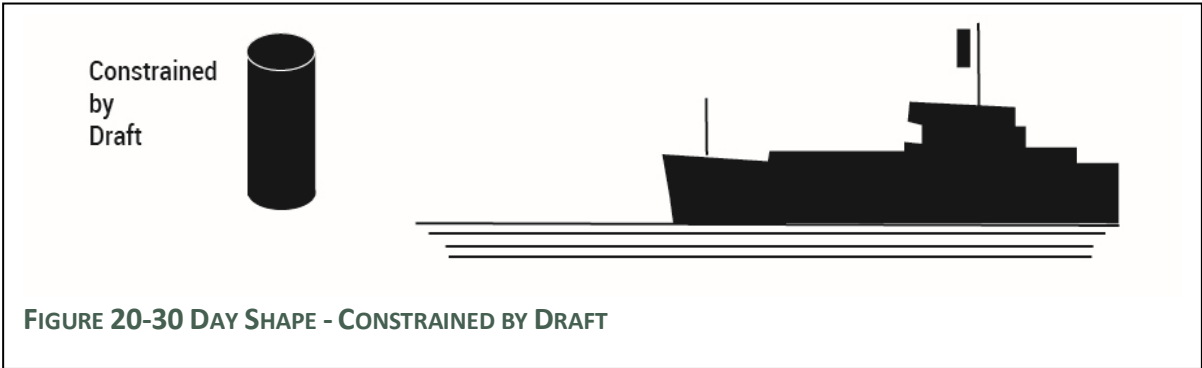
Many small boats will have a white light affixed to the top of a light pole placed at the stern. When underway this light acts as a combined masthead and sternlight and must be visible in all directions. Therefore, it must be mounted higher than the boat structure.

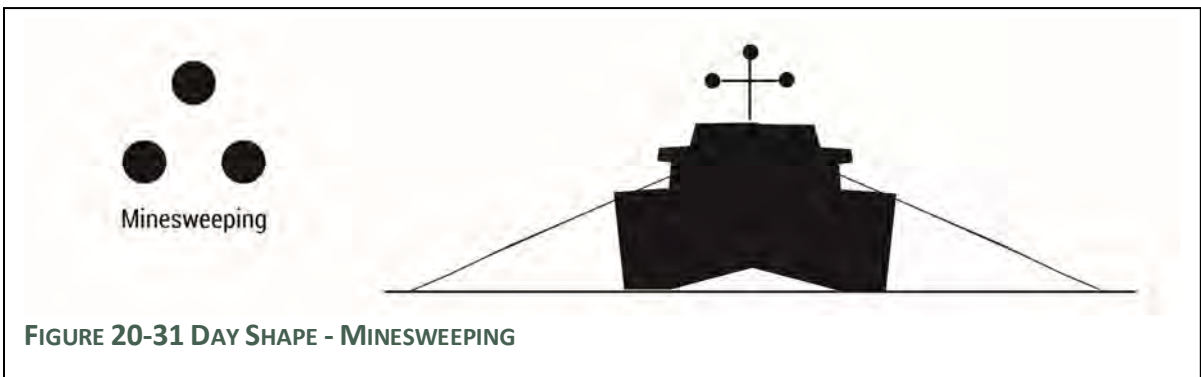
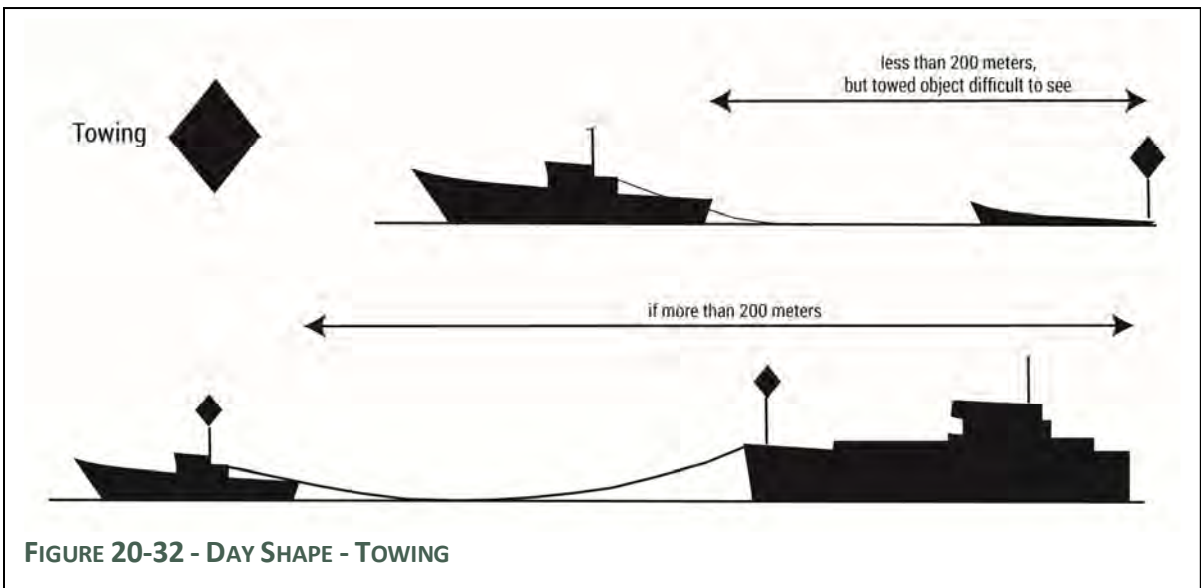
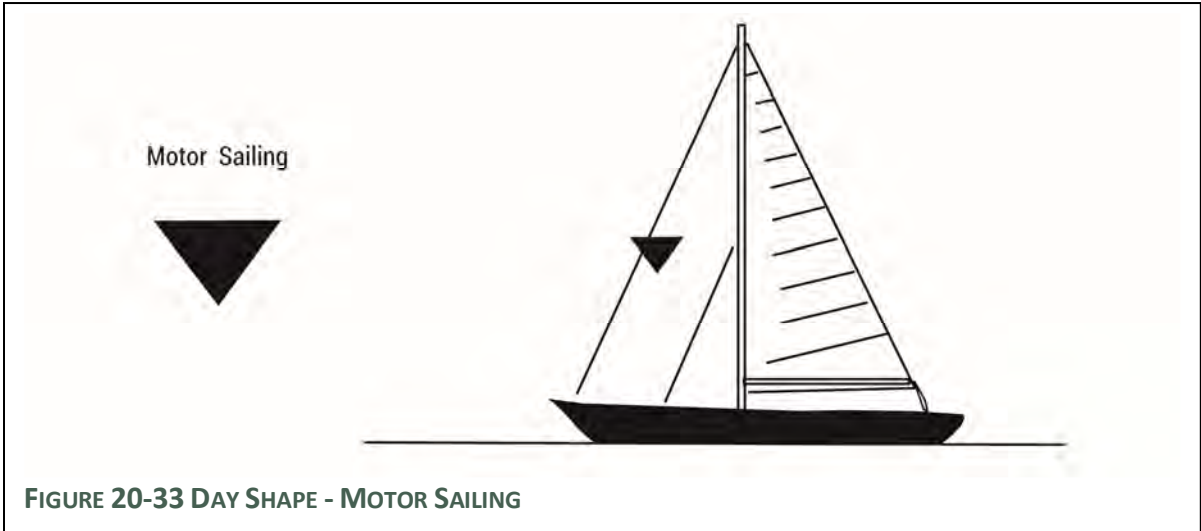


**FIGURE 20-22 SMALL BOAT /  
ONE STERN LIGHT SHOWING ALL  
AROUND**



## Day Shapes













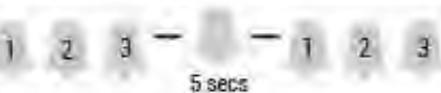











## 20.7 Part D, Sounds

|   |  |
|---|--|
|  | = 1 second horn blast = short          |
|  | = 4 to 6 second horn blast = prolonged |

Morse "U"   
 Means "You are running into danger":  
 This signal is often used by oil rigs, etc.

### Sound Signals In Poor Visibility

| Sound Signal  |   | Every         |
|---|---|---------------|
|    | Power underway, making way  | 2 min         |
|    | Power underway, not making way  | 2 min         |
|    | Vessel sailing; vessel fishing;<br>restricted in ability to manoeuvre;<br>constrained by draft;<br>not under command;<br>vessel towing or pushing | 2 min         |
|  | Last manned vessel of tow   | 2 min         |
|  | Warning from vessel at anchor   | when required |
|  | Pilot vessel on duty  |               |
|  | Vessel at anchor: Rapid bell for 5 secs.<br>(+ gong aft for 5 s if vessel > 100 m)  | 1 min         |
|  | Vessel aground<br>As for at anchor + 3 strokes on bell<br>before & after rapid bell rings   |               |

| Maneuvering and Warning Signals For Vessels In Sight Of Each Other                  |  |
|---|--|
|    | I am altering course to starboard  |
|    | I am altering course to port   |
|    | I am operating astern propulsion   |
|    | I do not understand your intentions!<br>I doubt you are taking sufficient or appropriate action to avoid collision |
|    | I intend to overtake on your starboard side  |
|    | I intend to overtake on your port side   |
|    | Agreement by overtaken vessel  |
|   | Approaching blind bend in channel  |
|  | Reply from vessel on other side of bend  |

ALL the different configurations of lights and shapes MUST be learnt by the seafarer in order to be safe at sea. These are just an introduction.

Learning the “Rules” is not easy, it takes lots of time and patience, however it is essential to know everything about the other vessels around you.

The above is an abridged version of the ‘Rules’. The prudent mariner will undertake a full and thorough study the Rules.

## 20.8 Rule 33 (Equipment for Sound Signals)

A vessel of 12 m or more in length shall be provided with a whistle, a vessel of 20 m or more in length shall be provided with a bell in addition to a whistle, and a vessel of 100 m or more in length shall, in addition, be provided with a gong, the tone and sound of which cannot be

confused with that of the bell. The whistle, bell and gong shall comply with the specifications in Annex III to these Regulations. The bell or gong or both may be replaced by other equipment having the same respective sound characteristics, provided that manual sounding of the prescribed signals shall always be possible.

A vessel of less than 12 m in length shall not be obliged to carry the sound signalling appliances prescribed in paragraph (a) of this Rule but if she does not, she shall be provided with some other means of making an efficient sound signal.

## 20.9 Knowledge Review

1. Define the following: vessel, power driven vessel, sailing vessel, vessel engaged in fishing, vessel not under command, vessel restricted in ability to maneuver, vessel aground, vessel constrained by draft, vessel not underway.
2. Describe what restricted visibility means
3. What are the COLREGS?
4. What action should you take to avoid collision?
5. What is a traffic separation scheme? how should you cross it?
6. What is the difference between a stand on and a give way vessel?
7. What is the rule when two vessels meet head on?
8. Describe "conduct in restricted visibility".
9. What color are starboard, port, stern, bow and masthead lights?
10. What shape would a vessel display at anchor, not under command, restricted in ability to maneuver, aground, fishing, constrained by draft, motor sailing.
11. What color and shape is the letter "A" flag ? what does it signify?
12. What sound signal would you give if moving to starboard, port, astern, overtaking and I do not understand your intentions?

## Module 21 NAVIGATION LIGHTS

### 21.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVE OF THIS MODULE IS TO GET THE STUDENT TO UNDERSTAND THE DIFFERENT LIGHT CONFIGURATIONS REQUIRED ABOARD VESSELS UNDER THE RULES OF THE “INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA” (COLREGS).

Between sunset and sunrise and during any period of reduced visibility (fog or heavy rain) you are required to use navigation lights. If operating a non-powered craft with no fixed navigation lights such as a kayak or rowboat, you must have a watertight flashlight or lantern which emits a white light.

#### Safe Operation in Restricted Visibility

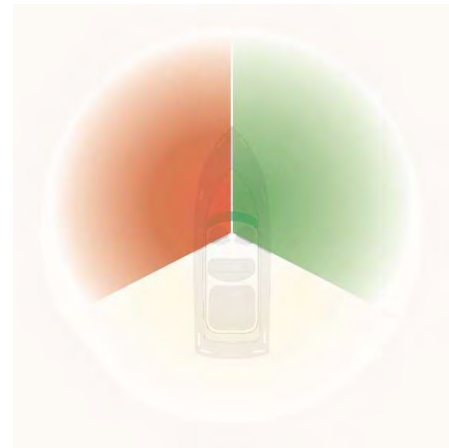
It is imperative to take great care when operating a vessel at night or during periods of restricted visibility. Remember to proceed at a safe speed.

#### Navigating at Night

The rules for navigating are the same for night and day, however, at night or in restricted visibility you must determine the speed, position and size of other vessels based on their navigation lights.

The following factors require specific navigation lights:

- The size of the vessel
- If it is power or sail
- If it is underway or at anchor



Reduced visibility



Night

FIGURE 21-1 NAVIGATION LIGHTS

Power vessels over 12 meters must exhibit a forward masthead light, sidelights and a stern light.

Many small boats will have a white light affixed to the top of a light pole placed at the stern. When underway this light acts as a combined masthead and stern light and must be visible in all directions. Therefore, it must be mounted higher than the boat structure.



**FIGURE 21-2 SMALL BOAT /  
ONE STERN LIGHT SHOWING ALL  
AROUND**



**FIGURE 21-5 MASTHEAD LIGHT 225°**

- White
- Light covers an arc of 225 degrees from dead ahead to 22.5 degrees abaft the beam on both sides of boat
- Position is fore and aft of the centerline of boat



**FIGURE 21-3 MASTHEAD LIGHT 360°**

- White
- Light covers an arc of 360 degrees
- Position must be where light is visible from all directions.



**FIGURE 21-4 TOWING LIGHT 135°**

- Yellow
- Light covers an arc of 135 degrees
- Position is as close to stern as possible.



**FIGURE 21-7 PORT SIDELIGHT 112.5°**

- Red
- Light covers an arc of 112.5 degrees on port side
- Position forward area



**FIGURE 21-6 STARBOARD SIDELIGHT 112.5°**

- Green
- Light covers an arc of 112.5 degrees on starboard side
- Position forward area

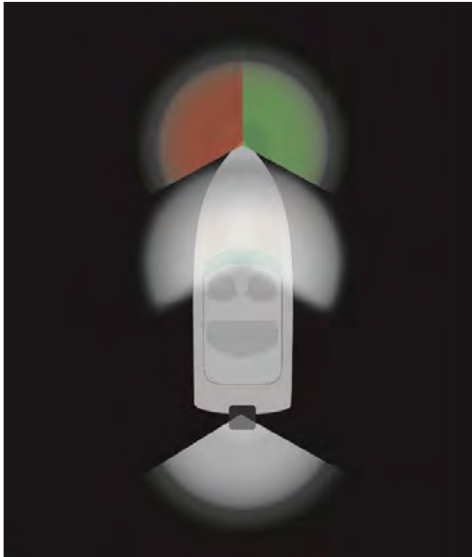


**FIGURE 21-8 STERNLIGHT 135°**

- White
- Light covers an arc of 135 degrees
- Position as close to stern of boat as possible.

## Powerboats under 12M (39' 4") Rule 23 (Collision regulations)

Options are depicted below. Note that it is optional to have another masthead light.



**FIGURE 21-10 PBT UNDER 12M OPTION 1**

- 1 masthead light
- Sidelights
- 1 sternlight



**FIGURE 21-9 PBT UNDER 12M OPTION 2**

- 1 all-round white light
- Sidelights

## Powerboats from 12M (39' 4") to under 50M (164'1") Rule 23

Depicted below. Note that it is optional to have another masthead light.



**FIGURE 21-11 PBT OVER 12M UP TO 50M**

- 1 masthead light
- Sidelights
- 1 sternlight

## Sailboats under 7M (23') Rule 25

Options are depicted below.



**FIGURE 21-14 SBT UNDER 7M  
OPTION 1**

- Sidelights
- 1 sternlight



**FIGURE 21-13 SBT UNDER 7M  
OPTION 2**

- 1 lantern,  
combining the  
sidelights and  
sternlight above



**FIGURE 21-12 SBT UNDER 7M  
OPTION 3**

- If options 1 and 2  
are not possible  
you must have a  
torch or lantern  
showing a white  
light to be used  
far enough in  
advance to  
prevent a  
collision.

## Sailboats from 7M (23') to under 20M (65' 7") Rule 25

Options are depicted below.



FIGURE 21-15 SBT UP TO 20M OPTION 1

- Sidelights
- 1 sternlight

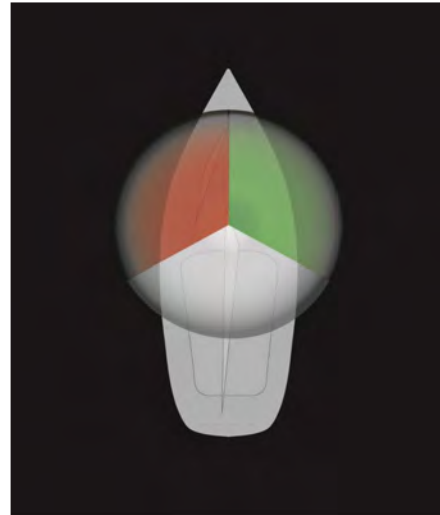


FIGURE 21-16 SBT UP TO 20M OPTION

- 1 lantern, combining the sidelights and sternlight above mast

## Sailboats 20M (65' 7") and over Rule 25

Options are depicted below.

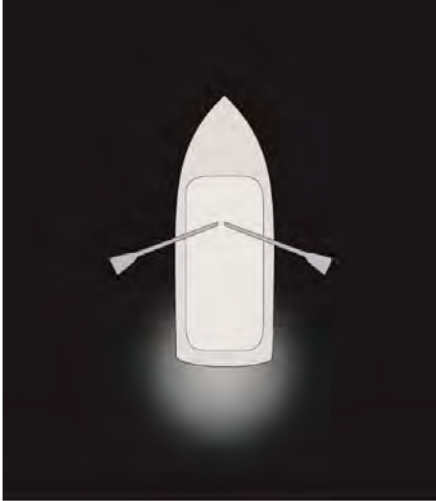


FIGURE 21-17 SBT 20M AND OVER

- Sidelights
- 1 sternlight

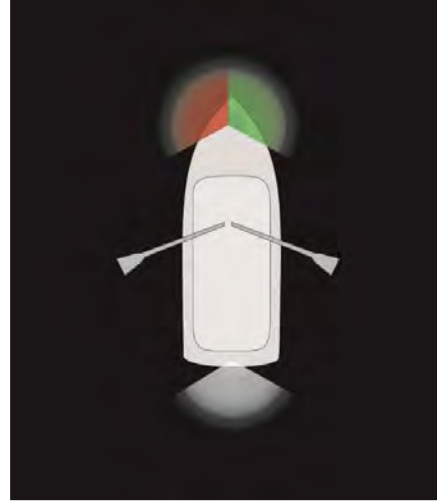
## Human-Powered Boats Rule 25

Options are depicted below. Note that it is optional to have another masthead light.



**FIGURE 21-19 HUMAN POWER OPTION 1**

- 1 lantern showing a white light that must be used far enough in advance to prevent a collision.



**FIGURE 21-18 HUMAN POWER OPTION**

- Same lights as listed for sailboats according to length.

## Boats at Anchor Rule 30

Options are depicted below. Note that it is optional to have another all-round white light for boats under 7M to under 50M.



**FIGURE 21-20 BOATS AT ANCHOR**

If the boat is in or near a narrow channel, fairway or anchorage, or where other boats normally navigate:

### Under 7M

- 1 all-round white light (*at night*)
- 1 anchor ball (*during the day*)

### From 7M to Under 50M

- 1 all-round white light (*at night*) OR
- 1 anchor ball (*during the day*)

## 21.2 Knowledge Review

1. What 3 factors determine specific navigation lights?
2. What color is a towing light?
3. What lights must a sailboat display at night when motor-sailing?
4. What lights must a human powered boat display at night?
5. What light must a boat at anchor display?

## Module 22 BASIC FIRST AID

### 22.1 Key Objectives

THIS MODULE OUTLINES THE BASIC KNOWLEDGE REQUIRED TO RECOGNISE HYPOTHERMIA AND OTHER POTENTIAL MEDICAL ISSUES AND BASIC FIRST AID PROCEDURES.

**Because first aid and CPR are often updated, IYT encourages schools to reference current material for their particular country.**

### 22.2 Hypothermia and Cold Water Immersion

Hypothermia is a drop in core body temperature caused by prolonged exposure to abnormally low temperatures. Hypothermia sets in when core body temperature drops below 35.0 degrees Celsius.

#### Causes of hypothermia:

- Immersion in cold water
- Exposure to cold air and wind while in wet clothing
- Prolonged exposure to cold water and air temperatures

### 22.3 Cold Water Shock

Even more dangerous than hypothermia is cold water shock. This occurs when a person is immediately immersed into water 15° C or below. For three to five minutes after sudden immersion in cold water, a person will gasp for breath and can experience muscle spasms and a rise in heart rate and blood pressure. These spasms and gasping can cause the victim to ingest water and drown. Also, a rise in heart rate and blood pressure can result in a heart attack or stroke.

Cold water can paralyze you instantly making it nearly impossible to put on a lifejacket. Cold water shock can occur any time of year, even in summer, as water temperatures can remain lower than air temperatures.



## 22.4 Rescuing a Person with Hypothermia

### Immediate Action Prior to Rescue Procedure

- Don an approved PFD or lifejacket
- Assess victim's condition – stage of hypothermia
- Identify yourself to victim and ask them to respond
- Assess what items you have onboard that may be used to warm the victim
- Assess your ability to help the victim. For example, how far to shore
- Exhibit a distress signal indicating need for assistance if you believe it is necessary

### Rescue Procedure

- Remove the victim from the water as discussed previously
- Dry the victim from head to toe and cover with layers of dry clothing
- Move to shelter below deck if possible
- Attempt to slowly increase victim's body temperature by one or more of the following:
  - Cover head and neck
  - Wrap in dry blankets, towels or clothing
  - Cover with an insulating blanket



#### Additional points:

- Provide warm liquid but never alcohol or hot stimulants
- Do not rub or massage the victim's body or extremities as this may cause nerve ending damage
- You may use your own body to transfer heat

### Surviving Cold Water

In order to increase your survival time in cold water you should do the following:

- Assess the situation:
  - Is everyone wearing a lifejacket?
  - Can you get to shore or to safety?
  - Are there other boaters in the vicinity who can assist?
  - Can you call or signal for help?
- Determine if you are within roughly 50 m from shore and if so swim to shore.
- You should stay where you are if:
  - You are injured
  - There is help close by

- You are more than 50 m from shore
- If you are close to a floating object you should climb onto the object to save energy. However, you should only do so if you are able to get most of your body out of and above the water.
- Immediately signal or call for help if you are able to do so.

### The “Huddle” Position

If you and your passengers are exposed to cold water and are not able to swim to shore or a floating object, you should assume the huddle position.

- Place your arms around each other’s mid to lower back and pull together so your chests are close to each other’s sides
- Intertwine your legs
- Place children in the middle of the huddle
- Keep unnecessary movements to a minimum in order to conserve energy.



FIGURE 22-1 HUDDLE POSITION

### Heat Escape Lessening Position (H.E.L.P.)

You can use this position to reduce heat loss from your core body temperature and delay the effects of hypothermia.

- Cross your arms tightly against your chest.
- Draw your knees up and against your chest.
- Keep your head and face out of the water.



FIGURE 22-2 H.E.L.P. POSITION

## 22.5 Contents of Basic 1st Aid Kit

A comprehensive first-aid manual should be carried as well as a first aid kit designed for the length of voyage and operating area based on your specific needs. At least one member of the crew should have received some first aid training from a recognized training entity.

Basic contents should include a minimum of:

- Sunscreen
- Bandages/gauze pads of various sizes
- Band aids (various)
- Thermometer
- Antiseptic wipes
- Aspirin
- Motion sickness tablets
- Antacid tablets
- Scissors
- Tweezers
- Insect bite relief swabs
- Alcohol prep. pads
- Eyewash/cup and pads
- Calamine lotion
- Ice pack
- Antibiotic cream



## 22.6 Cuts, Stings and Burns

### Cuts

- Clean the wound thoroughly, applying antibiotic cream and a Band –Aid or small dressing, treat minor lacerations.
- In the case of deeper wounds control bleeding by applying pressure and seek immediate medical help.

### Bites and Stings

- Bites and stings may be no more than a minor irritation to potent venoms that may be life threatening.
- To treat a mild insect bite, remove the sting by scraping rather than tweezers and apply ice pack or ointment.
- Some bites/stings may induce severe allergic reactions, which may occur within minutes or may be delayed for several hours or days. Again, if in doubt seek immediate medical help.

## Burns

- Burns are classified by degrees. First degree being superficial but burns to large areas of the body will need emergency medical help. The severity of burns should not be judged by the amount of pain a victim feels as nerve endings may be destroyed.
- Minor burns over small skin areas may be cooled by the application of cool water (not ice) and soaked bandages or dressings. A dry sterile dressing may be applied after cooling (do not use any kind of grease or butter) cover with a bandage.
- Second-degree burns are deeper; the victim's skin may be blistering or weeping. Immerse affected area in cold water. Proceed as for 1st. degree but do not pierce any blisters or remove any burnt tissue. Do not apply any antiseptic sprays or ointments, keep affected areas above the level of the victim's heart. Look for signs of shock. Call for emergency medical help and follow directions.
- Third degree burns are characterized by white gray or black charring. If the area affected is small treat as second-degree, watch out for shock symptoms, do not give victim fluids or any kind of alcohol, and call for immediate assistance.

## 22.7 Control of Bleeding

- If possible, identify source of bleeding. External source should be fairly easy. Internal bleeding is hard to identify. You should attempt to minimize or stop the flow.
- To control external bleeding apply direct pressure with sterile cloth or towel until bleeding stops. If a cloth or towel is not available have the injured person apply pressure using their own hand. As a last resort use your own hand taking suitable precautions (gloves, plastic wrap etc.). Wash hands thoroughly after contact with body fluids. Elevate the wound.
- Internal bleeding may come from several sources, is hard to identify and can be life threatening. Severe internal bleeding will often be accompanied by symptoms of shock (see shock). Advanced medical training and equipment are required for the treatment of severe internal bleeding. Call for help and if you cannot transport the victim to medical help in a short time request helicopter evacuation.



**FIGURE 22-3 CONTROL BLEEDING**

## 22.8 Shock

- Shock can be described as the collapse of the cardiovascular system. Blood flow slows or stops thus depriving vital organs of oxygen, which may result in death. Even after short deprivation of oxygen rich blood to certain organs, primarily the heart and brain, cells die and cannot be regenerated.
- Shock may be induced by severe blood or fluid loss due to large open wounds or burns as well as internal bleeding. Nervous system damage and poor heart pumping action will also bring on shock symptoms. Signs may include cold, clammy skin, profuse sweating pallid skin color. Advanced stage symptoms include bluish lips, shallow labored gasping/breathing, weak rapid pulse, extreme thirst, nausea and vomiting.

### Treatment for shock:

1. Clear and maintain airway. (see unconscious victim)
2. Lay victim on his back and elevate the feet 8 to 12 inches if there are no signs of head, neck or back injury. If victim is having convulsions, seizures or respiratory difficulties do NOT elevate feet. Reassure and comfort.
3. Control bleeding to minimize blood loss.
4. Do not give food or drink, keep victim comfortable and warm using blankets or clothing.
5. Call for medical assistance if symptoms persist.

## 22.9 Dangers of Heat and Cold

### Heat Stroke

Heat stroke is a severe condition which occurs when the body's 'thermostat' stops working properly. The body stops producing perspiration and the lack of cooling can send body temperature so high that brain damage or even death may occur.

#### The symptoms of heat stroke:

- High body temperatures, up to 106 F, hot, red, dry skin.
- Progressive loss of consciousness, weak, rapid pulse and shallow breathing.

#### Treatment for heat stroke:

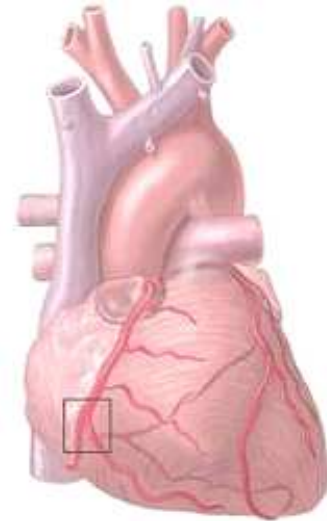
1. Call for immediate medical assistance.
2. Cool the victim by wrapping cool wet sheets around the body and ventilate by hand or electric fan.
3. Be alert for signs of shock.

4. If condition worsens, take further steps to cool the body using ice or icepacks placed at large blood vessel areas of the body such as wrist, ankles, neck, groin or armpits.
5. Continue to monitor the patient, maintain airway and be ready to perform CPR. (see unconscious victim)

## 22.10 Heart Attacks & Strokes

### Heart Attack

- A heart attack is caused by one or more vessels feeding blood to the heart becoming clogged. As a result, the heart may stop pumping, (no pulse) causing the victim to stop breathing.
- This is a condition known as Cardiac Arrest and requires CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) immediately. Courses in CPR are readily available through various organizations and it is highly recommended that anyone going to sea should have at the very least, CPR, Rescue Breathing (mouth to mouth) and First Aid training.
- The victim of a heart attack whose heart continues to pump will often show no great signs of illness and may complain of heartburn or indigestion. This kind of attack is difficult to identify but the clock is ticking and urgent action is required.
- Be alert to the possible signs of a heart attack such as the victim complaining of pain in the chest area that may be described as 'crushing pressure', 'fullness' or 'squeezing' behind the breastbone but may radiate to other part of the torso and arms. Sweating, nausea, short or labored breathing are also early warning signs. Pains in the left arm can also be a sign of a heart attack. It has been medically proven that immediately taking aspirin can save a victim's life.



**FIGURE 22-4 HEART (BOX REFERS TO FIGURE BELOW WHERE BLOCKAGE HAS OCCURRED)**



**FIGURE 22-5 BLOCKAGE IN RIGHT CORONARY ARTERY**

### Stroke

- Strokes are the result of inadequate supply of oxygenated blood to the brain caused by blood clots forming anywhere in the body. The signs of stroke include complete or partial paralysis of the face muscles and/or extremities on one side of the body, varying levels of consciousness, confusion, dizziness, convulsions, headache, visual

and swallowing difficulties. If stroke is suspected: open airway and reassure and comfort victim.

- There is nothing that can be done onboard for a stroke victim to mitigate the outcome, which may range from mild temporary disability to death. Immediate evacuation for medical treatment is necessary.

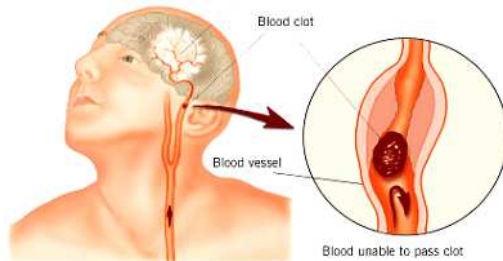


FIGURE 22-6 STROKE

A completely blocked airway however will render the victim speechless, unable to speak, breathe or cough.

Victim may make feeble wheezing sounds and communicate their distress by clutching the throat area.

If possible, send a crewmember for medical assistance and perform 'Heimlich' maneuver.

## 22.11 ABCs of First Aid Response (Airway – Breathing – Circulation)

Adult Casualty (8 years and older)

When the breathing stops, the heart will soon stop beating.

- 0 – 4 minutes clinical death.
- 4 – 6 minutes brain damage possible
- 6 – 10 minutes brain damage likely
- After 10 minutes irreversible brain damage/biological death

### A - Airway

Open the airway using the head tilt / chin lift method. Tilting the head back and lifting the chin will move the tongue away from the back of the throat and allow an open airway.

### B - Breathing

Check for breathing by looking at the chest and feeling for air coming from the mouth for up to 10 seconds.

If the person is not breathing, give two slow breaths. When giving two slow breaths:

- Keep the airway open
- Seal the nose shut
- Place your mouth around the person's mouth with a tight seal
- Give two breaths, each lasting two seconds. Make sure the chest rises.
- Use a breathing barrier when possible

### C - Circulation

Once two breaths go in, check for signs of circulation by looking for movement, effective breathing, coughing, and appropriate colour of the skin. For the more experienced rescuer, check for the presence of a carotid pulse. Check for circulation for no more than 10 seconds.

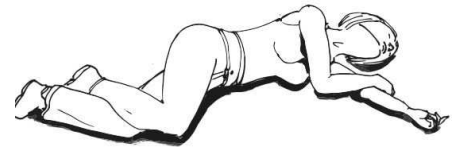
#### Things to consider:

Tip 1 – open the airway with a jaw thrust if a head or spinal injury is suspected. To do this, lift jaw upward using index fingers. Be sure not to move head and neck.



Tip 2 – to prevent disease transmission, use protective equipment. A breathing barrier should be used if you feel any risk.

Tip 3 – if the person is breathing, place them in the recovery position. Take the arm closest to you and lift it above the person's head. Grab their leg and other arm and bring them gently to their side, rolling them over. Once they are on their side, monitor the breathing and keep the airway open and await arrival of emergency personnel.



Tip 4 – if the person begins to vomit, place them in the recover position to prevent choking.

## 22.12 Unconscious Victim / Not Breathing

If you are in the situation of finding an unconscious person you should:

- Approach the person and try to wake them up by gently tapping them or shaking them and shout to see if the person responds.
- Open the person's airway, check to see if they are breathing, and check to see if there is a heartbeat.
- If the person does not respond have someone call 911, 999, 112 or other emergency number for your location, or make the call yourself if you are the only one around.

Always begin with an ABC check

Following the emergency call open the person's airway

Check to see if the person is breathing

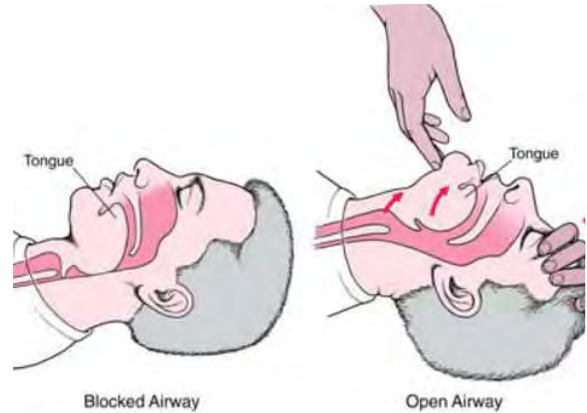
If not breathing, give them 2 slow breaths

Check for signs of blood circulation

If not breathing but have signs of blood circulating (heartbeat) the person needs oxygen. Giving repetitive oxygen is called “rescue breathing”. This provides oxygenated blood which can keep the organs alive.

For an adult 8 years and older, 1 breath every 5 seconds. Do this for about 1 minute (12 breaths).

Make sure the chin is the highest point of the face. This ensures an open airway. Make sure the nose is closed to allow air to go into the lungs. Each breath should make the chest rise. The air a person breathes out contains 16% oxygen and 5% carbon dioxide. This means when doing rescue breathing you are still supplying enough oxygen to keep the person alive.



After 12 breaths or 1 minute of rescue breathing, re-check signs of circulation. If the person is still not breathing but has signs of blood circulation, continue rescue breathing sequence.

Continue rescue breathing until:

- Emergency medical personnel arrive and take over – reaching a dock with rescue team or rescue team coming to vessel in marine situation.
- You are too exhausted to continue
- The person begins to breathe or vomit
- The person loses signs of circulation
- The area or location becomes dangerous

## Adult CPR – Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

When breathing stops, the brain begins to die in 4 – 6 minutes. Without immediate CPR, the person has little chance of survival.

If the person is not breathing and has no sign of blood circulating this means the heart has stopped pumping blood through the body. You must initiate adult CPR for cardiac arrest.

You must immediately give the person chest compressions to circulate the blood and give breaths to oxygenate the blood. When you combine chest compressions with breaths you are performing CPR and helping to keep them alive.

**Signs of no blood circulation:**

- Unresponsiveness
- No breathing
- No coughing
- No movement
- Bluish colour of the skin
- Absence of a carotid pulse

If you are unsure whether the person has signs of blood circulation, don't delay care. Just begin CPR.

**CPR Steps:**

- To find hand position, place heel of the hand and two fingers above bottom of sternum.
- Crawl up the ribs with your fingers and place 2 fingers above the sternum and plant the heel of your hand above the 2 fingers.
  - An alternative way to find the hand position, take the hand and place it in between the chest muscles also known as the lower half of the sternum.
- When giving 15 compressions
  - Keep your arms at a 90° angle to the body.
  - Keep elbows locked
  - Compress sternum 1.5 – 2"
  - Do 15 compressions in 9 seconds (100 compressions per minute)
  - Keep fingers off the chest
- Compressions force the blood out of the heart and circulate it throughout the body.
- Give 2 slow breaths to oxygenate the blood.
- Continue 15 compressions and 2 breaths for 4 cycles.
  - If you feel the ribs break, keep going.
- Once you have completed 4 cycles of 15 compressions and 2 breaths, re-check signs of circulation for no more than 10 seconds.



**Position Hands Over Sternum**

## 22.13 Radio for Help

Channel 16 is reserved for Distress, Urgency and Safety messages. Ch 16 is also used as a calling channel. Because every station should keep a continuous watch on Ch 16 it follows

that any station you wish to contact will hear you if you call them on Ch 16. As soon as contact is established you will both change to an appropriate working channel to continue the conversation. The absolute minimum time possible must be spent transmitting on Ch 16, in order to leave Ch 16 clear for its designated purpose.

### URGENCY (PAN PAN)

An Urgency message takes precedence and priority over all other radio communications except Distress. It is therefore the second most important message that can be transmitted.

The URGENCY PRIORITY for an Alert and the URGENCY SIGNAL indicates that a VERY URGENT MESSAGE follows concerning the SAFETY of a VESSEL or the SAFETY of a PERSON.

The Urgency Signal consists of the words “PAN-PAN”.  
The signal shall be said THREE times in an Urgency Call.

The use of the URGENCY PRIORITY for an alert and the use of the URGENCY SIGNAL shall be used only on the authority of the Master or person responsible for the VESSEL.

The Urgency Call Message is normally sent on the distress frequencies. However, the Urgency MESSAGE may be sent on a working frequency in case of a long message or medical message or for a repeat of a message in areas of heavy radio traffic.

### Urgency Call Example:

PAN-PAN, PAN-PAN, PAN-PAN,

ALL STATIONS, ALL STATIONS, ALL STATIONS,  
THIS IS

“MY BOAT”, “MY BOAT”, “MY BOAT”,

MY BOAT  
POSITION - :

NATURE OF URGENCY AND ASSISTANCE REQUIRED,  
ANY FURTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION,  
OVER.

## 22.14 Drowning

Do not enter the water to attempt to rescue a drowning person except as a last resort, avoid being a possible second victim! Throw any kind of floating object such as PFD, life ring, floating cushion etc. to assist and buy time so that the most practical and expedient way can be devised for recovery. If the victim is beyond effective throwing range, then row or maneuver to pick up safely.

If all other methods are impractical then enter water wearing a PFD and approach victim from behind. If you can, try to calm them down. Be alert to the possibility of a panicky victim pulling you under!

Remove victim from the water, open airway and check for breathing. Commence rescue breathing if necessary and be prepared to administer abdominal thrusts. If no spinal or head injuries are suspected, turn the victim's head to one side. If no pulse is present administer CPR and continue until medical help arrives. Near-drowning victims should always seek follow up medical care.

## 22.15 Choking

If you think a child or an adult is choking, ask them "are you choking?". If they nod yes, tell them to "cough it out".

If they are unable to speak or cough, they need your help right away.

If coughing does not work, slap it out.

- Support their upper body with one hand and help them to bend forward
- Use the heel of your hand to give five back blows between the shoulder blades
- Then check to see if there is anything in their mouth
  - If there is, tell to try and pick it out



If back blows do not work, then you should give 5 abdominal thrusts to squeeze it out. To give the abdominal thrusts

- Stand behind them
  - Put your arms around them
  - Put a fist between tummy button and the bottom of their chest
  - Put your lower hand in a fist and grasp your other hand
  - Pull sharply inwards and upwards, repeat up to 5 times
  - Check their mouth
- If they are continuing to choke call 911, 999, 112 or other emergency number for your location.
  - Continue repeating 5 back blows and 5 abdominal thrusts until the blockage clears or help medical professionals arrive.
  - If they become unresponsive, open the airway and check their breathing
  - If they are not breathing normally, start CPR



So, if someone is choking, remember:

- Cough it out
- Slap it out
- Squeeze it out
- If not cleared, call emergency number for your location (radio for help URGENCY (PAN PAN))
- Keep repeating the cycle
- Start CPR if they become unresponsive

## 22.16 Seasickness, Heat Stroke, Exhaustion

- Seasickness can lead to heat exhaustion which can be major problem.
- Seasickness is motion sickness that happens only when on the water. The inner ear becomes unbalanced due to the rocking motion of a boat or ship. The part of the brain that controls balance becomes confused because it sees objects that are normally stationary, such as pictures and furniture, suddenly become mobile.

### Recognising Symptoms

Seasickness begins with a cold sweat, is followed by an upset stomach with fatigue, and ends in nausea and vomiting.

## Treatment

- Stay close to the middle of the vessel as there is less motion than the bow and stern.
- Find a place to sit and relax and take some deep breaths of fresh air.
- Our brain will recognise the stillness and send clues to your inner ear which will regain its balance.
- Eat a bland diet.
- Stay away from alcoholic drinks and stick to water, tea or ginger ale.
- Take ginger capsules or eat ginger cookies as ginger is a natural remedy for nausea.
- Use medication. There are many over the counter remedies available.



## 22.17 Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

### Recognising Symptoms of Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Poisoning by carbon monoxide is difficult to diagnose. Symptoms are similar to illnesses such as influenza, the onset of a cold or seasickness:

- fatigue
- nausea
- headaches
- dizziness or fainting
- vomiting
- impaired judgment, confusion
- shortness of breath
- changes to seeing and hearing capacities

### Treatment of Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

When you suspect carbon monoxide poisoning, immediately taking the following steps can save lives:

- Move the person immediately to fresh air in an open area.
- Open doors and windows, turn off gas appliances and leave the boat if at dock.
- Watch the victim.
- Administer oxygen, if available.

- Call 911 or another local emergency number for immediate medical attention
- If the victim is not breathing, perform rescue breathing or CPR until medical help arrives.
- If at dock, do not re-board the boat until you receive an expert opinion (ex: firefighters)

If you are watching the victim, tell someone else to:

- Shut off all potential sources of carbon monoxide, if possible.
- Correct any ventilation problems.

If the victim does not improve, he/she will need to be taken to the hospital emergency room where he/she will be given oxygen and tests will be conducted to determine if carbon monoxide is the cause of her illness. If underway, radio for help. Carbon monoxide poisoning can be diagnosed by taking a blood sample.

### CO2 detector

- If applicable, install a marine grade CO2 detector on your vessel and always make sure that the batteries are working.
- Do not heat the cabin or cook unless in a well ventilated area.
- Do not use heaters or cookers that are not certified for marine use.
- Make sure that engine room blowers are functional at all times.
- Make sure that all ventilators and fans are functional at all times.

## 22.18 Knowledge Review

1. What is hypothermia? What are the causes?
2. What should, at minimum, a basic first aid kit comprised of?
3. How would you treat cuts, stings and burns?
4. How would you control bleeding?
5. What is shock and what are signs of shock?
6. What is the treatment for shock?
7. What is heat stroke and hypothermia and what is the treatment for each?
8. What is a heart attack and what are some possible signs of heart attack?
9. What is a stroke, what are the signs, and what should you do if stroke is suspected?
10. What actions should you take if there is an unconscious victim who is not breathing?
11. Understand actions to take to aid a drowning victim.
12. Understand actions to aid a choking victim.
13. What causes sea sickness and what is the treatment?
14. What are the symptoms of carbon monoxide poisoning?
15. How would you treat carbon monoxide poisoning?

## Module 23 RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE SKIPPER/CAPTAIN

### 23.1 Key Objectives

THE OBJECTIVES OF THIS MODULE ARE TO GET THE SKIPPER TO UNDERSTAND THE RESPONSIBILITIES THAT COME WITH BEING THE SKIPPER OF A VESSEL.

### 23.2 Skipper or Captain?

#### Skipper or Captain, what's the difference?

We are often asked what the difference is between a skipper and a Captain, as the terminology tends to vary in different countries.

- A skipper is generally referred to as someone who is in command of a recreational vessel or “pleasure craft” and is not paid for his services.
- A Captain is generally someone who is in charge of a commercial vessel and is paid for his services including the command of commercial Yachts such as Superyachts.
- In the U.S.A., a Captain is someone who is qualified by the United States Coastguard while a skipper may not have a recognised qualification.

#### Responsibilities

- The skipper is legally responsible at all times for the operation and safety of the vessel, its crew and its guests, even when asleep or below decks, this is especially important in bad weather or if the boat is in jeopardy.
- The skipper is obligated by law to render assistance to any vessel (or mariner) that is in distress whether from capsizing, fire, swamping, grounding or sinking, as long as the action does not endanger their own crew, passengers or vessel. If rendering assistance, make sure to stay with the vessel and its crew until assistance is no longer required. Be prepared to take on passengers, provide warm clothing, towing assistance or any other help that may be required of you. Alert authorities on shore.
- It is the responsibility of the skipper to cooperate with the Police at all times when out on the water and to render assistance if so asked.
- It is up to the skipper to make sure that the vessel is in seaworthy condition before it leaves the dock and has all the necessary safety and navigation equipment to undertake the intended voyage.

- The skipper is responsible for operating the boat in a safe and courteous manner and making sure that all guests, crew, passengers and all water users are safe.
- The skipper should be qualified to command the type and size of vessel that he is operating and it is important that the crew and guests are familiar with the skipper's qualifications & experience as he is ultimately responsible for the lives of all souls aboard.
- It is important that the skipper clearly informs each crew member of each of their duties while they are on board. The skipper should have a plan for every eventuality likely to occur on board, and should be able to deal with them in a confident manner.
- The crew are obligated to respond to the skippers' instructions and commands quickly and efficiently.
- The skipper should be aware of any restrictions on the use of motorboats or PWC's in restricted areas or towing in certain areas and should check local regulations before operating a vessel.
- The skipper is obligated to take care of the environment at all times bringing garbage ashore and not anchoring or grounding in environmentally sensitive areas.
- Be cautious around tugs and tows and never pass between them.
- Steer clear of shipping lanes, give way to large vessels or those restricted in ability to maneuver.
- Keep clear of ferries, docked ferries and vessels under tow.
- Avoid pollution at all costs including toxic cleaners, cross contamination of invasive species, oil spills, fuel spills, black water discharge and hull scrapings and sandings.
- Adapt to changing conditions such as wind, weather, visibility and tidal changes.
- Beware of designated waters where boats are prohibited or where special conditions apply.
- Where possible, navigate as a group if a number of small craft are travelling in the same direction.
- The skipper needs to maintain and be aware of all fuel burning devices on board such as heating, cooking or refrigeration, their operation and maintenance and what to do in the event of a fire.

### Prior to departure:

The operator of a pleasure craft should inform the persons on board about the following safety points:

- The location of personal flotation devices and/or life jackets;
- The techniques for putting on personal flotation devices and/or life jackets;
- The techniques for putting on personal flotation devices and/or life jackets when in the water
- The importance of wearing personal flotation devices and/or life jackets at all times
- The location of the emergency equipment

- The importance of keeping oneself low, on the centre line, and holding on to a rigid part of the pleasure craft while moving around on board
- The importance of keeping one's hands, arms and legs inside the pleasure craft when approaching or leaving a dock
- The effects of the motion of the pleasure craft, sunlight, waves, wind, sound and alcohol on them
- Their roles in the event of emergencies.

### Common Courtesy

- Common courtesy is expected in and around marinas and anchorages. Common sense should dictate the volume of stereos, noise of guests, crew and passengers, especially in the evening hours and overnight.
- Reduce your engine noise where applicable, stay clear of divers, swimmers, kayaks, windsurfers, paddle craft and wildlife.
- Slow down, keep your wake small when passing other vessels, in waterways and close to onshore property.
- Be aware of local hazards and obstructions
- Be aware of your boat handling characteristics and size of your wake.
- Pay attention to all posted speed limits.
- Be aware of wind and tide conditions at all times.
- Slow down in limited or restricted visibility.

### 23.3 Delegation to Crew

- Depending upon the length of voyage the skipper will likely need to set up a watch system. For a short day trip this is not necessary, as long as there is always someone on the helm steering and another keeping a lookout.
- It is essential to log your progress in a Navigational Logbook and on a chart at regular intervals.
- For longer trips a watch system will need to be set up to allow adequate rest for the crew and the skipper. The allocation of duties will depend upon the size and experience of the crew.
- In addition to the above duties there will be a need for preparation of meals and general housekeeping whilst on passage as well a general maintenance and repairs as needed.

### 23.4 Duty of Care

The skipper of a yacht is required to provide reasonable duty of care for his crew. This includes:

- competent crew to operate the vessel.
- necessary safety equipment such as life raft, flares, fire extinguisher, etc.
- a safe vessel (safe access, lighting, fencing of openings, slippery surfaces, ventilation, necessary warnings)
- a safe system of work (the degree of supervision and enforcement depends on the nature of the work and circumstances)

### Duty of care relevant to both visitors and passengers

- Courtesy and common-sense:
- Reduction of engine noise
- Keeping distance from divers below the surface
- Avoiding motor/propeller strikes
- Staying clear of swimmers, paddle craft, wildlife, properties etc.
- Controlling the wake
- Respecting the environment

### Actions to be taken after collisions

- Identifying measures to be taken to assist a vessel in distress
- Recognising distress signals as per colregs
- Mechanical breakdowns

## 23.5 Knowledge Review

1. What is the difference between a skipper and a Captain?
2. Name 8 responsibilities of a skipper
3. Name 5 elements of common courtesy
4. What are crew responsible for?
5. Name some of the components for "Duty of Care".

## TABLE OF FIGURES

|   |    |
|---|----|
| FIGURE 1-1 SAILBOAT .....                                   | 34 |
| FIGURE 1-2 CABIN CRUISER.....                               | 34 |
| FIGURE 1-3 ROWBOAT WITH OARS .....                          | 34 |
| FIGURE 1-4 FISHING TRAWLER.....                             | 35 |
| FIGURE 1-5 SPEEDBOAT / DAY FISHING BOAT.....                | 35 |
| FIGURE 1-6 SUPERYACHT .....                                 | 35 |
| FIGURE 1-7 SPORTFISH BOAT .....                             | 35 |
| FIGURE 1-8 OIL TANKER .....                                 | 36 |
| FIGURE 1-9 RIB (RIGID INFLATABLE BOAT).....                 | 36 |
| FIGURE 1-10 CRUISESHIP.....                                 | 36 |
| FIGURE 1-11 CONTAINER SHIP .....                            | 36 |
| FIGURE 1-12 CANOE.....                                      | 37 |
| FIGURE 1-13 DHOW .....                                      | 37 |
| FIGURE 1-14 JET SKI .....                                   | 37 |
| FIGURE 1-15 KAYAK .....                                     | 37 |
| FIGURE 1-16 SAILING DINGHY .....                            | 38 |
| FIGURE 1-17 SLOOP .....                                     | 38 |
| FIGURE 1-18 BERMUDA-RIGGED KETCH .....                      | 38 |
| FIGURE 1-19 FIN KEEL (SAILBOAT) .....                       | 39 |
| FIGURE 1-20 SPADE RUDDER.....                               | 40 |
| FIGURE 1-21 RUDDER.....                                     | 40 |
| FIGURE 1-22 TRANSOM HUNG RUDDER .....                       | 40 |
| FIGURE 1-23 MASTHEAD RIG.....                               | 41 |
| FIGURE 1-24 FRACTIONAL RIG.....                             | 41 |
| FIGURE 1-25 BACKSTAY.....                                   | 41 |
| FIGURE 1-26 FORESTAY (HEADSTAY) .....                       | 41 |
| FIGURE 1-27 HULL TYPES.....                                 | 42 |
| FIGURE 1-28 POWER VESSEL HULL SHAPES .....                  | 43 |
| FIGURE 1-29 PARTS OF A VESSEL AND TERMS .....               | 44 |
| FIGURE 1-30 POWERBOAT FROM BOW .....                        | 44 |
| FIGURE 1-31 POWERBOAT FROM STERN .....                      | 44 |
| FIGURE 1-32 SAILBOAT DIAGRAM .....                          | 45 |
| FIGURE 1-33 POWERBOAT DIAGRAM .....                         | 45 |
| FIGURE 1-34 FAIRLEADS.....                                  | 47 |
| FIGURE 1-35 CLEAT .....                                     | 47 |
| FIGURE 1-36 DOCKING DIAGRAM / CLEATS ON DOCK AND BOAT ..... | 47 |
| FIGURE 1-37 FENDERS.....                                    | 48 |
| FIGURE 1-38 MOORING BUOY.....                               | 48 |
| FIGURE 1-39 STANCHION.....                                  | 48 |
| FIGURE 1-40 POWERBOAT PULPIT.....                           | 48 |
| FIGURE 1-41 SAILBOAT STERNRAIL.....                         | 49 |
| FIGURE 1-42 POWERBOAT FOREDECK.....                         | 49 |
| FIGURE 1-43 COACH ROOF.....                                 | 49 |
| FIGURE 1-44 JACKSTAY .....                                  | 50 |
| FIGURE 1-45 GRAB RAILS .....                                | 50 |
| FIGURE 1-46 TOE RAIL.....                                   | 50 |
| FIGURE 1-47 COCKPIT .....                                   | 50 |
| FIGURE 1-48 COMPANIONWAY (SAILBOAT).....                    | 51 |
| FIGURE 1-49 COMPANIONWAY SUPERYACHT (POWER).....            | 51 |
| FIGURE 1-50 WASHBOARDS.....                                 | 51 |
| FIGURE 1-51 HATCH.....                                      | 51 |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| FIGURE 1-53 BIMINI ON SAILBOAT .....               | 52 |
| FIGURE 1-53 BIMINI ON POWERBOAT .....              | 52 |
| FIGURE 1-54 DODGER ON SAILBOAT .....               | 52 |
| FIGURE 1-55 BOWSPRIT .....                         | 52 |
| FIGURE 1-56 WINDLASS FOR HAULING ANCHOR .....      | 52 |
| FIGURE 1-57 ANCHOR .....                           | 53 |
| FIGURE 1-58 VENTILATORS .....                      | 53 |
| FIGURE 1-59 CONSOLE .....                          | 53 |
| FIGURE 1-60 THROTTLE CONTROL.....                  | 53 |
| FIGURE 1-61 TILLER.....                            | 53 |
| FIGURE 1-62 WATER PUMP.....                        | 54 |
| FIGURE 1-63 THRU-HULL FITTING.....                 | 54 |
| FIGURE 1-64 ELECTRIC & MANUAL BILGE PUMPS .....    | 54 |
| FIGURE 1-65 BILGE FLOAT SWITCH.....                | 54 |
| FIGURE 1-66 SALOON AND GALLEY .....                | 55 |
| FIGURE 1-67 CABIN OR STATEROOM.....                | 55 |
| FIGURE 1-68 FOREPEAK.....                          | 56 |
| FIGURE 1-69 DINETTE.....                           | 56 |
| FIGURE 1-70 GALLEY .....                           | 56 |
| FIGURE 1-71 ANCHOR LOCKER .....                    | 56 |
| FIGURE 1-72 OUTBOARD (LEFT) & INBOARD (RIGHT)..... | 57 |
| FIGURE 1-73 STERNDRIVE (INBOARD/OUTBOARD) .....    | 57 |
| FIGURE 1-74 JET DRIVE.....                         | 58 |
| FIGURE 1-75 2 STROKE ENGINE DIAGRAM.....           | 58 |
| FIGURE 1-76 PETROL OUTBOARD ENGINE .....           | 59 |
| FIGURE 1-77 MARINE DIESEL ENGINE.....              | 59 |
| FIGURE 1-78 PROPELLERS .....                       | 59 |
| FIGURE 1-79 FEATHERING PROPELLERS.....             | 60 |
| FIGURE 1-80 MULTIPLE OUTBOARD ENGINES.....         | 61 |
| FIGURE 1-81 KILL CORD.....                         | 61 |
| FIGURE 1-82 HAND-BEARING COMPASS.....              | 62 |
| FIGURE 1-83 GIMBALLED COMPASS.....                 | 62 |
| FIGURE 1-84 GIMBALLED COMPASS .....                | 62 |
| FIGURE 1-85 DEPTH SOUNDER.....                     | 63 |
| FIGURE 1-86 BAROMETER.....                         | 63 |
| FIGURE 1-87 GPS SYSTEM .....                       | 63 |
| FIGURE 1-88 HANDHELD GPS.....                      | 63 |
| FIGURE 1-89 RADAR SCREEN.....                      | 64 |
| FIGURE 1-90 RADAR REFLECTOR .....                  | 64 |
| FIGURE 1-91 SPINNING RADAR DOME.....               | 64 |
| FIGURE 1-92 PARTS OF A HULL AND VESSEL .....       | 65 |
| FIGURE 1-93 WINDWARD & LEEWARD - POWER .....       | 66 |
| FIGURE 1-94 WINDWARD & LEEWARD - SAIL.....         | 66 |
| FIGURE 2-1 SOLAS APPROVED LIFEJACKET.....          | 74 |
| FIGURE 2-2 ADULT STANDARD LIFEJACKET .....         | 75 |
| FIGURE 2-3 INFLATABLE LIFEJACKET .....             | 75 |
| FIGURE 2-4 POUCH TYPE LIFEJACKET.....              | 75 |
| FIGURE 2-5 AUTOMATIC INFLATING LIFEJACKET.....     | 75 |
| FIGURE 2-6 BUOYANCY AID OR PFD.....                | 76 |
| FIGURE 2-7 CHILDREN'S LIFEJACKET .....             | 77 |
| FIGURE 2-8 CHILDREN'S PFD .....                    | 77 |
| FIGURE 2-9 SAFETY HARNESS.....                     | 78 |

FIGURE 2-10 HORSESHOE BUOY..... 78

FIGURE 2-11 RING BUOY..... 78

FIGURE 2-12 LIFESLING..... 78

FIGURE 2-13 MAN OVERBOARD POLE..... 79

FIGURE 2-14 EPIRB..... 79

FIGURE 2-15 SART..... 79

FIGURE 2-16 A MOCK-UP RADAR TRACE FROM SART..... 80

FIGURE 2-17..... 80

FIGURE 2-18 BUOYANT..... 80

FIGURE 2-19 WATERPROOF..... 81

FIGURE 3-1 CANISTER LIFE RAFT..... 83

FIGURE 3-2 VALISE LIFE RAFT..... 83

FIGURE 3-3 HYDROSTATIC RELEASE..... 84

FIGURE 3-4 FLARES..... 84

FIGURE 3-5 WHITE HAND-HELD FLARE..... 85

FIGURE 3-6 FLARES - LEFT TO RIGHT - TYPE A, TYPE B, TYPE C, TYPE D..... 85

FIGURE 3-7 FIRE RATING SYSTEM..... 87

FIGURE 3-8 FIRE EXTINGUISHER GAUGE..... 89

FIGURE 3-9 FIRST AID KIT..... 90

FIGURE 3-10 WATERTIGHT FLASHLIGHTS..... 90

FIGURE 3-11 AIR HORN..... 90

FIGURE 3-12 RADAR REFLECTORS..... 91

FIGURE 3-13 AXE..... 91

FIGURE 3-14 VHF RADIO & HANDHELD VHF RADIO..... 91

FIGURE 3-15 BAILER..... 92

FIGURE 3-16 OARS..... 92

FIGURE 3-17 SWIM LADDER..... 92

FIGURE 3-18 NIGHT VISION BINOCULARS..... 92

FIGURE 3-19 NIGHT VISION MONOCULAR..... 92

FIGURE 3-20 MANUAL & ELECTRIC BILGE PUMPS..... 93

FIGURE 3-21 BILGE PUMP SWITCH EXAMPLES..... 93

FIGURE 3-22 WOODEN PLUGS FOR THRU-HULL FITTING..... 93

FIGURE 3-23 BATTERY SELECTOR SWITCH..... 93

FIGURE 3-24 SEA ANCHOR..... 94

FIGURE 3-25 DROGUE EXAMPLE..... 94

FIGURE 3-26 DROGUE..... 94

FIGURE 3-27 DITCH BAG..... 95

FIGURE 3-28 ABANDON SHIP BAG..... 95

FIGURE 3-29 FIRST AID KIT..... 96

FIGURE 3-30 PLOUGH ANCHOR..... 97

FIGURE 3-31 FISHERMAN ANCHOR..... 97

FIGURE 3-32 FLUKE OR "DANFORTH" ANCHOR..... 97

FIGURE 3-33 BRUCE ANCHOR..... 97

FIGURE 4-1 VESSEL REGISTRATION..... 99

FIGURE 4-2 NAUTICAL CHART..... 102

FIGURE 4-3 COUNTRY OF REGISTRATION FLAG ON STERN..... 104

FIGURE 4-4..... 104

FIGURE 4-5 CUSTOMS Q FLAG..... 104

FIGURE 4-6 DIVER DOWN "A" FLAG..... 105

FIGURE 4-7 DIVER DOWN FLAG..... 105

FIGURE 5-1 ROUND TURN & TWO HALF HITCHES..... 114

FIGURE 5-2 BOWLINE KNOT..... 114

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| FIGURE 5-3 FIGURE OF EIGHT KNOT .....                                  | 114        |
| FIGURE 5-4 ROLLING HITCH .....   | 115        |
| FIGURE 5-5 SHEET BEND & DOUBLE SHEET BEND .....                        | 115        |
| FIGURE 5-6 REEF KNOT .....   | 115        |
| FIGURE 5-7 CLOVE HITCH.....  | 115        |
| FIGURE 5-8 WHIPPING .....  | 116        |
| FIGURE 5-9 SECURING TO A CLEAT .....                                   | 116        |
| FIGURE 5-10 COILING LINE SEQUENCE .....                                | 117        |
| FIGURE 7-1 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL – APPOINT LOOKOUT.....                   | 125        |
| FIGURE 7-2 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - APPROACHING VICTIM.....                | 126        |
| FIGURE 7-3 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - TOSS LIFE SAVING FLOAT OBJECT .....    | 126        |
| FIGURE 7-4 MAN OVERBOARD SAIL - RETRIEVE VICTIM USING LIFESLING .....  | 127        |
| FIGURE 7-5 MAN OVERBOARD POWER .....                                   | 128        |
| FIGURE 7-6 DRY SUIT.....   | 129        |
| FIGURE 7-7 WET SUITS.....  | 129        |
| FIGURE 7-8 EXPOSURE COVERALL .....                                     | 129        |
| FIGURE 7-9 IMMERSION SUIT (OR SURVIVAL SUIT) .....                     | 129        |
| FIGURE 8-1 CAPSIZED VESSEL.....  | 131        |
| FIGURE 8-2 SWAMPING .....  | 131        |
| FIGURE 8-3 SINKING.....  | 131        |
| FIGURE 9-1 ANCHOR WITH RODE AND CHAIN .....                            | 134        |
| FIGURE 9-2 ANCHOR SWING .....  | 136        |
| FIGURE 9-3 SCOPE .....   | 136        |
| FIGURE 9-4 BEACH ANCHORING.....  | 137        |
| FIGURE 9-5 FORE AND AFT ANCHORING.....                                 | 138        |
| FIGURE 9-6 LAYING SECOND ANCHOR.....                                   | 138        |
| FIGURE 11-1 VARIOUS VHF AGENCIES .....                                 | 149        |
| FIGURE 11-2 EPIRB RADIO EQUIPMENT.....                                 | 154        |
| FIGURE 11-3 NAVTEX .....   | 155        |
| FIGURE 11-4 INMARSAT OVERVIEW .....                                    | 155        |
| <b>FIGURE 11-5 SART .....</b>  | <b>156</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-6 SART RADAR SCREEN .....</b>                             | <b>156</b> |
| FIGURE 11-7 VHF RADIO SET .....  | 157        |
| FIGURE 11-8 HIGH GAIN ANTENNA .....                                    | 157        |
| FIGURE 11-9 DSC ENABLED VHF RADIO .....                                | 159        |
| FIGURE 11-10 TYPICAL DSC ENABLED VHF RADIO CONTROLS .....              | 159        |
| FIGURE 11-11 HANDHELD VHF RADIO .....                                  | 162        |
| <b>FIGURE 11-12 MAYDAY EXAMPLE 1.....</b>                              | <b>172</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-13 MAYDAY EXAMPLE 2.....</b>                              | <b>174</b> |
| FIGURE 11-14 DSC RED BUTTON .....                                      | 174        |
| <b>FIGURE 11-15 MAYDAY RESPONSE.....</b>                               | <b>176</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-16 MAYDAY RELAY .....</b>                                 | <b>177</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-17 IMPOSING RADIO SILENCE .....</b>                       | <b>178</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-18 MAYDAY RESTRICTED WORKING .....</b>                    | <b>178</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-19 END OF RADIO SILENCE .....</b>                         | <b>179</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-20 CANCELLING AN ACCIDENTAL DSC DISTRESS MESSAGE.....</b> | <b>179</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-21 PAN PAN STRUCTURE .....</b>                            | <b>180</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-22 EXAMPLE PAN PAN MESSAGE.....</b>                       | <b>181</b> |
| FIGURE 11-23 – CAPSIZED VESSEL .....                                   | 182        |
| <b>FIGURE 11-24 – SAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE.....</b>                     | <b>183</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-25 EXAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE 2.....</b>                    | <b>183</b> |
| <b>FIGURE 11-26 EXAMPLE SECURITE MESSAGE 3.....</b>                    | <b>183</b> |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| FIGURE 12-3 INFLATABLE DINGHY.....                                | 186 |
| FIGURE 12-3 RIGID DINGHY.....                                     | 186 |
| FIGURE 12-3 SMALL POWERBOAT DINGHY.....                           | 186 |
| FIGURE 12-4 JET DRIVE.....  | 187 |
| FIGURE 12-5 SINGLE OUTBOARD ENGINE.....                           | 187 |
| FIGURE 12-6 MULTIPLE OUTBOARD ENGINES.....                        | 187 |
| FIGURE 12-7 STEERING WITH A TILLER.....                           | 188 |
| FIGURE 12-8 CORRODED PROP DUE TO CAVITATION.....                  | 188 |
| FIGURE 12-9 KILL CORD.....  | 190 |
| FIGURE 12-10 PRIMER BULB.....                                     | 190 |
| FIGURE 12-11 THROTTLE CONTROL.....                                | 190 |
| FIGURE 12-12 DINGHY STABILITY / ENSURE BALANCE OF PASSENGERS..... | 191 |
| FIGURE 12-13 BEACHING SEQUENCE.....                               | 193 |
| FIGURE 12-14 BUNG PLUG.....                                       | 195 |
| FIGURE 12-15 TRAILER WINCH.....                                   | 196 |
| FIGURE 12-16 TRAILER LAUNCH SEQUENCE.....                         | 196 |
| FIGURE 12-17 CRANE LAUNCH.....                                    | 197 |
| FIGURE 12-18 HALYARD LAUNCH.....                                  | 198 |
| FIGURE 12-19 STERN LAUNCH.....                                    | 198 |
| FIGURE 12-20 TOWING ALONGSIDE.....                                | 199 |
| FIGURE 12-21 BRIDLE TOWING.....                                   | 199 |
| FIGURE 13-1 FAIRLEAD & CLEATS.....                                | 202 |
| FIGURE 13-2 DOCKING DIAGRAM / CLEATS ON DOCK AND BOAT.....        | 202 |
| FIGURE 13-3 COMING ALONGSIDE A DOCK.....                          | 203 |
| FIGURE 13-4 ARRIVAL AT DOCK.....                                  | 204 |
| FIGURE 13-5 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH CROSSWIND.....               | 204 |
| FIGURE 13-6 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH WIND BLOWING ONTO DOCK.....  | 204 |
| FIGURE 13-7 DEPARTURE FROM DOCK WITH WIND BLOWING OFF DOCK.....   | 205 |
| FIGURE 13-8 CLEARING A DOCK.....                                  | 205 |
| FIGURE 13-9 TRIM TAB.....   | 206 |
| FIGURE 13-10 PLANING BOAT.....                                    | 207 |
| FIGURE 14-1 COLD FRONT DIAGRAM -FAHRENHEIT.....                   | 211 |
| FIGURE 14-2 FRONTS COLLIDING.....                                 | 214 |
| FIGURE 14-3 MARITIME TROPICAL AIR MASS.....                       | 215 |
| FIGURE 14-4 CONTINENTAL POLAR AIR MASS.....                       | 215 |
| FIGURE 14-5 SEA BREEZE.....                                       | 216 |
| FIGURE 14-6 LAND BREEZE.....                                      | 216 |
| FIGURE 14-7 KATABATIC & ANABATIC WINDS.....                       | 217 |
| FIGURE 14-8 BEAUFORT FORCE SEA STATE/WIND SCALE.....              | 218 |
| FIGURE 14-9 BEAUFORT FORCE 0 & 1 PHOTO.....                       | 219 |
| FIGURE 14-10 BEAUFORT FORCE 2 & 3 PHOTOS.....                     | 219 |
| FIGURE 14-11 BEAUFORT FORCE 4 & 5 PHOTOS.....                     | 220 |
| FIGURE 14-12 BEAUFORT FORCE 6 & 7 PHOTO.....                      | 220 |
| FIGURE 14-13 BEAUFORT FORCE 8 & 9 PHOTO.....                      | 221 |
| FIGURE 14-14 BEAUFORT FORCE 10 PHOTOS.....                        | 221 |
| FIGURE 14-15 BEAUFORT FORCE 11 PHOTOS.....                        | 222 |
| FIGURE 14-16 BEAUFORT FORCE 12 PHOTOS.....                        | 222 |
| FIGURE 14-17 CIRRUS CLOUDS.....                                   | 223 |
| FIGURE 14-18 CUMULUS CLOUDS.....                                  | 223 |
| FIGURE 14-19 STRATUS CLOUDS.....                                  | 224 |
| FIGURE 14-26 CUMULONIMBUS.....                                    | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-25 STRATOCUMULUS.....                                   | 225 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| FIGURE 14-23 ALTOCUMULUS.....  | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-22 .....   | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-21 .....   | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-20 .....   | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-24 NIMBOSTRATUS.....   | 225 |
| FIGURE 14-27 HURRICANE DYNAMICS.....                                   | 226 |
| FIGURE 14-28 FOG - SAN FRANCISCO BAY .....                             | 227 |
| FIGURE 15-1 LEESHORE.....  | 232 |
| FIGURE 15-2 SEA ANCHOR .....   | 233 |
| FIGURE 15-3 DROGUE EXAMPLE.....  | 233 |
| FIGURE 15-4 DROGUE .....   | 233 |
| FIGURE 15-5 ICE ACCRETION .....  | 234 |
| FIGURE 16-1 COMPASS .....  | 241 |
| FIGURE 16-2 COMPASS ROSE SHOWN ON CHART.....                           | 242 |
| FIGURE 16-3 VARIATION .....  | 242 |
| FIGURE 16-4 DEVIATION .....  | 244 |
| FIGURE 16-5 SIMPLE COMPASS ROSE.....                                   | 245 |
| FIGURE 16-6 HAND BEARING COMPASS (IMAGE COURTESY OF WEST MARINE) ..... | 247 |
| FIGURE 17-1 NAUTICAL CHART .....                                       | 250 |
| FIGURE 17-2 PARALLEL RULES.....  | 252 |
| FIGURE 17-3 DIVIDERS .....   | 252 |
| FIGURE 17-4 BRETON PLOTTER .....                                       | 252 |
| FIGURE 17-5 SIMPLE COMPASS ROSE.....                                   | 254 |
| FIGURE 17-6 TIDAL DIAMOND.....   | 255 |
| FIGURE 17-7 CHART NO. 1 (U.S.A.) .....                                 | 255 |
| FIGURE 17-8 CHART INFORMATION EXAMPLE.....                             | 256 |
| FIGURE 17-9 TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME .....                            | 256 |
| FIGURE 17-10 COLORS & LEVELS .....                                     | 257 |
| FIGURE 17-11 LATITUDE & LONGITUDE.....                                 | 257 |
| FIGURE 17-12 DETERMINING COURSE TO STEER .....                         | 258 |
| FIGURE 17-13 TWENTY FOUR HOUR CLOCK.....                               | 259 |
| FIGURE 17-14 TAKING A BEARING .....                                    | 262 |
| FIGURE 17-15 BASIC FIX .....   | 262 |
| FIGURE 17-16 TWO POINT FIX.....  | 263 |
| FIGURE 17-17 THREE POINT FIX.....                                      | 264 |
| FIGURE 17-18 COCKED HAT.....   | 265 |
| FIGURE 17-19 TAKING BEARING WITH HANDHELD COMPASS.....                 | 265 |
| FIGURE 17-20 TRANSIT (AS PLOTTED ON THE CHART).....                    | 267 |
| FIGURE 17-21 TRANSIT (AS SEEN FROM BOAT).....                          | 267 |
| FIGURE 17-22 CLEARING LINE .....                                       | 268 |
| FIGURE 17-23 YACHT (SHIP) LOG.....                                     | 270 |
| FIGURE 18-1 NEAP TIDES .....   | 274 |
| FIGURE 18-2 SPRING TIDES .....   | 274 |
| FIGURE 18-3 TIDAL HEIGHT DEFINITIONS .....                             | 274 |
| FIGURE 18-4 TIDAL HEIGHT .....   | 277 |
| FIGURE 18-5 CURRENT TABLE EXAMPLE .....                                | 279 |
| FIGURE 18-6 HARBOUR TIDES EXAMPLE.....                                 | 279 |
| FIGURE 18-7 CURRENT TABLE EXAMPLE LONG ISLAND SOUND.....               | 280 |
| FIGURE 18-8 DIGITAL TIDAL ATLAS EXAMPLE.....                           | 281 |
| FIGURE 18-9 TIDAL DIAMOND CHART EXAMPLE.....                           | 282 |
| FIGURE 19-1 CAN SHAPE MARK.....  | 285 |
| FIGURE 19-2 CONE SHAPE MARK.....                                       | 285 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| FIGURE 19-3 LATERAL MARKS .....                                    | 286 |
| FIGURE 19-4 IALA A AND B .....                                     | 286 |
| FIGURE 19-5 ISOLATED DANGER MARK .....                             | 289 |
| FIGURE 19-6 SAFE WATER MARK .....                                  | 289 |
| FIGURE 19-7 SPECIAL MARK .....                                     | 289 |
| FIGURE 19-8 WRECK BUOY .....                                       | 290 |
| FIGURE 19-9 CARDINAL MARKS IALA A & B .....                        | 292 |
| FIGURE 20-1 SAILING VESSEL .....                                   | 294 |
| FIGURE 20-2 POWER DRIVEN VESSEL .....                              | 294 |
| FIGURE 20-3 VESSEL ENGAGED IN FISHING .....                        | 295 |
| FIGURE 20-4 VESSEL RESTRICTED IN HER ABILITY TO MANEUVER .....     | 295 |
| FIGURE 20-5 VESSEL CONSTRAINED BY HER DRAUGHT .....                | 295 |
| FIGURE 20-6 VESSEL / RESTRICTED VISIBILITY .....                   | 295 |
| FIGURE 20-7 VESSEL UNDERWAY .....                                  | 295 |
| FIGURE 20-8 RISK OF COLLISION - RULE 7 .....                       | 298 |
| FIGURE 20-9 TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEMES - RULE 10 .....             | 299 |
| FIGURE 20-10 WIND ON DIFFERENT SIDE - RULE 12 .....                | 300 |
| FIGURE 20-11 WIND FROM SAME SIDE - RULE 12 .....                   | 300 |
| FIGURE 20-12 EXAMPLE DIAGRAM FOR RULE 12 .....                     | 301 |
| FIGURE 20-13 OVERTAKING SECTOR - RULE 13 .....                     | 301 |
| FIGURE 20-14 POWER VESSELS MEET HEAD ON -RULE 14 .....             | 301 |
| FIGURE 20-15 POWER VESSELS CROSSING – .....                        | 302 |
| FIGURE 20-16 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS .....                             | 305 |
| FIGURE 20-17 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS .....                             | 305 |
| FIGURE 20-18 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS .....                             | 305 |
| FIGURE 20-19 SIDE & STERN LIGHTS .....                             | 306 |
| FIGURE 20-20 VESSELS AT ANCHOR LIGHTS .....                        | 306 |
| FIGURE 20-21 NAVIGATION LIGHTS .....                               | 307 |
| FIGURE 20-22 SMALL BOAT / ONE STERN LIGHT SHOWING ALL AROUND ..... | 308 |
| FIGURE 20-23 DAY SHAPES - RESTRICTED IN ABILITY TO MANOEUVRE ..... | 309 |
| FIGURE 20-24 DAY SHAPE - AGROUND .....                             | 309 |
| FIGURE 20-25 DAY SHAPE - NOT UNDER COMMAND .....                   | 309 |
| FIGURE 20-26 DAY SHAPE - ANCHORED .....                            | 309 |
| FIGURE 20-27 DAY SHAPE - DIVING OPERATIONS .....                   | 310 |
| FIGURE 20-28 DAY SHAPE - FISHING .....                             | 310 |
| FIGURE 20-29 DAY SHAPES - VARIOUS .....                            | 310 |
| FIGURE 20-30 DAY SHAPE - CONSTRAINED BY DRAFT .....                | 310 |
| FIGURE 20-31 DAY SHAPE - MINESWEEPING .....                        | 311 |
| FIGURE 20-32 - DAY SHAPE - TOWING .....                            | 311 |
| FIGURE 20-33 DAY SHAPE - MOTOR SAILING .....                       | 311 |
| FIGURE 21-1 NAVIGATION LIGHTS .....                                | 315 |
| FIGURE 21-2 SMALL BOAT / ONE STERN LIGHT SHOWING ALL AROUND .....  | 316 |
| FIGURE 21-3 MASTHEAD LIGHT 360° .....                              | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-4 TOWING LIGHT 135° .....                                | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-5 MASTHEAD LIGHT 225° .....                              | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-6 STARBOARD SIDELIGHT 112.5° .....                       | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-7 PORT SIDELIGHT 112.5° .....                            | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-8 STERNLIGHT 135° .....                                  | 317 |
| FIGURE 21-9 PBT UNDER 12M OPTION 2 .....                           | 318 |
| FIGURE 21-10 PBT UNDER 12M OPTION 1 .....                          | 318 |
| FIGURE 21-11 PBT OVER 12M UP TO 50M .....                          | 318 |
| FIGURE 21-12 SBT UNDER 7M OPTION 3 .....                           | 319 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| FIGURE 21-13 SBT UNDER 7M OPTION 2 .....  | 319 |
| FIGURE 21-14 SBT UNDER 7M OPTION 1 .....  | 319 |
| FIGURE 21-15 SBT UP TO 20M OPTION 1.....  | 320 |
| FIGURE 21-16 SBT UP TO 20M OPTION 2.....  | 320 |
| FIGURE 21-17 SBT 20M AND OVER.....  | 320 |
| FIGURE 21-18 HUMAN POWER OPTION 2.....  | 321 |
| FIGURE 21-19 HUMAN POWER OPTION 1 .....   | 321 |
| FIGURE 21-20 BOATS AT ANCHOR.....   | 321 |
| FIGURE 22-1 HUDDLE POSITION .....   | 325 |
| FIGURE 22-2 H.E.L.P. POSITION .....   | 325 |
| FIGURE 22-3 CONTROL BLEEDING .....  | 327 |
| FIGURE 22-4 HEART (BOX REFERS TO FIGURE BELOW WHERE BLOCKAGE HAS OCCURRED)..... | 329 |
| FIGURE 22-5 BLOCKAGE IN RIGHT CORONARY ARTERY .....                             | 329 |
| FIGURE 22-6 STROKE.....   | 330 |

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

### A

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Aback         | Sail sheeted so that the wind fills the "back" of the sail. |
| Abeam         | At right angles to the side of the boat.                    |
| Aboard        | Situated on the boat.                                       |
| Adrift        | A boat drifting without being propelled.                    |
| Aft           | At or towards the stern or behind the boat.                 |
| Aground       | A boat whose keel is touching the bottom.                   |
| Amidships     | Towards the center of the boat.                             |
| Apparent wind | The wind aboard a moving boat.                              |
| Astern        | Behind the stern of the boat.                               |
| Athwartships  | Across the boat from side to side.                          |

### B

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Backstay   | The standing rigging running from the stern to the top of the mast, keeping the mast from falling forward.  |
| Back       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To Sheet a sail to windward and fill the back of the sail and thus stop the boat or propel it backwards.</li> <li>2. In the case of the wind - to shift counter clockwise from its previous direction.</li> </ol> |
| Bail       | To empty the boat of water.   |
| Ballast    | Weight in the keel of a boat that provides stability.   |
| Barometer  | An instrument that measures air pressure, an aid to forecasting the weather.  |
| Batten     | A thin wood or fiberglass slat that slides into a pocket in the leech of a sail, helping to maintain an aerodynamic shape.  |
| Beam       | The width of a boat at its widest point.  |
| Beam reach | (Point of sail) Sailing in a direction at approximately 90° to the wind.  |
| Bear away  | To "fall off" or head away from the wind.   |
| Bearing    | The direction from one object to another expressed in compass degrees.  |
| Beating    | A course sailed up wind.  |
| Below      | The area of a boat beneath the deck.  |
| Bend       | To attach a sail to a spar or a headstay or to attach a line to a sail.   |
| Bight      | A loop in a line.   |
| Bilge      | The lowest part of the boats interior where water on board will collect.  |
| Bitter end | The end of a line.  |
| Blanket    | To use the sail or object to block the wind from filling a sail.  |
| Block      | A pulley on a boat.   |

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Boat hook       | A pole with a hook on the end used for grabbing hold of a mooring or retrieving something that has fallen overboard.                            |
| Boat speed      | The speed of a boat through the water.  |
| Boltrope        | The rope that is sewn into the foot and luff of some mainsails and the luff of some jibs by which the sails are attached to the boat.           |
| Boom            | The spar extending directly aft from the mast to which the foot of the main sail is attached.   |
| Boom vang       | A block and tackle system, which pulls the boom down to assist sail control.  |
| Bottom          | The underside of a boat.  |
| Bow             | The forward part of the boat.   |
| Bow line        | A line running from the bow of the boat to the dock or mooring.   |
| Bow Spring      | A line running from the bow of the boat parallel to the dock or mooring that stops the boat from moving forward along the dock.                 |
| Bowline         | A knot designed to make a loop that will not slip and can be easily untied.   |
| Breastline      | A short line leading directly from the boat to the dock.  |
| Broach          | An uncontrolled rounding up into the wind, usually from a downwind point of sail.   |
| Broad reach     | (Point of sail) Sailing in a direction with the wind at the rear corner (the quarter) of the boat. Approximately 135° from the bow of the boat. |
| Bulkhead        | A wall that runs athwartships on a boat, usually providing structural support to the hull   |
| Buoy            | A floating navigation marker.   |
| Buoyancy        | The ability of an object to float.  |
| Bulwark         | A solid side wall, often about waist high, from the outside edge of the deck to prevent someone falling overboard.                              |
| Burdened vessel | The vessel required to give way for another boat when the two may be on a collision course.   |
| By the lee      | A sailboat running with the wind coming over the same side of the boat as the boom.   |

## C

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Cabin       | The interior of the boat   |
| Can         | In the U.S. an odd numbered green buoy marking the left side of the channel when returning to harbour. |
| Capsize     | To tip or turn a boat over.  |
| Cast off    | To release a line when leaving a dock or mooring.  |
| Catamaran   | A twin hulled vessel with a deck or trampoline between the hulls.                                      |
| Catboat     | A boat with only a mainsail and an unstayed mast located at the bow.                                   |
| Centerboard | A pivoting board that can be lowered and used like a keel to keep a boat from slipping to leeward.     |
| Centerline  | The midline of the boat running from bow to stern.   |

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Chafe        | Wear on a line caused by rubbing.   |
| Chainplates  | Strong metal plates which connect the shrouds to the boat.  |
| Channel      | A (usually narrow) lane, marked by buoys, in which the water is deep enough to allow a vessel safe passage.                               |
| Chart        | A nautical map.   |
| Charter      | To rent a boat.   |
| Chock        | A guide mounted on the deck through which docklines and anchor rode are run.  |
| Chop         | Rough, short, steep waves.  |
| Cleat        | A nautical fitting that is used to secure a line.   |
| Clew         | The lower aft corner of a sail. The clew of the mainsail is held taut by the outhaul. The jib sheets are attached to the clew of the jib. |
| Close hauled | (Point of sail). The point of sail that is closest to the wind, when the sails are hauled close to the centerline of the boat.            |
| Close reach  | (Point of sail) Sailing in a direction with the wind forward of the beam (about 70° from the bow).  |
| Coaming      | The short protective wall that surrounds the cockpit or hatch.  |
| Cockpit      | The lower area of the deck in which the steering and sail controls are located.   |
| Coil         | To loop a line neatly so it can be stored, or a reel of line.   |
| Come about   | See tack.   |
| Companionway | The steps leading from the cockpit or deck to the cabin below.  |
| Compass      | The magnetic instrument which indicates the direction in which the boat is headed.  |
| Compass rose | The circles on a chart which indicate the direction of true and magnetic north.   |
| Course       | The direction in which the boat is being steered.   |
| Crew         | Besides the skipper, anyone on board whom helps run the boat.   |
| Cunningham   | A line running through a grommet a short distance above the tack of the mainsail which is used to tension the luff of the main.           |
| Current      | The horizontal movement of water caused by tides, wind and other forces.  |
| Cutter       | A single masted boat rigged with both jib and staysail.   |

## D

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Daysailer     | A small sailboat.   |
| Dead downwind | Sailing in a direction straight downwind.   |
| Deck          | The mostly flat area on top of the boat.  |
| De-power      | To reduce the power in the sails by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Luffing, pointing the boat too close to the wind so that the sails are unable to draw power.</li> <li>2. Easing the sheets so that the sails flutter.</li> </ol> |

3. Stalling. Sheeting the sails in so hard that the airflow over them stalls.

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Dhow         | The generic name of a number of traditional sailing vessels with one or more masts with lateen sails used in the Red Sea and Indian Ocean region. |
| Dinghy       | A small sailboat or rowboat.  |
| Displacement | The weight of the boat; therefore the amount of water that it displaces.  |
| Dock         | The quay or pontoon where a boat may be tied up OR the act of bringing a boat alongside to rest alongside.  |
| Dockline     | A line used to secure a boat to the dock.   |
| Dodger       | A canvas protection in front of the cockpit of some boats that is designed to keep spray off the skipper and crew.                                |
| Downhaul     | A line used to pull down on the movable gooseneck on some boats to tension the luff of the mainsail. The cunningham has the same function.        |
| Draft        | The depth of a boat's keel from the water's surface.  |

## E

|      |                            |
|------|----------------------------|
| Ease | To let out a line or sail. |
| Ebb  | An outgoing tide.          |

## F

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Fairlead      | A fitting that guides sheets and other lines in a way that reduces friction and therefore chafe. |
| Fairway       | The center of a channel.   |
| Fake (flake)  | Lay out a line on the deck using large loops to keep it from becoming tangled.                   |
| Fall off      | (See also head down & bear away) Alter course away from the wind.                                |
| Fast          | Secured.   |
| Fathom        | A measure of the depth of water. One fathom equals six feet.                                     |
| Fender        | An inflated rubber or plastic bumper used to protect a boat by keeping it from hitting the dock. |
| Fend off      | Push off.  |
| Fetch         | The distance of open water to windward between the shore and the boat                            |
| Fid           | A tapered spike used to open the lay of a rope when splicing.                                    |
| Flood         | An incoming tide.  |
| Following sea | Wave pattern hitting the stern of the boat.  |
| Foot          | The bottom edge of the sail.   |
| Fore          | Forward.   |
| Forepeak      | An accommodation or storage area in the bow below the deck.                                      |
| Foresail      | A jib or genoa.  |

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Forestay          | The standing rigging running from the bow to the mast top and to which the foresail is secured. |
| Forward           | Towards the bow.  |
| Fouled            | Tangled.  |
| Fractional rig    | When the forestay is attached to the mast some distance below the top.                          |
| Foul weather gear | Water resistant clothing.   |
| Freeboard         | The height of the hull above the water's surface.   |
| Full              | Not luffing.  |
| Furl              | To fold or roll up a sail.  |

## G

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Gaff            | On some boats, a spar along the top edge of a four sided fore and aft sail.   |
| Genoa           | A large fore sail whose clew extends aft of the mast.   |
| Give way vessel | The vessel required, by the regulations, to give way in a collision situation.  |
| G.M.T           | Greenwich Mean Time. The time at the prime meridian in Greenwich, London, England. Now referred to as Universal Time Coordinated U.T.C. |
| Gooseneck       | The strong fitting that connects the boom to the mast.  |
| Great Circle    | A line drawn on a chart which is accurate over a long distance, a section of the Earth which intersects the center of the Earth.        |
| Grommet         | A reinforcing ring set in a sail.   |
| Ground tackle   | Collective term for the anchor and rode (chain and line).   |
| Gudgeon         | A fitting attached to the stern into which the pintles of a rudder are inserted.  |
| Gunwale         | (gunnel) The edge of the deck where it meets the topsides.  |
| Gybe            | See jibe.   |

## H

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Halyard    | A line used to raise or lower a sail.   |
| Hank       | A snap hook which is used to secure the luff of a foresail to the forestay.                             |
| Hard a-lee | (also Helms a-lee, lee oh, lee ho) The call given to the crew that will initiate the action of tacking. |
| Hard over  | To turn the helm or tiller as far as possible in one direction.   |
| Hatch      | A large covered opening in the deck.  |
| Haul in    | to tighten a line.  |
| Head       | Top corner of a sail OR the toilet on a boat.   |
| Headboard  | The small reinforcing board affixed to the head of a sail.  |
| Headed     | A wind shift which causes the boat to head down or causes the sails to be sheeted in.                   |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Heading        | the direction of the boat expressed in degrees.   |
| Head down      | To fall off, changing course away from the wind.  |
| Head off       | See head down.  |
| Head up        | To come up, changing course towards the wind.   |
| Headsail       | A jib, genoa attached to the forestay.  |
| Headstay       | See forestay. The standing rigging running from the bow to the top of the mast.   |
| Head to wind   | When the bow of the boat is dead into the wind.   |
| Headway        | Forward progress.   |
| Heave          | To throw.   |
| Heave to       | To hold one's position in the water by using the force of the sails and the rudder to counteract each other.  |
| Holding ground | The seabed or bottom ground in an anchorage.  |
| Hove to        | A boat that has completed the process of heaving to with its aback, its main trimmed and its rudder positioned to hold the vessel close to the wind.        |
| Heavy weather  | Strong winds and large waves.   |
| Heel           | The lean of the boat caused by the wind.  |
| Helm           | The tiller.   |
| Helmsman       | The person responsible for steering the boat.   |
| Hull           | The body of the boat, excluding the rig and sails.  |
| Hull speed     | The theoretical maximum speed of a sailboat determined by the length of its waterline. The formula is 1.4x the square root of the waterline length in feet. |

## I

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| Inboard  | Inside of the rail of the boat.                             |
| In irons | A boat that is head to wind and unable to move or maneuver. |

## J

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| Jackstay   | A wire or webbing strap attached at the front and back of a vessel along the deck to which a safety harness line may be clipped. |
| Jib        | The small forward sail of a boat that is attached to the forestay.   |
| Jibe       | See also gybe. To change the direction of the boat by steering the stern through the wind  |
| Jibe oh    | The command given to the crew when starting a jibe.  |
| Jiffy reef | See slab reefing. A quick reefing system allowing a section of the mainsail to be pulled down and tied to the boom.              |
| Jury rig   | An improvised temporary repair.  |

## K

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Kedge     | A smaller anchor than the main or bower anchor. Often used for maneuvering or kedging off.                                  |
| Kedge off | To use an anchor to pull a boat into deeper water after it has run aground.   |
| Keel      | The heavy vertical fin beneath a boat that helps keep it upright and prevents it from slipping sideways in the water.       |
| Ketch     | A two masted sailboat on which the mizzen (after) mast is lower than the mainmast and is located forward of the rudderpost. |
| Knockdown | A boat heeled so far that one of its spreaders touches the water.   |
| Knot      | one nautical mile per hour.   |

## L

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Land breeze  | A wind that blows over the land and out to sea.   |
| Lash         | To tie down.  |
| La.          | To sail a course that will clear an obstacle without tacking.   |
| Lazarette    | A storage compartment built into the cockpit or deck.   |
| Lazy sheet   | The windward side jib sheet that is not under strain.   |
| Lead         | To pass a line through a fitting or block.  |
| Lee helm     | The boat's tendency to turn away from the wind.   |
| Lee shore    | Land which is on the leeward side of the boat. A potential danger because the wind will be blowing the boat towards it.   |
| Leech        | The after edge of a sail.   |
| Leeward      | The direction away from the wind that is the direction that the wind is blowing to.   |
| Leeward side | The side of the boat or sail that is away from the wind.  |
| Leeway       | The sideways slippage of the boat in a downwind direction.  |
| Lifeline     | Rope or wire supported by stanchions, around the outside of the deck to help prevent crew members from falling overboard.   |
| Lift         | The force that results from air passing by a sail or water past a keel that moves the boat forward and sideways, OR a change in the direction of the wind which allows the boat to head up. |
| Line         | A rope.   |
| LOA          | The maximum Length Overall fore and aft along the hull.   |
| Lubber line  | A line on a magnetic compass to help the helmsman steer the correct course.   |
| Luff         | The leading edge of a sail, OR the fluttering of a sail caused by aiming too close to the wind.   |
| Lull         | A decrease in wind speed for a short duration.  |
| LWL          | The length fore and aft along the hull measured at the waterline.   |

## M

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Magnetic    | In reference to the magnetic north rather than true north.  |
| Mainmast    | The taller of two masts on a boat.  |
| Mainsail    | The sail hoisted on the mast of a sloop or cutter or the sail hoisted on the mainmast of a ketch or yawl. |
| Mainsheet   | The controlling line for the mainsail.  |
| Marlinspike | A pointed tool used to loosen knots.  |
| Mast        | The vertical spar in the middle of a boat from which the mainsail is set.                                 |
| Masthead    | The top of the mast   |
| Maststep    | The fitting in which the foot of the mast sits.   |
| Mizzen      | The small aftermost sail on a ketch or yawl hoisted on the mizzenmast                                     |
| Mizzenmast  | The shorter mast aft of the main mast on a ketch or yawl.   |
| Mooring     | A permanently anchored ball or buoy to which a boat can be tied.  |

## N

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Nautical mile    | Standard nautical unit of distance, equal to one minute of arc of the Earth's latitude or 6080 feet.                    |
| Navigation rules | Laws established to prevent collisions on the water.  |
| No-go zone       | An area into the wind in which a sailboat cannot produce power to sail.   |
| Nun              | A red even numbered buoy marking the right side of a channel when returning to port. Nuns are usually paired with cans. |

## O

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Offshore wind | Wind blowing off (away from) the shore and out to sea.  |
| Offshore      | Away from or out of sight of land.  |
| Off the wind  | Not close-hauled.   |
| On the wind   | Sailing up wind, close-hauled.  |
| Outboard      | Outside the rail of a boat.   |
| Outhaul       | The controlling line attached to the clew of a mainsail used to tension the foot of the sail. |
| Overpowered   | A boat that is heeling too far because it has too much sail up for the amount of wind.        |

## P

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| Painter  | The line attached to the bow of a dinghy.                         |
| Pay out  | To ease a line.   |
| P.F.D.   | Abbreviation for Personal Flotation Device such as a life jacket. |
| Pinching | Sailing too close to the wind.                                    |

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Pintle          | Small metal extension on a rudder that slides into a gudgeon on the transom. The gudgeon/pintle fitting allows the rudder to swing back and forth. |
| Point           | To steer close to the wind, OR a compass point equals 11¼ degrees. Compass annotation used before headings were referred to in 360° notation.      |
| Points of sail  | Boats direction in relation to the wind - i.e., close hauled, reaching etc.  |
| Port            | The left hand side of the boat when facing forward, OR, a harbour, OR, a window in a cabin on a boat.  |
| Port tack       | Sailing on any point of sail with the wind coming over the port side of the boat.  |
| Prevailing wind | Typical or consistent wind direction.  |
| Puff            | An increase in wind speed.   |
| Pulpit          | A guardrail at the bows of a vessel.   |

## Q

|         |                                       |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| Quarter | The sides of the boat near the stern. |
|---------|---------------------------------------|

## R

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Rail            | The outer edges of the deck.   |
| Rake            | The angle of the mast.   |
| Range           | The alignment of two objects that indicate the middle of a channel.  |
| Reach           | One of the several points of sail across the wind.   |
| Ready about     | The command given to the crew to prepare to tack.  |
| Ready to jibe   | The command given to the crew to prepare to jibe.  |
| Reef            | To reduce the area of a sail.  |
| Reeve           | To pass a line through a ring or block.  |
| Rhumb line      | A straight line drawn on a Mercator chart, which intersects all meridians at the same angle. Accurate enough for courses of less than 600 miles. For great distances a Great Circle route is used. |
| Rig             | The design of a boat's masts, standing rigging and sail plan, OR, to prepare a boat to go to sea.  |
| Rigging         | The wires and lines used to support and control sails.   |
| Roach           | The sail area aft of a straight line running between the head and clew of a sail.  |
| Rode            | The line and chain attached from the boat to the anchor.   |
| Roller-furling  | A mechanical system to roll up a headsail around the headstay.   |
| Rudder          | A vertical blade attached to the bottom of the hull which is used to steer the boat.   |
| Run             | Point of sailing when the wind is coming from dead astern.   |
| Running rigging | The lines used to control the sails.   |

## S

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Sail ties        | Lengths of line or webbing used to secure sails when they are dropped or to secure the unused portion of a reefed sail.               |
| Schooner         | A two masted boat whose foremast is the same height or shorter than its mainmast.   |
| Scope            | The length of anchor rode paid out in relation to the maximum depth of water.   |
| Scull            | To propel a boat with a single oar fixed in a notch through the transom.  |
| Scupper          | A cockpit or deck drain.  |
| Sea breeze       | A wind that blows from the sea onto the land.   |
| Seacock          | A valve which opens and closes a hole used as an intake or discharge from the boat.   |
| Secure           | The make safe or tie down.  |
| Set              | The direction of the current, OR, to trim the sails.  |
| Shackle          | A metal fitting at the end of a line used to attach the line to a sail or another fitting.  |
| Shake out        | To remove a reef.   |
| Sheave           | The wheel inside a block or fitting over which the line runs freely.  |
| Sheet            | A line used to control a sail by pulling it in or easing it out.  |
| Shoal            | An area of shallow water.   |
| Shroud           | Standing rigging at the side of the mast.   |
| Singlehanded     | Sailing alone.  |
| Skeg             | A vertical fin in front of the rudder.  |
| Slab Reefing     | See Jiffy reef. A quick reefing system allowing a section of the mainsail to be pulled down and tied to the boom.                     |
| Sloop            | A single masted sailboat with mainsail and headsail.  |
| Sole             | The floor in a cockpit or cabin.  |
| Spar             | A pole used to attach a sail on a boat, for example the mast, the boom or a gaff.   |
| Spinnaker        | A large down wind headsail not attached to the head stay.   |
| Splice           | The joining of two lines together by interweaving their strands.  |
| Spreader         | A support strut extending athwartships from the mast used to support and guide the shroud from the top of the mast to the chainplate. |
| Spring line      | A dockline running forward or aft from the boat to the dock to keep the boat from moving fore or aft.                                 |
| Squall           | A fast moving short intense storm.  |
| Stanchions       | Stainless steel or aluminum supports at the edge of the deck which hold the lifelines.  |
| Standing rigging | The permanent rigging of a boat, including the forestay, backstay and shrouds.  |

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Starboard      | The right hand side of the boat when looking forward from the stern.   |
| Starboard tack | Sailing on any point of sail with the wind coming over the starboard side of the boat.   |
| Stay           | A wire support for a mast, part of the standing rigging.   |
| Staysail       | On a cutter, a second small inner jib attached between the bow and the mast. Any sail which is attached to a stay.                 |
| Steerage Way   | The minimum speed of the boat through the water that allows the rudder to function efficiently.                                    |
| Stem           | The foremost tip of the boat.  |
| Stern          | The aft part of the boat.  |
| Stern Spring   | A line running from the stern of the boat parallel to the dock or mooring that stops the boat from moving backward along the dock. |
| Stow           | To store properly.   |
| Swamped        | Filled with water.   |

## T

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Tack         | To alter course so as to cause the bow of the boat to pass through the eye of the wind, OR, the forward lower corner of a sail. |
| Tackle       | A series of blocks and line that provide a mechanical advantage.  |
| Tail         | To hold the end of a line so as to keep it under tension on a winch.  |
| Telltails    | Short lengths of yarn or cloth attached to the sails which indicate when the sail is properly trimmed.                          |
| Tide         | The rise and fall of water level due to the gravitational effects of the sun and the moon.                                      |
| Tiller       | A long handle attached to the rudder which is used to steer the boat.   |
| Toe rail     | A low rail around the outer edge of the deck.   |
| Topping lift | A line used to hold the boom up when the mainsail is lowered or stowed.   |
| Topsides     | The sides of a boat between the waterline and the deck.   |
| Transom      | The vertical surface of the stern.  |
| Trim         | To adjust the sail controls to create optimum lift from the sails.  |
| Trimaran     | A three hulled vessel.  |
| True wind    | The actual speed and direction of the wind as you would feel when standing still.   |
| Tune         | To adjust the boats standing rigging.   |
| Turnbuckle   | A mechanical fitting (a bottlescrew) attached to the lower ends of stays allowing the standing rigging to be adjusted.          |

## U

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| Underway | A boat that is not attached to the ground by either anchor or mooring lines is said to be underway. |
| Upwind   | Towards the direction of the wind.  |

USCG United States Coast Guard.  
U.T.C. Universal Time Coordinated. The modern term for Greenwich Mean Time, this is the standard reference time which is used internationally for navigational information.

## V

Vang See boom vang.  
Veer A clockwise change in the wind direction.  
Vessel Any sailboat, powerboat or ship.

## W

Wake Waves caused by a boat moving through the water.  
Waterline The horizontal line on the hull of a boat where the surface of the water should be.  
Weather helm The tendency of the boat to head up towards the wind, this increases as the sailboat becomes overpowered.  
Weather side See windward side.  
Whip To bind together the strands at the end of a line.  
Whisker pole A pole temporarily mounted between the mast and the clew of the jib. Used to hold the sail out and keep it full when sailing down wind.  
Winch A deck-mounted drum with a handle offering mechanical advantage when used to trim sheets. Winches may also be mounted on the mast to assist with raising sails.  
Windward Towards the wind.  
Windward side The side of the boat closest to the wind.  
Wing-and-wing Sailing downwind with the jib set on the opposite side to the mainsail.  
Working sails The mainsail and the standard jib.  
Working sheet The leeward sheet that is under tension.

## Y

Yawl A two masted vessel on which the mizzenmast is mounted aft of the rudderpost.







**Head Office**  
**9-3151 Lakeshore Road**  
**Kelowna, British Columbia**  
**V1W3S9**  
**Canada**  
**[support@iytworld.com](mailto:support@iytworld.com)**  
**+1 778-477-5668**